

Voluson Expert Series

Service Manual

English (English)

- Voluson Expert 22 with Software version EC400, 40.x.x)

GENERAL SERVICE DOCUMENTATION
COPYRIGHT GENERAL ELECTRIC COMPANY
GE PROPRIETARY. REPRODUCTION AND/OR DISTRIBUTION IS PROHIBITED.

Document number: 5819559APB

Revision 2

© 2021 - 2022 by General Electric



CE 0123

Revision History

Revision	Date	Reason for change
1	November 2021	Preliminary Release
2	April 2022	Initial Release

Table of Contents

Chapter 1 — Introduction

1.1 Important Precautions	1-2
1.2 Legal Notes	1-10
1.3 Purpose of this Service Manual	1-11
1.3.1 Typical Users of the "Basic" Service Manual	1-11
1.3.2 Models covered by this Manual	1-11
1.3.3 System History - Hardware and Software Versions	1-12
1.3.4 Purpose of Operator Manual(s)	1-12
1.4 Important Conventions	1-13
1.4.1 Conventions used in this Manual	1-13
1.4.2 Standard Hazard Icons	1-13
1.4.3 Product Labels and Icons	1-15
1.5 Safety Considerations	1-17
1.5.1 Introduction	1-18
1.5.2 Human Safety	1-18
1.5.3 Mechanical Safety	1-19
1.5.4 Electrical Safety	1-20
1.5.4.1 Safe Practices	1-20
1.5.4.2 Probes	1-20
1.5.5 Auxiliary Devices Safety	1-20
1.6 Labels Locations	1-22
1.6.1 Identification and Rating Plate	1-22
1.7 Dangerous Procedure Warnings	1-22
1.8 Lockout/Tagout (LOTO) Requirements	1-23
1.9 Returning/Shipping System, Probes and Repair Parts	1-23
1.10 EMC, EMI and ESD	1-24
1.10.1 What is EMC?	1-24
1.10.2 Compliance	1-24
1.10.3 Electrostatic Discharge (ESD) Prevention	1-24
1.11 Customer Assistance	1-25
1.11.1 Contact Information	1-25
1.11.2 System Manufacturer	1-26

Chapter 2 — Site Preparation

2.1 General Requirements	2-2
2.1.1 Environmental requirements	2-2
2.1.1.1 Cooling	2-2
2.1.1.2 Lighting	2-2
2.1.2 Electrical Requirements	2-2
2.1.2.1 Voluson Power Requirements Voluson Expert Series	2-3
2.1.2.2 Inrush Current	2-3
2.1.2.3 Site Circuit Breaker	2-3
2.1.2.4 Site Power Outlets	2-3
2.1.2.5 System Power Plug	2-3
2.1.3 EMI Limitations	2-3
2.1.4 Environmental Requirements for Probes	2-4
2.1.5 Time and Manpower Requirements	2-4
2.1.6 System Specifications	2-5
2.1.6.1 Physical Dimensions of Voluson Expert Series	2-5

2.1.6.2 Acoustic Noise Output	2-5
2.1.6.3 Electrical Specifications	2-5
2.2 Facility Needs	2-6
2.2.1 Purchaser Responsibilities	2-6
2.2.2 Required Facility Needs	2-7
2.2.3 Desirable Features	2-8
2.2.4 Network Setup Requirements	2-8
2.2.4.1 Stand-alone System (without Network Connection)	2-8
2.2.4.2 System connected to Hospital's Network	2-8
2.2.4.3 Purpose of the DICOM Network Function	2-8
2.2.4.4 DICOM Option Pre-Installation Requirements	2-8

Chapter 3 — Voluson Expert Series Setup

3.1 Setup Reminders	3-2
3.1.1 Average Installation Time	3-2
3.1.2 Installation Warnings	3-2
3.1.2.1 System Acclimation Time	3-2
3.1.2.2 Control Console Positioning	3-2
3.1.2.3 Brake Pedal Operation	3-2
3.1.3 Safety Reminders	3-3
3.2 Receiving and Unpacking the System	3-4
3.2.1 Moving/Lifting the System	3-5
3.3 Preparing for Setup	3-6
3.3.1 Verify Customer Order	3-6
3.3.2 EMI Protection	3-7
3.4 Completing the Setup	3-8
3.4.1 Connecting the System to a Power Source	3-8
3.4.2 Power On / Boot Up	3-9
3.4.2.1 During a normal boot, you may observe	3-10
3.4.3 Quick Setup	3-11
3.4.4 Probe Connection	3-11
3.4.4.1 How to assign Probes to the desired Probe Holder	3-12
3.4.5 Power Off / Shutdown	3-13
3.5 Connection of Auxiliary Devices	3-14
3.5.1 Connecting the Monitor	3-15
3.5.2 Connecting the Black & White Printer	3-16
3.5.3 Connecting the Color Printer	3-17
3.5.4 Connecting the Network Color Laser Printer	3-18
3.5.5 Connecting the Gel Warmer	3-21
3.5.6 Connecting the RFID Log-on Reader	3-22
3.5.7 Connecting the Wireless Network Adapter	3-23
3.5.8 Connecting an External Patient Monitor	3-24
3.5.9 Connecting the Digital Expert	3-26
3.5.10 Connecting the Foot Switch	3-27
3.5.11 Connecting the Barcode Scanner	3-28
3.5.12 Connecting the ECG-preamplifier	3-29
3.5.13 Connecting the Magnetic Network Adapter	3-30
3.5.14 Connecting an external USB Hard disk or USB Memory Stick	3-31
3.5.15 General Remarks when using external USB-Devices	3-31
3.5.15.1 External USB-Devices - Disconnection	3-31
3.6 Printer Installation	3-32
3.6.1 Installing the Digital Black & White Printer	3-32
3.6.2 Installing the Digital Color Printer	3-32

3.6.3 Installing the Network Color Laser Printer	3-32
3.6.3.1 Prepare the Network Color Laser Printer	3-33
3.6.3.2 Network Configuration	3-33
3.6.3.3 Configure Wi-Fi Network on the Voluson Expert Series system	3-36
3.6.3.4 Network Color Laser Printer Installation Procedure	3-37
3.6.4 Printer Installation manually	3-40
3.6.5 Adjustment of Printer Settings	3-41
3.6.5.1 UP-D898MD Printer - Settings	3-41
3.6.5.2 UP-D25MD Printer Settings	3-43
3.6.6 Report Printer Selection	3-44
3.6.7 Button Configuration (Remote Control)	3-45
3.6.7.1 How to configure P1-P4 Keys	3-45
3.6.7.2 How to configure C1-C4 Keys	3-46
3.7 System Configuration (Home Menu)	3-47
3.7.1 IfU (Instructions for Use)	3-47
3.7.2 Probe Check	3-48
3.7.3 Lock Touch	3-48
3.7.4 Quick Setup	3-49
3.7.5 System Setup	3-50
3.7.5.1 How to invoke the System Setup Procedure	3-51
3.7.5.2 How to set Date and Time	3-52
3.7.5.3 How to enter Clinic Name	3-52
3.7.5.4 How to change System Language	3-52
3.7.5.5 How to change Language of Instruction for Use	3-53
3.7.5.6 How to change Video Norm	3-53
3.7.5.7 How to change Ext. Monitor Output Settings	3-53
3.7.5.8 How to adjust Function of the Foot Switch	3-54
3.7.5.9 How to adjust Format and Quality setting for USB/DVD recording	3-54
3.7.5.10 How to disable Storage Devices on USB ports	3-54
3.7.5.11 How to activate Tricify	3-54
3.7.5.12 How to activate Device Management	3-55
3.7.5.13 How to change the Keyboard Layout	3-55
3.7.5.14 How to configure InSite	3-55
3.7.5.15 How to execute Additional Software Installation (ASI)	3-56
3.7.5.16 How to load "Voluson Update" Packages	3-57
3.7.5.17 How to activate User Login Authentication	3-58
3.7.5.18 How to perform Disk Encryption	3-59
3.7.5.19 How to protect the system by Whitelisting	3-62
3.7.5.20 How to change the System Password	3-62
3.7.6 Monitor Settings	3-63
3.7.7 Color and Light Personalization	3-63
3.7.8 Shortcuts	3-64
3.8 On-board optional Peripherals	3-65
3.9 External I/O Connectors	3-66
3.9.1 External I/O Pin Outs	3-68
3.9.2 Video Specification	3-70
3.9.3 External Cables - Maximum Lengths	3-70
3.10 Available Probes	3-70
3.11 Software/Option Configuration	3-70
3.12 Connectivity Setup	3-71
3.12.1 Connectivity Introduction	3-71
3.12.1.1 Dataflow Concept	3-71

3.12.1.2 Dataflow Examples	3-72
3.12.1.3 Stand-alone Voluson Expert Series	3-73
3.12.1.4 Voluson Expert Series + PC (with 4D View Software) within a "Sneaker Net"	3-73
3.12.1.5 Connection between Voluson Expert Series and DICOM Server	3-73
3.13 Network Configuration	3-73
3.13.1 TCP/IP Configuration	3-74
3.13.2 WLAN Configuration	3-75
3.13.2.1 Connecting to the WLAN	3-75
3.13.2.2 WLAN Network using fixed TCP/IP	3-76
3.13.2.3 Disconnecting from WLAN	3-77
3.13.2.4 Restart a WLAN Network	3-77
3.13.2.5 Edit an existing WLAN Network	3-77
3.13.2.6 Add new WLAN Network	3-78
3.13.2.7 Removing a WLAN Network	3-78
3.13.3 How to Setup E-mail	3-79
3.13.4 How to enter Patient's Email address and Phone number in the PID screen	3-80
3.13.5 Map Network Drive	3-81
3.13.6 RSVP Agent Configuration	3-82
3.14 Connectivity Setup Worksheet	3-83
3.15 Paperwork	3-85
3.15.1 Product Locator Installation Card	3-85
3.15.2 Instructions for Use	3-85

Chapter 4 — Functional Checks

4.1 Required Equipment	4-2
4.2 General Procedure	4-2
4.2.1 Power On / Boot Up	4-3
4.2.2 Power Off / Shutdown	4-4
4.2.3 System Features	4-5
4.2.3.1 Control Console	4-5
4.2.3.2 Touch Panel	4-6
4.3 Functional Checks	4-7
4.3.1 Patient Archive (Image Management)	4-8
4.3.2 Erasing DVD/CD	4-9
4.4 Backup and Restore System Configuration and Image Archive	4-10
4.4.1 Save System Configuration Backup	4-11
4.4.2 Load System Configuration Backup	4-13
4.4.3 Delete System Configuration Backup	4-16
4.4.4 Archiving Images	4-17
4.4.4.1 Save Image Archive	4-17
4.4.4.2 Load Image Archive	4-19
4.5 Software Configuration Checks	4-20
4.5.1 System Setup	4-20
4.6 Peripheral Checks	4-21
4.6.1 ECG Check Out	4-21
4.7 Mechanical Function Checks	4-22
4.7.1 Control Console Positioning	4-22
4.7.2 Brakes and Direction (Swivel) Locks	4-22
4.8 Site Log	4-23

Chapter 5 — Components and Functions (Theory)

5.1 General Information	5-2
5.1.1 Description of Operating Modes	5-6

5.1.1.1 B-Mode or 2D-Mode	5-6
5.1.1.2 M-Mode	5-6
5.1.1.3 Color Doppler Modes	5-7
5.1.1.4 Pulsed (PW) Doppler	5-7
5.1.1.5 3D Imaging	5-8
5.1.1.6 3D Data Collection and Reconstruction	5-8
5.1.1.7 3D Image Presentation	5-8
5.1.1.8 3D Rendering	5-8
5.1.2 Description of Software Options	5-9
5.1.2.1 Advanced 4D	5-10
5.1.2.2 HDlive	5-11
5.1.2.3 HDlive Silhouette	5-11
5.1.2.4 HDlive Studio	5-11
5.1.2.5 VOCAL II - Virtual Organ Computer-aided Analysis	5-11
5.1.2.6 Advanced VCI	5-11
5.1.2.7 Coded Contrast Imaging	5-11
5.1.2.8 Elastography	5-12
5.1.2.9 SonoVCAD heart - Comp. Assisted Heart Diagnosis	5-12
5.1.2.10 SonoAVC - Sono Automated Volume Count	5-12
5.1.2.11 SonoVCAD labor	5-12
5.1.2.12 Anatomical M-Mode (AMM)	5-12
5.1.2.13 Advanced STIC (Spatio-Temporal Image Correlation)	5-13
5.1.2.14 SRI Advanced - Speckle Reduction Imaging	5-13
5.1.2.15 V-SRI Advanced - Speckle Reduction Imaging	5-13
5.1.2.16 SonoCNS	5-14
5.1.2.17 Slowflow	5-14
5.1.2.18 Radiantflow	5-14
5.1.2.19 IETA (Internal Endometrial Tumor Analysis)	5-14
5.1.2.20 IDEA (International Deep Endometriosis Analysis)	5-14
5.1.2.21 fetalHQ	5-14
5.1.2.22 Shearwave Elastography	5-14
5.1.2.23 SonoLyst	5-14
5.1.2.24 SonoPelvicFloor	5-14
5.1.2.25 AVURI Device Management	5-14
5.1.2.26 eDelivery (Software Download)	5-15
5.1.2.27 e4D Advanced Features	5-15
5.1.2.28 CW - Continuous Wave Doppler	5-15
5.1.2.29 DVD and USB Recorder	5-15
5.1.2.30 Voluson Remote Updates	5-15
5.1.2.31 Disk Encryption	5-16
5.1.2.32 Advanced Security Features	5-16
5.1.2.33 IOTA (International Ovarian Tumor Analysis)	5-17
5.1.2.34 CW - Continuous Wave Doppler	5-17
5.1.3 Data Location	5-18
5.2 FrontEnd Processor	5-19
5.2.1 TCO - Connector Board	5-20
5.2.2 TAC - Acquisition Board	5-20
5.2.2.1 TAC Board - Interface Tasks	5-20
5.2.2.2 TAC Board - Processing Tasks	5-20
5.2.3 TVG - Voltage Generator Board	5-20
5.3 BackEnd Processor	5-21
5.3.1 TBE - Backend Carrier Board (Base Board)	5-22

5.3.2 TBX - Extension Board	5-22
5.3.3 COM Express Module	5-22
5.3.4 Hard Disk Drive (HDD)	5-22
5.3.5 M.2 Solid-State Drive (M.2 SSD)	5-22
5.3.6 Graphic Card	5-22
5.4 Internal I/O	5-23
5.4.1 Internal I/O Voluson Expert Series EC400	5-24
5.5 Control Console (User Interface)	5-25
5.5.1 Peripheral Interface Left/Right (TPL/TPR)	5-26
5.5.1.1 TPL - Peripherals Interface Left	5-26
5.5.1.2 TPR - Peripherals Interface Right	5-26
5.6 Monitor	5-26
5.7 External I/O	5-27
5.8 Peripherals and/or optional Equipment	5-28
5.8.1 Printers	5-29
5.8.2 Wireless Print Kit for the Color Printer	5-29
5.8.3 DVD Drive	5-29
5.8.4 Foot Switch	5-30
5.8.5 ECG Module	5-30
5.8.6 Gel Warmer	5-30
5.8.7 Respond Probe Holder	5-30
5.8.8 RFID Log-on	5-30
5.8.9 Wireless Network (WLAN) Adapter	5-30
5.8.10 Wireless Display Kit for the External Patient Monitor	5-30
5.8.11 Digital Expert	5-30
5.8.12 Magnetic Network Adapter	5-30
5.9 Power Distribution	5-31
5.9.1 TPS - Power Supply	5-31
5.9.1.1 Input Voltage Range	5-31
5.9.1.2 Auxiliary Output Voltage	5-31
5.9.1.3 TPS Specifications	5-31
5.10 Mechanical Descriptions	5-32
5.10.1 Physical Dimensions	5-32
5.10.2 Monitor	5-33
5.10.3 Control Console Positioning	5-33
5.10.3.1 Rotation/Translation of the Control Console	5-33
5.10.3.2 Height Adjustment (Elevation) of the Control Console	5-33
5.11 Air Flow Control	5-34
5.12 Service Platform	5-35
5.12.1 Introduction	5-35
5.12.2 Service Platform - Access and Security	5-35
5.12.2.1 Local Access	5-35
5.12.2.2 Remote Access	5-35
5.13 Service Desktop	5-36
5.14 Service Page	5-37
5.14.1 Introduction	5-37
5.14.2 Service Page - Access and Security	5-37
5.14.3 Service Page Login	5-37
5.14.3.1 Additional Software Installation (ASI)	5-37
5.14.3.2 SWI from Media	5-38
5.14.3.3 Restore Software	5-38
5.14.3.4 Decrypt Disk	5-38

5.14.3.5 Import Education Videos to System	5-38
5.14.3.6 TCP/IP Buffersize	5-38
5.14.3.7 Service Desktop	5-38
5.14.3.8 Request for Service (RFS)	5-38
5.14.3.9 Delete all Patients	5-38
5.14.3.10 Export System Data	5-39
5.14.3.11 Keyboard Layout	5-39
5.14.3.12 Monitor Test	5-39
5.14.3.13 Restore Democases into Archive	5-39
5.14.3.14 Load Application Settings	5-39
5.15 Boot Screen Functions	5-40
5.15.1 Voluson	5-40
5.15.2 Voluson Maintenance Menu	5-40
5.15.3 Memtest (Memory Check)	5-41
5.15.4 Rollback	5-41

Chapter 6 — Alignment and Calibration

6.1 Regulatory	6-2
6.2 Monitor Adjustment	6-2
6.2.1 Preparing for Transport	6-3
6.2.2 Monitor Test	6-3
6.3 Control Console Positioning	6-4
6.3.1 Translation/Rotation Adjustment	6-4
6.3.2 Height Adjustment (Elevation)	6-4
6.4 Modification of Keyboard Layout	6-5

Chapter 7 — Diagnostics/Troubleshooting

7.1 Collect vital System Information	7-2
7.1.1 Keyboard Shortcuts	7-4
7.2 Request for Service (RFS)	7-6
7.3 Check Point Voltages	7-7
7.4 Screen Captures and Logs	7-8
7.4.1 Capturing a Screen	7-8
7.4.2 Export Log's and System Data	7-8
7.4.2.1 Export System Data (by pressing the ALT + D key)	7-9
7.4.2.2 Export Log's and System Data (via Service Page)	7-10
7.5 Remote Access to the Service Platform	7-11
7.5.1 General	7-11
7.5.2 How to locally enable/disable Disruptive Mode and VCO	7-12
7.6 Service Desktop	7-13
7.6.1 Service Desktop - Home	7-14
7.6.1.1 Temperature Monitoring*	7-17
7.6.1.2 Voltage Monitoring*	7-19
7.6.1.3 GPU*	7-20
7.6.2 Service Desktop - Diags*	7-21
7.6.2.1 Before performing Diagnostics*	7-22
7.6.2.2 How to Run Diagnostics*	7-23
7.6.2.3 Run Diagnostics - BackEnd*	7-24
7.6.2.4 Run Diagnostics - FrontEnd*	7-24
7.6.2.5 Run Diagnostics - Fan*	7-25
7.6.2.6 Run Diagnostics - Probes*	7-26
7.6.2.7 Run Diagnostics - SMART*	7-35
7.6.2.8 Run Diagnostics - GPU*	7-36

7.6.2.9 Diags History*	7-37
7.6.2.10 After performing Diagnostics*	7-37
7.6.3 Service Desktop - DICOM*	7-38
7.6.4 Service Desktop - Utilities	7-39
7.6.4.1 APM	7-39
7.6.4.2 Change Password	7-40
7.6.4.3 Data Transfer	7-41
7.6.4.4 Delete Files	7-41
7.6.4.5 Disruptive Mode Utility	7-41
7.6.4.6 Network Capture	7-41
7.6.4.7 Resolve Agent Quarantine	7-41
7.6.4.8 SSA License	7-41
7.6.4.9 Third Party Software Licenses	7-41
7.6.5 Service Desktop - Options	7-42
7.6.6 Service Desktop - Agent Configuration	7-42
7.6.7 Service Desktop - Software Maintenance	7-43
7.6.7.1 Software Updates	7-43
7.6.7.2 Reset Declined Packages	7-44
7.6.7.3 Software Information	7-44
7.7 Troubleshooting Trees, Instructions and Tech Tips	7-45
7.7.1 Error Beep Codes	7-46
7.7.2 Noise disturbs the Image	7-47
7.7.2.1 How to analyze the EMC noise	7-48
7.7.3 Trackball Malfunction	7-50
7.7.4 Printer Malfunction	7-51
7.7.5 Monitor Troubleshooting	7-52
7.7.6 DVD Drive Tests	7-53
7.7.6.1 Export images from "Local Archive" to DVD/CD+R/RW	7-53
7.7.6.2 Record Spectral Doppler display	7-55
7.7.7 Network Troubleshooting	7-56
7.7.7.1 No Connection to the Network at all	7-56
7.7.7.2 Email connection	7-56
7.7.7.3 GE - Remote Service Connection	7-56
7.7.8 Activate Windows - Network Connectivity Issues	7-57
7.7.9 Error due to an empty CMOS Battery (set correct date & time)	7-58

Chapter 8 — Replacement Procedures

8.1 Returning/Shipping System, Probes and Repair Parts	8-3
8.1.1 Repacking the System	8-3
8.2 System Software - Installation/Upgrade procedure	8-6
8.2.1 Before the Software Installation/Upgrade Procedure	8-7
8.2.1.1 Check/Collect vital System Setup data	8-8
8.2.2 SWI from Media - System Software Installation	8-10
8.2.3 Software Update Package - Download/Installation	8-13
8.3 Software and Functional Checks after Installation/Upgrade Procedure	8-16
8.4 System Configuration Backup - Loading Procedure	8-17
8.5 Image Archive - Loading Procedure	8-17
8.6 Replacement or Activation of Options	8-18
8.6.1 How to activate Options	8-18
8.7 Replacement of the Rear Cover Top	8-19
8.7.1 Rear Cover Top - Removal Procedure	8-19
8.7.2 Rear Cover Top - Installation Procedure	8-19
8.8 Replacement of the Front Cover	8-20

8.8.1 Front Cover - Removal Procedure	8-20
8.8.2 Front Cover - Installation Procedure	8-20
8.9 Replacement of the Probe Holder Set	8-21
8.9.1 Probe Holder Set - Replacement Procedure	8-21
8.10 Replacement of the Respond Probe Holder	8-22
8.10.1 Respond Probe Holder - Replacement Procedure	8-22
8.11 Replacement of the Probe Holder for Endocavity Probes	8-24
8.11.1 Probe Holder for Endocavity Probes - Replacement Procedure	8-24
8.12 Replacement of the Trackball Ring	8-25
8.12.1 Trackball Ring - Replacement Procedure	8-25
8.13 Replacement of the Caps for Encoders and/or Joycoders	8-26
8.13.1 Caps for Encoders and/or Joycoders - Replacement Procedure	8-26
8.14 Replacement of the Caps for Hardkeys	8-27
8.14.1 Replacement of circle-/ and oval-shaped Key Caps only	8-27
8.14.1.1 Circle-/ and oval-shaped Key Caps - Replacement Procedure	8-27
8.15 Replacement of the Monitor Back Cover	8-28
8.15.1 Monitor Back Cover - Replacement Procedure	8-28
8.16 Replacement of a Probe	8-29
8.17 Replacing optional Peripherals / How to mount Peripherals at a later date	8-30
8.17.1 Mounting/Replacing the Color Printer	8-31
8.17.1.1 Color Printer & Wireless Kit - Installation Procedure	8-31
8.17.2 Mounting/Replacing the Gel Warmer	8-32
8.17.2.1 Gel Warmer - Installation Procedure	8-32
8.17.3 Mounting/Replacing the RFID Log-on Reader	8-33
8.17.3.1 RFID Log-on Reader - Installation Procedure	8-33
8.17.4 Mounting/Replacing an External Patient Monitor	8-34
8.17.4.1 External Monitor & Wireless Display Kit - Installation Procedure	8-34
8.17.4.2 Connection of an External Patient Monitor and Isolation Transformer	8-35
8.17.5 Mounting/Replacing the ECG Module	8-36
8.17.5.1 ECG Module - Installation Procedure	8-36

Chapter 9 — Renewal Parts

9.1 List of Abbreviations	9-2
9.2 Parts List Groups	9-4
9.3 Housing - Mechanical Hardware Parts & Covers	9-5
9.4 User Interface	9-12
9.5 Monitor + Monitor Replacement Parts	9-17
9.6 Power Modules	9-19
9.7 FrontEnd (US-Part) Components	9-20
9.8 BackEnd (PC-Part) Components	9-21
9.9 Options and Upgrades	9-24
9.10 Miscellaneous Cables	9-25
9.11 Optional Peripherals and Accessories	9-29
9.11.1 Printers	9-29
9.11.2 Additional Devices and optional Equipment	9-31
9.12 System Manuals	9-36
9.13 Probes	9-36
9.13.1 2D-Probes - Curved Array Probes	9-37
9.13.2 2D-Probes - Linear Array Probes	9-38
9.13.3 2D-Probes - Phased Array Probes	9-39
9.13.4 Real-Time 4D Volume Probes	9-40
9.14 Biopsy Needle Guides	9-42

Chapter 10 — Care and Maintenance

10.1 Why do Maintenance	10-3
10.1.1 Preventive Maintenance Inspections	10-3
10.1.2 Quality Assurance	10-3
10.2 Maintenance Task Schedule	10-3
10.2.1 How often should Care and Maintenance Tasks be performed?	10-3
10.3 Tools required	10-5
10.3.1 Special Tools, Supplies and Equipment used for Maintenance	10-5
10.4 System Maintenance	10-6
10.4.1 Preliminary Checks	10-6
10.4.2 Functional Checks	10-6
10.4.2.1 Ultrasound System Checks	10-6
10.4.2.2 Peripheral/Option Checks	10-7
10.4.2.3 Mains Cable Inspection	10-7
10.4.3 Physical Inspection	10-8
10.4.4 Cleaning	10-8
10.4.4.1 General Cleaning	10-9
10.4.5 Probe Maintenance	10-9
10.4.5.1 Probe related Checks	10-9
10.4.5.2 Basic Probe Care	10-9
10.4.5.3 Basic Probe Cleaning and/or Disinfection	10-9
10.4.5.4 Disinfection by means of the RIC-Holder	10-10
10.5 Using a Phantom	10-10
10.6 Electrical Safety Tests	10-11
10.6.1 Safety Test Overview	10-11
10.6.2 Leakage Current Limits	10-12
10.6.3 Outlet Test - Wiring Arrangement - USA & Canada	10-13
10.6.4 Grounding Continuity	10-14
10.6.5 Chassis Leakage Current Test	10-15
10.6.5.1 Definition	10-15
10.6.5.2 Generic Procedure	10-15
10.6.5.3 Data Sheet for Enclosure/Chassis Leakage Current	10-16
10.6.6 Isolated Patient Lead (Source) Leakage-Lead to Ground	10-17
10.6.6.1 Definition	10-17
10.6.6.2 Generic Procedure	10-17
10.6.7 Isolated Patient Lead (Source) Leakage-Lead to Lead	10-19
10.6.7.1 Lead to Lead Leakage Test Record	10-19
10.6.8 Isolated Patient Lead (Sink) Leakage-Isolation Test	10-20
10.6.8.1 Isolated Lead (Sink) Leakage Test Record	10-20
10.6.9 Probe (Source) Leakage Current Test	10-21
10.6.9.1 Definition	10-21
10.6.9.2 Generic Procedure on Probe Leakage Current	10-21
10.6.9.3 Isolated Probe (Sink) Leakage-Isolation Test	10-24
10.7 When there's too much Leakage Current... ..	10-25
10.7.1 AC/DC fails	10-25
10.7.2 Chassis fails	10-25
10.7.3 Probe fails	10-25
10.7.4 Peripheral fails	10-25
10.7.5 Still fails	10-25
10.7.6 New Voluson Expert Series system	10-25
10.7.7 ECG fails	10-25
10.8 Ultrasound Equipment Quality Check	10-25

Chapter 1

Introduction

This chapter describes important issues related to safely servicing the Voluson Expert Series ultrasound system. The service provider must read and understand all the information presented in this manual before installing or servicing this system.

Content in this chapter

1.1 Important Precautions - - - - -	1-2
1.2 Legal Notes - - - - -	1-10
1.3 Purpose of this Service Manual - - - - -	1-11
1.4 Important Conventions - - - - -	1-13
1.5 Safety Considerations - - - - -	1-17
1.6 Labels Locations - - - - -	1-22
1.7 Dangerous Procedure Warnings - - - - -	1-22
1.8 Lockout/Tagout (LOTO) Requirements - - - - -	1-23
1.9 Returning/Shipping System, Probes and Repair Parts - - - - -	1-23
1.10 EMC, EMI and ESD - - - - -	1-24
1.11 Customer Assistance - - - - -	1-25

Note *Under consideration of general maintenance requirements a minimum lifetime (expected service life) of 7 years for the equipment and 5 years for the probes may be expected. To maintain the safety and performance of the ultrasound system, a regular check (once per year) by authorized personnel is recommended.*

1.1 Important Precautions

Translation Policy

WARNING

- English
(EN)
- This Service Manual is available in English only.
- If a customer's service provider requires a language other than English, it is the customer's responsibility to provide translation services.
 - Do not attempt to service the equipment unless this Service Manual has been consulted and is understood.
 - Failure to heed this Warning may result in injury to the service provider, operator or patient from electric shock, mechanical or other hazards.
-

AVERTISSEMENT

- Français
(FR)
- Ce manuel de maintenance est disponible en anglais uniquement.
- Si un client de la personne responsable de la maintenance demande une langue autre que l'anglais, il est de la responsabilité du client de fournir les services de traduction.
 - N'essayez pas d'effectuer vous-même la maintenance de l'équipement avant d'avoir préalablement lu et compris le manuel de maintenance.
 - Le non-respect cet avertissement peut entraîner des blessures dues à un choc électrique, une défaillance mécanique ou à d'autres éléments dangereux chez la personne en charge de la maintenance, l'opérateur ou le patient.
-

ADVERTENCIA

- Español
(ES)
- Este Manual de servicio está disponible en idioma inglés únicamente.
- Si un proveedor de servicio del cliente requiere un idioma distinto, es responsabilidad del cliente ofrecer servicios de traducción.
 - No intente reparar el equipo a menos que haya consultado y comprendido este Manual de servicio.
 - Si no presta atención a esta Advertencia, se pueden ocasionar lesiones al proveedor de servicio, al operador o al paciente por descarga eléctrica, por riesgos mecánicos o de otra índole.
-

WARNUNG

- Deutsch
(DE)
- Dieses Wartungshandbuch ist nur auf Englisch verfügbar.
- Wenn der Kundendiensttechniker eines Kunden eine andere Sprache als Englisch benötigt, unterliegt es der Verantwortung des Kunden eine Übersetzung anfertigen zu lassen.
 - Warten Sie das Gerät nur, wenn Sie dieses Wartungshandbuch gelesen und verstanden haben.
 - Die Nichtbeachtung dieses Warnhinweises kann zu Verletzungen des Kundendiensttechnikers, Anwenders oder Patienten durch Stromschläge, mechanische oder andere Gefahren führen.
-

AVVERTENZA

(IT) italiano

Il presente Manuale di assistenza è disponibile solo in inglese.

- Se il fornitore di servizi di un cliente ne richiede una copia in una lingua diversa dall'inglese, è responsabilità del cliente fornire il servizio di traduzione.
- Non tentare di riparare l'apparecchio se questo Manuale di assistenza non è stato letto e compreso.
- Il mancato rispetto di questa avvertenza può comportare il rischio di lesioni al fornitore di servizi, all'operatore o al paziente causate da scosse elettriche o da pericoli di origine meccanica o di altro tipo.

WAARSCHUWING

(NL) Nederlands

Deze servicehandleiding is alleen beschikbaar in het Engels.

- Als de serviceleverancier van een klant vraagt om een andere taal dan Engels, is het de verantwoordelijkheid van de klant om een vertaalde versie te bieden.
- Probeer geen onderhoud aan de apparatuur uit te voeren tenzij deze servicehandleiding is geraadpleegd en begrepen.
- Het niet opvolgen van deze waarschuwing kan bij de serviceleverancier, de operator of de patiënt leiden tot letsel door elektrische schokken, mechanische of andere gevaren.

ADVERTÊNCIA

(PT-BR) Português

Este Manual de Manutenção está disponível apenas em Inglês.

- Caso um prestador de serviços do cliente solicite o manual em idioma diferente do inglês, é de responsabilidade do cliente o fornecimento de serviços de tradução.
- Não tente realizar a manutenção do equipamento antes de ler e compreender este Manual de manutenção.
- O não cumprimento desta advertência pode resultar em danos por choque elétrico e riscos mecânicos para o prestador de serviços, operador ou paciente.

HOIATUS!

(ET) Eesti

Service Manual (Hooldusjuhend) on saadaval ainult ingliskeelsena.

- Kui kliendi teenusepakkuja nõue on, et juhend oleks mõnes muus keeles, korraldab juhendi tõlkimise klient.
- Tutvuge enne seadme hooldustööde tegemist kindlasti juhendiga Service Manual (Hooldusjuhend).
- Selle nõude eiramise korral võib teenindaja, kasutaja või patsient saada elektrilöögi, samuti võivad kaasneda muud ohud.

OPOZORILO

(SL) Slovenščina

Ta servisni priročnik je na voljo samo v angleščini.

- Če ponudnik servisnih storitev za stranko potrebuje navodila v drugem jeziku, mora stranka sama poskrbeti za prevajanje.
- Ne poskušajte servisirati opreme, ne da bi prej prebrali in razumeli servisni priročnik.
- Če tega opozorila ne upoštevate, obstaja nevarnost električnega udara, mehanskih ali drugih nevarnosti in posledičnih poškodb ponudnika servisnih storitev, uporabnika opreme ali pacienta.

警告

日本語

(JA)

このサービスマニュアルは英語版のみ提供されています。

- お客様の保守担当者が英語以外のマニュアルを必要とされる場合は、お客様の負担にて翻訳サービスをご利用ください。
- 装置の保守を行う前に、必ずサービスマニュアルを読み、内容を理解してください。
- この警告に注意を払わない場合、保守担当者やオペレータ、患者に対して、電気ショック、機械またはその他の危険による傷害が発生する恐れがあります。

警告

繁体中文

(ZH-CN)

本维修手册仅提供英文版。

- 如果客户需要其它语种版本，请自行翻译。
- 在维修机器前，请务必阅读并完全理解本维修手册。
- 若违反本警告，有可能会给维修提供商、操作员或患者带来电击伤害、机械损伤或其它危害。

VARNING

Svenska

(SV)

Den här servicehandboken finns endast på engelska.

- Om en kunds servicetekniker kräver ett annat språk än engelska är det kundens ansvar att tillhandahålla en översatt version.
- Försök inte att utföra service på utrustningen om du inte har läst igenom och förstått den här servicehandboken.
- Om du inte tar hänsyn till den här varningen kan serviceteknikern, operatören eller patienten utsättas för elektriska stötar eller mekaniska eller andra faror, vilket kan leda till personskador.

警告

繁體中文

(ZH-TW)

此服務手冊僅推出英文版。

- 若客戶的維修人員需要英文以外的其他語言版本，客戶需自行負責提供翻譯服務。
- 在詳閱此服務手冊並充分理解其內容之前，請勿試圖開始維修設備。
- 若忽視此警告，可能導致維修人員、操作人員或病患因為觸電、機械問題或其他危險而受傷。

경고

한국어

(KO)

이 서비스 설명서는 영어로만 제공됩니다.

- 고객의 서비스 공급자가 영어 이외의 언어를 요구하는 경우 번역 서비스를 제공할 책임은 고객에게 있습니다.
- 이 서비스 설명서를 참조 및 이해하지 못한 경우 장비를 만지지 마십시오.
- 이 경고를 무시한 경우 서비스 공급자, 오퍼레이터 또는 환자가 감전, 기계적 위험 또는 기타 위험으로 인한 부상을 입을 수 있습니다.

ПРЕДУПРЕЖДЕНИЕ

Данное руководство по обслуживанию доступно только на английском языке.

На русском языке
(RU)

- Если специалисту по техническому обслуживанию клиента требуется документация на каком-либо другом языке, ответственность за выполнение перевода возлагается на клиента.
- Приступайте к обслуживанию оборудования только после того, как изучите данное руководство по обслуживанию и полностью поймете его содержание.
- Несоблюдение данного требования может привести к травмированию специалиста по техническому обслуживанию, пользователя или пациента вследствие поражения электрическим током, механических и прочих повреждений.

OSTRZEŻENIE

Niniejszy podręcznik serwisowy jest dostępny wyłącznie w języku angielskim.

Polski
(PL)

- Jeżeli dostawca usług klienta posługuje się językiem innym niż angielski, za zapewnienie usług tłumaczeniowych odpowiada klient.
- Przed przystąpieniem do czynności serwisowych należy zapoznać się z informacjami zawartymi w niniejszym podręczniku serwisowym i je zrozumieć.
- W przeciwnym wypadku dostawca usług, operator lub pacjent mogą odnieść obrażenia spowodowane porażeniem prądem elektrycznym, działaniem elementów mechanicznych lub innymi zagrożeniami.

ΠΡΟΕΙΔΟΠΟΙΗΣΗ

Το παρόν Εγχειρίδιο σέρβις διατίθεται μόνο στα Αγγλικά.

Ελληνικά
(EL)

- Εάν ο πάροχος σέρβις του πελάτη απαιτεί γλώσσα εκτός των Αγγλικών, η παροχή μεταφραστικών υπηρεσιών αποτελεί ευθύνη του πελάτη.
- Μην επιχειρήσετε να επισκευάσετε τον εξοπλισμό εάν πρώτα δεν συμβουλευτείτε και κατανοήσετε το παρόν Εγχειρίδιο σέρβις.
- Σε περίπτωση μη τήρησης της παρούσας προειδοποίησης, ενδέχεται να προκληθεί τραυματισμός στον πάροχο σέρβις, το χειριστή ή τον ασθενή εξαιτίας ηλεκτροπληξίας καθώς και μηχανικών ή άλλων κινδύνων.

FIGYELMEZTETÉS

A szervizkézikönyv kizárólag angol nyelven érhető el.

Magyar
(HU)

- Amennyiben az ügyfél szolgáltatójának nem felel meg az angol nyelvű dokumentáció, úgy a fordításról az ügyfélnek kell gondoskodnia.
- Kizárólag úgy lásson hozzá a berendezés karbantartásához, hogy elolvasta és megértette a szervizkézikönyvben foglaltakat.
- Ezen figyelmeztetés figyelmen kívül hagyása esetén a szolgáltató, a kezelő vagy a páciens áramütést, mechanikus sérülést vagy más veszély által okozott személyi sérülést szenvedhet.

VAROVANIE

Táto servisná príručka je dostupná iba v anglickom jazyku.

Slovenčina
(SK)

- Ak poskytovateľ služieb zákazníkovi vyžaduje iný jazyk ako anglický jazyk, jeho povinnosťou je zabezpečiť prekladateľské služby.
- Zariadenie nepoužívajte bez prečítania a porozumenia tejto servisnej príručky.
- Nedodržanie tejto výstrahy môže viesť k zraneniu poskytovateľa služieb, operátora alebo pacienta spôsobeného elektrickým šokom, mechanickým alebo iným nebezpečenstvom.

VÝSTRAHA

česky

(CZ)

Tato servisní příručka je k dispozici pouze v angličtině.

- Pokud poskytovatel služby zákazníkovi požaduje jiný jazyk než angličtinu, je odpovědností zákazníka poskytnout služby překladu.
- Nepokoušejte se provádět servis zařízení, dokud si neprostudujete a neporozumíte servisní příručce.
- Nevěnování pozornosti této výstraze může způsobit poskytovateli služeb, obsluze nebo pacientovi úraz elektrickým proudem, mechanická nebo jiná nebezpečí.

UYARI

Türkçe

(TR)

Servis Kılavuzu yalnızca İngilizce olarak mevcuttur.

- Müşterinin servis sağlayıcısı için kılavuzun İngilizce dışında başka bir dile çevrilmesi gerekiyorsa çeviri hizmeti sağlamak müşterinin sorumluluğudur.
- Bu Servis Kılavuzu'na bakıp talimatları anlamadan ekipmanı kullanmaya çalışmayın.
- Bu Uyarının göz ardı edilmesi servis sağlayıcısının, operatörün veya hastanın, elektrik çarpması, mekanik arıza ya da diğer tehlikeler nedeniyle yaralanmasına neden olabilir.

ADVARSEL

Dansk

(DA)

Denne servicemanual fås kun på engelsk.

- Hvis en kundes tjenesteudbyder kræver et andet sprog end engelsk, er det kundens ansvar at sørge for oversættelsesydelse.
- Forsøg ikke at udføre service på udstyret, medmindre denne servicemanual er læst og forstået.
- Manglende overholdelse af denne advarsel kan medføre skade på serviceudbyderen, operatøren eller patienten som følge af elektrisk stød, mekaniske eller andre farer.

ADVARSEL

Norsk

(NO)

Denne servicehåndboken er bare tilgjengelig på engelsk.

- Hvis en kundes tjenestetilbyder krever et annet språk enn engelsk, er det kundens ansvar å tilby oversettelsestjenester.
- Ikke forsøk å utføre service på utstyret før denne servicehåndboken er lest og forstått.
- Dersom det ikke tas hensyn til denne advarselen, kan det føre til skader på tjenestetilbyderen, operatøren eller pasienten fra elektrisk støt, mekaniske eller andre farer.

VAKAVA VAROITUS

Suomi

(FI)

Tämä huolto-opas on saatavana vain englanniksi.

- Jos asiakkaan palveluntarjoaja tarvitsee oppaan jollain muulla kielellä, käänköspalveluiden hankkiminen on asiakkaan vastuulla.
- Laitetta ei saa huoltaa ellei huolto-oppaaseen ole sitä ennen tutustuttu huolellisesti.
- Jos tätä varoitusta ei noudateta, palveluntarjoaja, käyttäjä tai potilas saattaa saada sähköiskun, ja saattaa aiheuttaa mekaanisia tai muita vaurioita.

ПРЕДУПРЕЖДЕНИЕ

Български
(BG)

- Настоящото Сервизно ръководство се предлага само на английски език.
- Ако доставчикът на сервизни услуги на клиента изисква ръководство на език, който се различава от английския, клиентът има отговорност да осигури адекватен превод.
 - Не правете опити за сервиз на оборудването, без да проверите и да разберете съветите в Сервизното ръководство.
 - Неспазването на това предупреждение може да доведе до нараняване на доставчика на сервизни услуги, оператора или пациента вследствие на токов удар, механична или други опасности.

AVERTISMENT

Română
(RO)

- Acest manual de service este disponibil doar în engleză.
- Dacă furnizorul de servicii al unui client solicită altă limbă decât engleza, este responsabilitatea clientului să ofere servicii de traducere.
 - Nu încercați să efectuați lucrări de service asupra echipamentului, în afară de cazul când ați consultat acest manual de service și l-ați înțeles.
 - Nerespectarea acestui avertisment poate avea ca rezultat rănirea furnizorului de servicii, a operatorului sau a pacientului ca urmare a electrocutării, pericolelor mecanice sau a altor pericole.

UPOZORENJE

Hrvatski
(HR)

- Ovaj servisni priručnik dostupan je samo na engleskom jeziku.
- Ako klijentov serviser zahtijeva jezik koji nije engleski, odgovornost klijenta je pružiti usluge prijevoda.
 - Nemojte pokušavati servisirati opremu ako niste pročitali i razumjeli servisni priručnik.
 - Ako ne poštujete ovo upozorenje, može doći do ozljede serviser, operatera ili pacijenta prouzročene strujnim udarom, mehaničkim i drugim opasnostima.

ĮSPĖJIMAS

Lietuvių k.
(LT)

- Šis priežiūros vadovas galimas tik anglų kalba.
- Jei kliento paslaugų teikėjas reikalauja kitos kalbos nei anglų, klientas atsako už vertimo paslaugos teikimą.
 - Atlikite įrangos priežiūrą tik gerai susipažinę su priežiūros vadovu ir jį supratę.
 - Nesilaikant šio įspėjimo galimas paslaugos teikėjo, operatoriaus ar paciento sužeidimas dėl elektros šoko, mechaninio ar kito pavojaus.

AVISO

Português
(Portugal)
(PT-PT)

- Este manual de assistência está disponível apenas em inglês.
- Se o prestador de serviços de assistência do cliente necessitar do manual noutra idioma, a disponibilização dos serviços de tradução é da responsabilidade do cliente.
 - Não tente reparar o equipamento se não tiver consultado e compreendido este manual de assistência.
 - O não cumprimento das instruções constantes neste aviso pode resultar em ferimentos no prestador de serviços de assistência, no operador ou no paciente devido a choques eléctricos, perigos mecânicos ou outros problemas.

ПОПЕРЕДЖЕННЯ

Українська
(UK)

Цей посібник із технічного обслуговування доступний лише англійською мовою.

- Якщо постачальнику послуг із технічного обслуговування потрібна інформація мовою, відмінною від англійської, відповідальність за надання послуг перекладу несе користувач.
- Технічне обслуговування обладнання можна виконувати лише після ознайомлення з посібником із технічного обслуговування та усвідомлення його змісту.
- Недотримання цього попередження може призвести до травм постачальника послуг, оператора або пацієнта, спричинених дією електричного струму, механічних або інших пошкоджень.

PERINGATAN

Bahasa
Indonesia
(ID)

Panduan Servis ini hanya tersedia dalam Bahasa Inggris.

- Jika penyedia layanan pelanggan memerlukan bahasa di luar Bahasa Inggris, maka pelanggan bertanggung jawab untuk memberikan layanan tersebut.
- Jangan mencoba menyervis peralatan ini, kecuali Panduan Servis ini telah dijadikan rujukan dan dipahami dengan baik.
- Kelalaian memperhatikan Peringatan ini dapat menyebabkan cedera terhadap penyedia layanan, operator, atau pasien akibat bahaya kejutan listrik, mekanik, dan bahaya lainnya.

คำเตือน

ไทย
(TH)

คู่มือซ่อมบำรุงนี้เฉพาะภาษาอังกฤษเท่านั้น

- หากผู้ให้บริการของลูกค้าต้องการฉบับภาษาอื่นนอกเหนือจากภาษาอังกฤษ ลูกค้าต้องเป็นผู้รับผิดชอบในการจัดเตรียมคู่มือซ่อมบำรุงฉบับแปล
- โปรดอย่าซ่อมอุปกรณ์โดยไม่ศึกษา และทำความเข้าใจคู่มือซ่อมบำรุงนี้
- หากไม่ปฏิบัติตามคำเตือนนี้อาจส่งผลให้ผู้ให้บริการ ผู้ใช้งานอุปกรณ์ หรือผู้ป่วยได้รับบาดเจ็บจากไฟฟ้าช็อต อันตรายจากกลไกของอุปกรณ์ หรืออันตรายอื่นๆ

BRĪDINĀJUMS

Latviski
(LV)

Šī apkalpes rokasgrāmata ir pieejama tikai angļu valodā.

- Ja klienta pakalpojumu sniedzējam ir nepieciešama cita valoda, kas nav angļu valoda, klienta pienākums ir nodrošināt tulkojumu.
- Nemēģiniet apkalpot aprīkojumu, ja apkalpes rokasgrāmata nav izlasīta un izprasta.
- Ja šis brīdinājums netiek ievērots, pakalpojumu sniedzējs, operators vai pacients var gūt traumas no elektrošoka vai var rasties mehānisks vai cita veida apdraudējums.

UPOZORENJE

Srpski
(SR)

Ovaj priručnik za servisiranje dostupan je samo na engleskom jeziku.

- Ako klijentov serviser zahteva jezik koji nije engleski, odgovornost je na klijentu da pruži usluge prevođenja.
- Nemojte da pokušavate da servisirate opremu ako prethodno niste pročitali i razumeli ovaj priručnik.
- Ako ne poštujete ovo upozorenje, može doći do povređivanja serviser, operatera ili pacijenta uzrokovnog električnim udarom, mehaničkim i drugim opasnostima.

CẢNH BÁO

Tiếng Việt
(VI)

Hướng dẫn sử dụng dịch vụ này chỉ sẵn dùng bằng tiếng Anh.

- Nếu nhà cung cấp dịch vụ của khách hàng yêu cầu ngôn ngữ khác ngoài tiếng Anh, thì khách hàng phải có trách nhiệm cung cấp các dịch vụ dịch thuật.
- Không được tìm cách sửa chữa thiết bị trừ khi đã tham khảo và hiểu rõ Hướng dẫn sử dụng dịch vụ này.
- Bỏ qua lời cảnh báo này có thể gây thương tích cho nhà cung cấp dịch vụ, nhân viên vận hành hoặc bệnh nhân do sốc điện, những nguy hiểm về máy móc hoặc yếu tố khác.

ЕСКЕРТУ

Қазақ тілінде
(KK)

Осы қызмет көрсету нұсқаулығы тек ағылшын тілінде қолжетімді.

- Егер тұтынушылардың қызметтер жеткізушісі ағылшын тілінен басқа тілді талап етсе, аудару қызметтерімен қамтамасыз ету тұтынушының жауапкершілігіне кіреді.
- Осы қызмет көрсету нұсқаулығын түсініп, ол туралы кеңес алмайынша жабдыққа қызмет көрсетуге тырыспаңыз.
- Осы ескертуді орындамау электр тогының соғуы, механикалық немесе басқа да қауіптер салдарынан қызметтер жеткізушісінің, оператордың немесе емделушінің жарақаттануына алып келуі мүмкін.

BABALA

Tagalog
(TL)

Available lamang sa Ingles ang Manwal ng Serbisyo ng ito.

- Kung ang kailangan lamang ng tagabigay ng serbisyo ng kustomer ng wika maliban sa Ingles, responsibilidad ng kustomer na magbigay ng serbisyo sa pagsasalin wika nito.
- Huwag subukan na iserbisyo ang mga kasangkapan maliban kung nakonsulta ang nauunawaan itong Manwal ng Serbisyo.
- Ang pagkabigong maunawaan ang Babalang ito ay maaring maging resulta ng pinsala sa tagabigay ng serbisyo, nagpapagana o pasyente mula sa pagkakakoryente, mekanikal o iba pang peligro.

VIÐVÖRUN

Íslenska
(IS)

Þessi þjónustuhandbók er aðeins fánleg á ensku.

- Ef þjónustuaðili viðskiptavinar þarf annað tungumál en ensku er það á ábyrgð viðskiptavinarins að veita þýðingarþjónustu.
- Ekki reyna að þjónusta búnaðinn nema þessir þjónustuhandbækur hafi verið skoðaðir og skilið.
- Ef ekki er gætt að þessari viðvörðun getur það valdið meiðslum á þjónustuaðila, stjórnanda eða sjúklingi vegna raflosts, vélrænni hættu eða annarri hættu.

Damage in transportation

All packages should be closely examined at time of delivery. If damage is apparent write "Damage In Shipment" on ALL copies of the freight or express bill BEFORE delivery is accepted or "signed for" by a GE representative or hospital receiving agent. Whether noted or concealed, damage MUST be reported to the carrier immediately upon discovery, or in any event, within 14 days after receipt, and the contents and containers held for inspection by the carrier. A transportation company will not pay a claim for damage if an inspection is not requested within this 14 day period.

Certified electrical contractor statement - For USA only

All electrical Installations that are preliminary to positioning of the equipment at the site prepared for the equipment shall be performed by licensed electrical contractors. Other connections between pieces of electrical equipment, calibrations and testing shall be performed by qualified GE personnel. In performing all electrical work on these products, GE will use its own specially trained field engineers. All of GE's electrical work on these products will comply with the requirements of the applicable electrical codes.

The purchaser of GE equipment shall only utilize qualified personnel (i.e., GE's field engineers, personnel of third-party service companies with equivalent training, or licensed electricians) to perform electrical servicing on the equipment.

Omissions & errors

If there are any omissions, errors or suggestions for improving this documentation, please contact the GE Healthcare Austria GmbH & Co OG Service Documentation group with specific information listing the system type, manual title, part number, revision number, page number and suggestion details.

Mail the information to:

GE Healthcare Austria GmbH & Co OG
Tiefenbach 15
A-4871 Zipf Austria - Europe
Attn.: "Service Documentation"

GE employees should use the global complaint recording tool to report service documentation issues. These issues will then be in the internal problem reporting tool and communicated to the writer.

Service safety considerations



Danger

Dangerous voltages, capable of causing death are present in this system. Use extreme caution when handling, testing and adjusting.



Warning

Use all Personal Protection Equipment (PPE) such as gloves, safety shoes, safety glasses, and kneeling pad, to reduce the risk of injury.

1.2 Legal Notes

The contents of this publication may not be copied or duplicated in any form, in whole or in part, without prior written permission of General Electric.

GE Healthcare Austria GmbH & Co OG may revise this publication from time to time without written notice.

Trademarks

All products and their name brands are trademarks of their respective holders.

Copyrights

© 2021 - 2022 by General Electric Company Inc. All Rights Reserved.

1.3 Purpose of this Service Manual

This Service Manual is valid for Voluson Expert Series (Voluson Expert 22) ultrasound systems.

The service manual is divided into 10 chapters. In the beginning of the manual, before chapter 1, you will find the revision overview and the Table of Contents (TOC).

The language policy for GE's service documentation, the omission & errors and the legal information are included in the beginning of this chapter (chapter 1).

Table 1-1: Contents in this service manual

Chapter Number and Title	Description
<i>Chapter 1 - Introduction</i>	Contains a content summary and warnings.
<i>Chapter 2 - Site Preparation</i>	Contains pre-installation requirements.
<i>Chapter 3 - Voluson Expert Series Setup</i>	Contains setup and installation procedures.
<i>Chapter 4 - Functional Checks</i>	Contains functional checks that are recommended as part of the installation, or as required during servicing and care and maintenance.
<i>Chapter 5 - Components and Functions (Theory)</i>	Contains block diagrams and functional explanations of the electronics.
<i>Chapter 6 - Alignment and Calibration</i>	Contains instructions on how to make available adjustments.
<i>Chapter 7 - Diagnostics/Troubleshooting</i>	Provides procedures for running diagnostic or related routines.
<i>Chapter 8 - Replacement Procedures</i>	Provides disassembly procedures and reassembly procedures for all Field Replaceable Units (FRU) and Customer Replaceable Units (CRU).
<i>Chapter 9 - Renewal Parts</i>	Contains a complete list of field replaceable parts.
<i>Chapter 10 - Care and Maintenance</i>	Provides care and maintenance procedures.



The screen graphics and illustrations in this Service Manual are for illustrative purposes only and may be slightly different from what is displayed on the screen or device.

1.3.1 Typical Users of the "Basic" Service Manual

- Service personnel (setup, maintenance, etc.)
- Hospital's service personnel
- Architectural planners/installation planners (some parts of *Chapter 2 - Site Preparation*)

1.3.2 Models covered by this Manual

Table 1-2: Voluson Expert 22 - model designations

Part Number	Description	-
H48711KA	Voluson Expert 22 HDU	-

1.3.3 System History - Hardware and Software Versions

This manual applies to:

Voluson Expert 22 Systems

- with Serial Number F060070 -
- with Software version EC400 Ext.x, 40.x.x

1.3.4 Purpose of Operator Manual(s)

Any Operator Manuals and/or Instructions for Use (IfU) should be fully read and understood before operating the Voluson Expert Series system and also kept near the system for quick reference.

The electronic versions are available via the Help function (**F1** key) on Voluson Expert Series control console. For more information and detailed description refer to [Section 3.7.5.5 "How to change Language of Instruction for Use" on page 3-53](#).

The translated manuals are available on a DVD delivered with the system.

1.4 Important Conventions

Content in this chapter

<i>1.4.1 Conventions used in this Manual</i>	1-13
<i>1.4.2 Standard Hazard Icons</i>	1-13
<i>1.4.3 Product Labels and Icons</i>	1-15

1.4.1 Conventions used in this Manual

MODEL DESIGNATIONS

This manual covers the Voluson Expert Series ultrasound systems listed in *"Models covered by this Manual"*.

ICONS

Pictures, or icons, are used wherever they reinforce the printed message. The icons, labels and conventions used on the product and in the service information are described in this chapter.

SAFETY PRECAUTION MESSAGES

Various levels of safety precaution messages may be found on the equipment and in the service information. The different levels of concern are identified by a flag word that precedes the precautionary message. Known or potential hazards to personnel are labeled in one of following ways:

- **Danger**
- **Warning**
- **Caution**

1.4.2 Standard Hazard Icons

Important information will usually be preceded by the exclamation point (!) contained within a triangle, as seen throughout this chapter. In addition to text, several different graphical icons (symbols) may be used to make you aware of specific types of hazards that could cause harm. Even if a symbol isn't used in this manual, it is included for your reference.



Danger

Indicates the presence of a hazard that will cause severe personal injury or death if the instructions are ignored.



Warning

Indicates the presence of a hazard that can cause severe personal injury and property damage if instructions are ignored.



Caution

Indicates the presence of a hazard that will or can cause minor personal injury and property damage if instructions are ignored. Equipment damage possible.



Electric Hazard

Indicates the risk of injury from electric hazards.



Bio Hazard

Indicates the risk of disease transmission or infections.



Explosion Hazard

Indicates the risk of injury from explosion hazards.



Moving Hazard

Indicates the risk of injury from moving or tipping hazards.



Mechanical Hazard
Indicates the risk of injury from mechanical/pinch hazards.



Acoustic Output Hazard
Indicates the risk of injury from acoustic output hazards.



Laser Radiation Hazard
Indicates the risk of injury from laser radiation.



Non-ionizing Hazard
Indicates the risk of injury from non-ionizing radiation.



Operating LED
Indicates the risk of injury from light beams entering the eye. Do not stare into the light beam of the LED.



Hot Surface Hazard
Indicates that the marked item can be hot and should not be touched without taking care.



Electrostatic Discharge (ESD) Hazard
Describes precautions necessary to avoid static electricity that will or can damage integrated circuits.



This icon is used when options or features are specific for BT-Software versions.



This icon is used for special hints, or tips that may facilitate servicing a Voluson Expert Series system.

Note

*Notes are used to provide important information about an item or a procedure.
Be sure to read the notes; the Information contained in a note can often save you time or effort.*

Standard icons that indicate that a special procedure is to be used
Other icons make you aware of specific procedures that should be followed.

Table 1-3: Standard icons that indicates that a special procedure is to be used

Avoid Static Electricity	Tag and Lock Out	Wear Eye Protection	Wear Hand Protection	Wear Foot Protection

1.4.3 Product Labels and Icons

The following table describes the purpose and location of labels, safety icons and other important information provided on the equipment.

Table 1-4: Product Labels and Icons

LABEL/SYMBOL	PURPOSE/MEANING	LOCATION
Identification and Rating Plate	Manufacturer's name and address Model and Serial numbers Electrical ratings	rear side of the system on plug of each probe
	Manufacturer's name and address	Identification and Rating Plate (rear side of the system / on plug of each probe)
	Date of manufacture	Identification and Rating Plate (rear side of the system / on plug of each probe)
	Serial number	Identification and Rating Plate (rear side of the system / on plug of each probe)
	Brand and model (reference number)	Identification and Rating Plate (rear side of the system / on plug of each probe)
Device Listing / Certification Labels	Laboratory logo or labels denoting conformance with industry safety standards such as UL or IEC.	rear side of the system
	CE Conformity mark according to Medical Device Regulation (MDR) 2017/745. 0123 : Identification number of notified body TÜV Süd Product Service.	Identification and Rating Plate (rear side of the system / on plug of each probe)
	"Tested and production monitored by TÜV Product Service NRTL with respect to ELECTRICAL SHOCK, FIRE and MECHANICAL HAZARDS only in accordance with UL2601-1 and CAN/CSA C22.2 NO.601.1."	Identification and Rating Plate (rear side of the system)
Type/Class Label	Used to indicate the degree of safety or protection.	
IP Code (IPX 0) IP Code (IPX 1) IP Code (IPX 7)	degree of protection provided by enclosure per IEC 60529: IPX 0 - no protection against ingress of water IPX 1 - protected against dripping water IPX 7 - protected against the effects of immersion	various
	Equipment Type BF (man in box, symbol IEC 60417-5333) indicates B Type equipment having even more electrical isolation than standard Type B equipment because it is intended for intimate patient contact.	Identification and Rating Plate (rear side of the system / on plug of each probe)
	Defibrillator-proof Type CF equipment (heart in box with paddle, symbol IEC 60417-5336) identifies a defibrillation-proof type CF applied part complying with IEC 60601-1.	front side of the ECG-preamplifier
"DANGER - Risk of explosion used in ..."	The system is not designed for use with flammable anesthetic gases.	Indicated in the Service Manual.
	This precaution is intended to prevent injury that may result if one person attempt to move the system considerable distances or on an incline due to the weight of the system.	Used in the Service and User Manual which should be adjacent to equipment at all times for quick reference.
	Pushing prohibited. Do not lean on the system. Tipping danger. Take special care when moving the system.	various

LABEL/SYMBOL	PURPOSE/MEANING	LOCATION
	Maximum load - Danger of breaking. Do not put any items exceeding the indicated maximum load limit on this shelf. Items might be crushed when lowering the user interface.	at top cover of the system
	"Read and understand all Instructions for Use" This symbol advises the reader to consult the accompanying documents (operator manual or other instructions).	rear side of the system in the "Home" menu
	Electronic Instructions for Use - To indicate on product or product packaging that relevant information for use of the product is available in electronic form rather than, or in addition to, printed paper form.	various
	Pinch point Watch your hands and fingers when adjusting the monitor. Keep hands clear of openings.	rear side of the Monitor
	This symbol indicates that in the United States of America, federal law restricts this device to sale by or on the order of a physician.	Identification and Rating Plate (rear side of the system)
	Waste Electrical and Electronic Equipment (WEEE) Disposal. This symbol indicates that waste electrical and electronic equipment must not be disposed as unsorted municipal waste and must be collected separately. Please contact an authorized representative of the manufacturer for information concerning the decommissioning of your equipment.	Identification and Rating Plate (rear side of the system / on plug of each probe)
	This product consists of devices that may contain mercury, which must be recycled or disposed of in accordance with local, state, or country laws. (Within this system, the backlight lamps in the monitor and the Touch Panel display, contain mercury.)	Identification and Rating Plate (rear side of the system) not visible: - below the cover on read side of Monitor - on rear side of the Touch Panel
	GOST-R label (Russia Regulatory Country Clearance)	Identification and Rating Plate (rear side of the system)
	"CAUTION - Consult accompanying documents" This symbol is used to advise the reader to consult accompanying documents for important safety-related information such as warnings and pre-cautions that cannot be presented on the device itself.	various
	"CAUTION - Dangerous electric voltage" (lightning flash with arrowhead) is used to indicate electric shock hazards. Unplug the main plug before opening the system!	various
	Operating LED - Do not stare into the light beam of the LED.	back side of the User Interface
	Hot Surface Indicates that the marked items can be hot and should not be touched without taking care.	at Metal Plate that covers BackEnd
	Pinch Point - Keep away fingers, hand, ... from the mechanics of the braking gear.	mechanics of the braking gear
	"Mains OFF" Indicates the power off position of the mains power switch.	rear of system at mains switch (on power supply)
	"On/Off" or "Standby" CAUTION: System shutdown using this button DOES NOT disconnect the Voluson Expert Series from mains voltage!	ON/OFF Standby button on control console

LABEL/SYMBOL	PURPOSE/MEANING	LOCATION
	"Mains ON" Indicates the power on position of the mains power switch.	rear of system at mains switch (on power supply)
	"Grounding" indicates the protective earth terminal.	rear of system
	"Equipotential" indicates the terminal to be used for connecting equipotential conductors when interconnecting (grounding) with other equipment.	rear of system next to the mains power cable
	These symbols indicate that the product contains hazardous materials in excess of the limits established by the Chinese standard GB/T 26572 Requirements of concentration limits for certain restricted substances in electrical and electronic products.	rear side of the system on the plug of each probe
	Every system has a unique marking for identification, the Unique Device Identification (UDI) Label. The UDI label consists of a series of (alpha-) numeric characters and barcode which uniquely identify the Voluson Expert Series system as a medical device manufactured by General Electric.	Identification and Rating Plate (rear side of the system / on plug of each probe) Upgraded systems adjacent to the Rating Plate
	Product was refurbished / manufactured by GE Healthcare Austria GmbH & Co OG.	rear of system
	The Common Mark of Products Circulation certifies that the products bearing this mark, passed all conformity assessment (approval) procedures.	Identification and Rating Plate (rear side of the system)
	Mark of conformity with the Technical Regulations. This product meets the requirements of the Technical Regulations on medical devices, approved by Resolution No. 753 of the Cabinet of Ministers of Ukraine of 2 October 2013.	Identification and Rating Plate (rear side of the system)
	This symbol indicates that the device is a Medical Device.	Identification and Rating Plate (rear side of the system)

1.5 Safety Considerations

Content in this chapter

<i>1.5.1 Introduction</i>	<i>1-18</i>
<i>1.5.2 Human Safety</i>	<i>1-18</i>
<i>1.5.3 Mechanical Safety</i>	<i>1-19</i>
<i>1.5.4 Electrical Safety</i>	<i>1-20</i>
<i>1.5.5 Auxiliary Devices Safety</i>	<i>1-20</i>

1.5.1 Introduction

The following safety precautions must be observed during all phases of operation, service and repair of this equipment. Failure to comply with these precautions or with specific warnings elsewhere in this manual, violates safety standards of design, manufacture and intended use of the equipment.

1.5.2 Human Safety

- Operating personnel must not remove the system covers.
- Servicing should be performed by authorized personnel only.

Only personnel who have participated a Voluson Expert Series training are authorized to service the equipment.



Danger

Dangerous voltages, capable of causing death are present in this system. Use extreme caution when handling, testing and adjusting.



Warning

Do not operate the system in an explosive atmosphere. Operation of any electrical equipment in such an environment constitutes a definite safety hazard.



Warning

Because of the limited access to cabinets and equipment in the field, placing people in awkward positions, GE has limited the lifting weight for one person in the field to 16 KG (35 LBS). Anything over 16 KG (35 LBS) requires 2 people.



Warning

If the covers are removed from an operating Voluson Expert Series system, some metal surfaces may be warm enough to pose a potential heat hazard if touched, even while in shutdown mode.



Warning

Do not substitute parts or modify the system. Because of the danger of introducing additional hazards, ONLY install GE Healthcare Austria GmbH & Co OG approved parts. DO NOT perform any unauthorized modification of the system.



Warning: Risk of electrical shock

Beware that the mains power supply, extended power shutdown and BackEnd processor may be energized even if the power is turned off when the cord is still plugged into the AC outlet.

- Ensure that the system is turned off and disconnected from power source.
 - Wait for at least 20 seconds for capacitors to discharge as there are no test points to verify isolation. The amber light on the control console **ON/OFF** button will turn off.
-



Warning

Use extreme caution as long as the Voluson Expert Series is un-stable, not resting on all four caster wheels.



Warning

Use all Personal Protection Equipment (PPE) such as gloves, safety shoes, safety glasses, and kneeling pad, to reduce the risk of injury.



Warning

Beware of possible sharp edges on all mechanical parts. If sharp edges are encountered, the appropriate PPE should be used to reduce the risk of injury.



Warning

Wear all PPE including gloves as indicated in the chemical Material Safety Data Sheet (MSDS).

1.5.3 Mechanical Safety

Moving the system on plains	Moving the system on inclines
	

Caution

The Voluson Expert Series systems weighs approx. 110 kg, depending on installed peripherals, (242.5 lbs.) when it's ready for use.

Be careful when moving the system. Two people are required when moving the Voluson Expert Series system on inclines or lifting more than 16 kg (35 lbs).



- Always lower and center the control console (TUI) to its minimum height and lock it in its parking (locked) position.
- Secure the monitor and accessories for transport.
- Lock the monitor arm and flap down the monitor. The 2 levers of the monitor arm should be tightened together by a strap or plastic foil to prevent from unexpected movement.
- Use the rear handle to move the system.
- Remove all obstacles.
- Move the system slowly and carefully in forward direction.
- Avoid collisions with walls or door frames.
- Always place the system on horizontal ground and engage the caster brakes.
- Do not move the system when the brakes are engaged.
- Move the system forward or backward when going up or down inclines. Do not move the system sideways or diagonally.

Failure to follow the precautions could result in injury, uncontrolled motion and costly damage.

Warning



Ultrasound systems and probes are highly sensitive medical instruments that can easily be damaged by improper handling. Use care when handling and protect from damage also when not in use. Do not use a damaged or defective ultrasound system or probe. Failure to follow these precautions can result in serious injury and system damage.



Warning

Never use a probe that has fallen to the floor. Even if it looks OK, it may be damaged.

Note

Special care should be taken when transporting the system in a vehicle:

- *Eject any DVD/CD from the drive.*
- *Place the probes in their carrying cases.*
- *DO NOT use the control console as an anchor point.*
- *Secure the system with straps in an upright position and lock the caster wheels (brake).*
- *Ensure that the Voluson Expert Series system is firmly secured while inside the vehicle.*
- *Drive cautiously to prevent vibration damage.*

1.5.4 Electrical Safety

1.5.4.1 Safe Practices

Follow these guidelines to minimize electrical shock hazards whenever using the system:

- To minimize electrical shock hazard, the equipment chassis must be connected to an electrical ground.
- The system is equipped with a three-conductor AC power cable. This must be plugged into an approved electrical outlet with safety ground.
- The power outlet used for this equipment should not be shared with other types of equipment.
- Both the system power cable and the power connector must meet international electrical standards.



Warning

Connecting a Voluson Expert Series system to the wrong voltage level will most likely destroy it.

1.5.4.2 Probes

All probes for Voluson Expert Series systems are designed and manufactured to provide trouble-free, reliable service. To ensure this, correct handling of probes is important, and the following points should be noted:

- Do not drop a probe or strike it against a hard surface, as this may damage the probe elements, acoustic lens, or housing.
- Inspect the probe prior to each use for damage or degradation to the housing, cable strain relief, lens, seal, connector pins and locking mechanism.
- Do not use a cracked or damaged probe. In this event, call your field service representative immediately to obtain a replacement.
- Avoid pulling, pinching or kinking the probe cable, since a damaged cable may compromise the electrical safety of the probe.
- Never immerse the probe connector or adapter into any liquid.
- The system has more than one type of probe port. Use the appropriate probe port designed for the probe you are connecting.

Note

For detailed information on handling probes, refer to the Voluson Expert Series Instructions for Use and the Care Card supplied with the probe.

1.5.5 Auxiliary Devices Safety



Caution

Power supplies for additional equipment **MUST** comply with IEC 60601-1.



Caution

Do not attempt to use different peripherals and accessories (brand and model; connected via USB port) other than approved and provided by GE Healthcare Austria GmbH & Co OG! The Voluson Expert Series ultrasound system is an extremely sensitive and complex medical system. Any unauthorized peripherals may cause system failure or damage.



Caution

There is an increased risk of electric shock due to increased leakage current when connecting devices not explicitly recognized by the system manufacturer GE Healthcare Austria GmbH & Co OG to the Voluson Expert Series ultrasound system.

Voluson Expert Series systems are equipped with an isolation transformer to provide the required separation from AC mains.

The IEC60601 standard provides a guideline for safely interconnecting medical devices in systems.

“Equipment connected to the analog or digital interface must comply with the respective IEC standards (e.g., IEC60950 for data processing equipment and IEC60601-1 for medical equipment).”

Everybody who connects additional equipment to the signal input portion or signal output portion configures a medical system and is therefore responsible that the system complies with the requirements of the system standard IEC60601.

1. The medical device may be connected to a single IEC XXX device (protection class I) placed in a room which is not medically used.

2. If the device is to be connected in a medically-used room the following rule applies:

- IEC XXX compliant devices (protection class I) may be connected with an additional safety measure.
- IEC 60601 compliant devices may be connected as such.

For all situations 1 and 2, the additional device shall be installed outside the typical patient environment.

Possible additional safety measures are additional protective earth connection between the 2 devices, or a safety isolation mains transformer for the other device.

Special care must be taken, if the device is connected to computer network (e.g., Ethernet), because other devices could be connected without any control. There could be a potential difference between the protective earth and any line of the computer network including the shield.

In this case the only way to operate the system safely is to use an isolated signal link with minimum air clearance and creepage distance of the isolation device in agreement with IEC60601 incl. national deviations. For computer networks there are media converters available which convert the electrical to optical signals. Please consider that this converter must comply with IEC xxx standards* and is battery operated or connected to a medical grade Class II AC/DC supply.

Note *The Ethernet LAN input and output (I/O) connector is provided with a built-in galvanic isolation according to IEC60601 (i.e., 1500 V AC). All other input and output (I/O) connections do not provide a built-in galvanic isolation (USB, DVI, HDMI, VGA, S-Video, ...).*

* IEC xxx stands for standards such as:

- IEC60601 for medical devices
- IEC60950 for information technology equipment etc.

Note *The system integrator (any person connecting the medical device to other devices) is responsible that connections are safe. If in doubt, consult the technical service department or your local representative.*

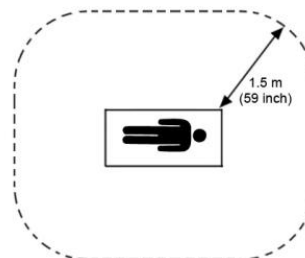
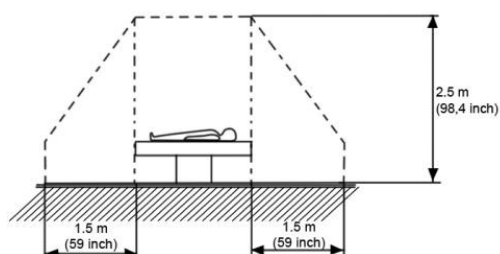
Caution



The leakage current of the entire system including any / all auxiliary equipment must not exceed the limit values as per EN60601-1-1 (IEC60601-1-1) respectively other valid national or international standards. All equipment must comply with CSA, IEC or other relevant requirements.

Caution

Please observe that some printers may not be medical devices! If Bluetooth-, Line- or Laser Printers are no medical devices, they have to be located outside of the typical patient environment. Examples for typical patient environments can be found in standard IEC 60601 (see illustrations below).



Caution

Auxiliary equipment must only be connected with the special 12V DC supply provided for the electrical safety of the system.



Caution

Auxiliary equipment with connection to AC Mains requires galvanic separation of the signal and/or control leads.

Note *Always observe the instructions given in the manual of the peripheral/auxiliary device.*

For hardware installation procedures see: [Chapter 3 - Voluson Expert Series Setup](#)



Warning

After each installation, the leakage currents have to be measured according to IEC 60601-1, IEC 62353 or other relevant standard.

Note *All peripherals mounted on the Voluson Expert Series system chassis must be firmly secured in position.*

1.6 Labels Locations

The Voluson Expert Series ultrasound system comes equipped with product labels and icons. These labels and icons represent pertinent information regarding the operation of the system.

Note For description of all symbols and labels used in combination with this Voluson Expert Series ultrasound system, refer to [Section 1.4.3 on page 1-15](#) and Chapter 2 in the Instructions for Use of your system.

1.6.1 Identification and Rating Plate

The Identification and Rating Plate is located on the rear of the Voluson Expert Series system.

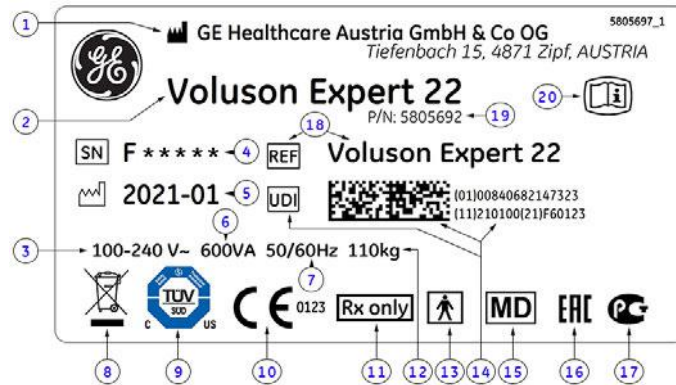


Figure 1-1: Identification and Rating Plate: Example

1	Manufacturer	8	WEEE Disposal Icon	15	Medical Device
2	Model Type	9	TUEV NRTL Certification mark	16	EAC label
3	System Voltage range	10	CE Conformity mark	17	GOST-R label
4	System Serial Number	11	FDA Guidance	18	Brand and model
5	Manufacturing date	12	approx. weight of the system	19	Part Number
6	Power Consumption nominal	13	Safety type: Type BF	20	electronic Instructions for Use
7	Frequency	14	UDI label (barcode and characters)		

1.7 Dangerous Procedure Warnings

Warnings, such as the examples below, precede potentially dangerous procedures throughout this manual. Instructions contained in the warnings must be followed.



Danger

Dangerous voltages, capable of causing death are present in this system. Use extreme caution when handling, testing and adjusting.



Warning

If the covers are removed from an operating Voluson Expert Series system, some metal surfaces may be warm enough to pose a potential heat hazard if touched, even while in shutdown mode.



Warning

Do not operate the system in an explosive atmosphere. Operation of any electrical equipment in such an environment constitutes a definite safety hazard.



Warning

Do not substitute parts or modify the system. Because of the danger of introducing additional hazards, ONLY install GE Healthcare Austria GmbH & Co OG approved parts. DO NOT perform any unauthorized modification of the system.

1.8 Lockout/Tagout (LOTO) Requirements

Follow OSHA Lockout/Tagout requirements (USA) or local Lockout/Tagout requirements by ensuring you are in total control of the AC power plug at all times during the service process.

To apply Lockout/Tagout (LOTO):

1. Plan and prepare for shutdown.
2. Shutdown the equipment.
3. Isolate the equipment.
4. Apply Lockout/Tagout Devices.
5. Control all stored and residual energy.
6. Verify isolation.

All potentially hazardous stored or residual energy is relieved.

Warning

Energy Control and Power Lockout for the Voluson Expert Series system:



When servicing parts of the system where there is exposure to voltage greater than 30 Volts:

1. Follow LOTO (Lockout/Tagout) procedures.
2. Turn off the breaker.
3. Unplug the Voluson Expert Series system.
4. Maintain control of the Voluson Expert Series system power plug.
5. Wait for at least 30 seconds for capacitors to discharge as there are no test points to verify isolation.

Ultrasound system components may be energized.

1.9 Returning/Shipping System, Probes and Repair Parts

When returning or shipping the Voluson Expert Series system in the original packaging:

- the control console must be centered and locked in “unextended” position
- system must be lowered to its minimum height with monitor flapped down

Note

For detailed description see [Section 6.2.1 on page 6-3](#).

Equipment being returned must be clean and free of blood and other infectious substances.

GE policy states that body fluids must be properly removed from any part or equipment prior to shipment. GE employees, as well as customers, are responsible for ensuring that parts/equipment have been properly decontaminated prior to shipment. Under no circumstance should a part or equipment with visible body fluids be taken or shipped from a clinic or site (for example, body coils or and ultrasound probe).

The purpose of the regulation is to protect employees in the transportation industry, as well as the people who will receive or open this package.

Note

The US Department of Transportation (DOT) has ruled that “items what were saturated and/or dripping with human blood that are now caked with dried blood; or which were used or intended for use in patient care” are “regulated medical waste” for transportation purpose and must be transported as a hazardous material.

Note

The user/service staff should dispose of all the waste properly, per federal, state, and local waste disposal regulations.

The Voluson Expert Series system is not meant to be used for long-term storage of patient data or images. The user is responsible for the data on the system and a regular backup is highly recommended.

If the system is sent for repair, please ensure that any patient information is backed up and erased from the system before shipping. It is always possible during system failure and repair to lose patient data. GE is not responsible for the loss of this data.

If PHI (Patient Healthcare Information) data needs to be sent to GE employees for service purposes, GE will ascertain agreement from the customer. Patient information shall only be transferred by approved service processes, tools and devices restricting access, protecting or encrypting data where required, and providing traceability in the form of paper or electronic documents at each stage of the procedure while maintaining compliance with cross-border restrictions of patient information transfers.

For brief repacking instructions refer to [Section 8.1.1 on page 8-3](#).

1.10 EMC, EMI and ESD

1.10.1 What is EMC?

Electromagnetic compatibility describes a level of performance of a device within its electromagnetic environment. This environment consists of the device itself and its surroundings including other equipment, power sources and persons with which the device must interface. Inadequate compatibility results when a susceptible device fails to perform as intended due to interference from its environment or when the device produces unacceptable levels of emission to its environment. This interference is often referred to as radio-frequency or electromagnetic interference (RFI/EMI) and can be radiated through space or conducted over interconnecting power or signal cables. In addition to electromagnetic energy, EMC also includes possible effects from electrical fields, magnetic fields, electrostatic discharge and disturbances in the electrical power supply.

For applicable standards please refer to Chapter 2 in the Instructions for Use of the Voluson Expert Series ultrasound system.

1.10.2 Compliance

The Voluson Expert Series system conforms to all applicable conducted and radiated emission limits and to immunity from electrostatic discharge, radiated and conducted RF fields, magnetic fields and power line transient requirements as mentioned in IEC60601-1-2.

Note *For CE Compliance, it is critical that all covers, screws, shielding, gaskets, mesh, clamps, are in good condition, installed tightly without skew or stress. Proper installation following all comments noted in this service manual is required to achieve full EMC performance.*

1.10.3 Electrostatic Discharge (ESD) Prevention

Warning



DO NOT touch any boards with integrated circuits prior to taking necessary ESD precautions.

1. When installing boards, ESD may cause damage to a board. ALWAYS connect yourself, via an arm-wrist strap, to the ESD connection point located on the rear of the system (nearby the power connector).
2. Follow general guidelines for handling of electrostatic sensitive equipment.



Warning: Risk of electrical shock! System must be turned off.

Avoid all contact with electrical contacts, conductors and components.

Always use non-conductive handles designed for the removal and replacement of ESD sensitive parts. All parts that have the potential for storing energy must be discharged or isolated before making contact.

1.11 Customer Assistance

1.11.1 Contact Information

If the system does not work as indicated in this Service Manual or in the Instructions for Use, or if you require additional assistance, please contact the local distributor or appropriate support resource, as listed below.

Note

Collect vital system information (see: [Section 7.1 on page 7-2](#)) before you call:

- System Type
- System Serial number (also visible on label on back of the system)
- Application Software version
- Backup version
- additional information about installed software

Table 1-5: phone numbers for customer assistance

Location	Phone Number	
USA GE Medical Systems Ultrasound Service Engineering 9900 Innovation Drive (RP-2123) Wauwatosa, WI 53226, USA	Service	Tel: 1-800-437-1171
	Service Parts	Tel: 1-800-558-2040
	Online Center	Tel: 1-800-321-7937
	Application Support	Tel: 1-800-682-5327
		Tel: 1-262-542-5698
Canada	Service	Tel: 1-800-668-0732
	Application Support	Tel: 1-262-524-5698
Latin America	Service	Tel: +1-262-524-5300
	Application Support	Tel: +1-262-542-5698
Europe GE Ultraschall Deutschland GmbH Beethovenstraße 239 Postfach 11 05 60, D-42655 Solingen Germany	Support	Tel: +49 (0) 212-2802-652
		Fax: +49 (0) 212-2802-4331
EGM	Saudi Arabia Service Center	Tel: (+966) 800 429 2222
	UAE Service Center	Tel: +971 800 3646
Africa	Algeria Service Center	Tel: +213 2179 1212
Asia (Singapore) GE Ultrasound Asia Service Department - Ultrasound 298 Tiong Bahru Road #15-01/06 Central Placa Singapore 168730	Service Department	Tel: +65 6291-8528
		Fax: +65 6291-7006
Japan	Online Center	Tel: +81 42-846-9011
		Fax + 81 42-648-2905
China	Technical Support	Tel: +(86) 400-812-8188
		Tel: +(86) 800-810-8188
India	Technical Support	Tel: 1800-425-8025
		Tel: 1800-425-7255
		Tel: 1800-102-7750
Korea	Technical Support	Tel: +(82) 1544-6119
ANZ	Service Support	Tel: +(61) 1-800-659-465

Location	Phone Number	
Australia	Service Support	Tel: +(61) 1-800-659-465

1.11.2 System Manufacturer

Table 1-6: system manufacturer

Manufacturer	Telephone	FAX
GE Healthcare Austria GmbH & Co OG Austria GmbH & Co OG Tiefenbach 15 A-4871 Zipf Austria - Europe	+43 (0) 7682-3800-0	+43 (0) 7682-3800-47

Chapter 2

Site Preparation

This chapter provides the information required to plan and prepare for the installation of a Voluson Expert Series system. Included are descriptions of the facility and electrical needs to be met by the purchaser.

Content in this chapter

2.1 General Requirements -----	2-2
2.2 Facility Needs -----	2-6

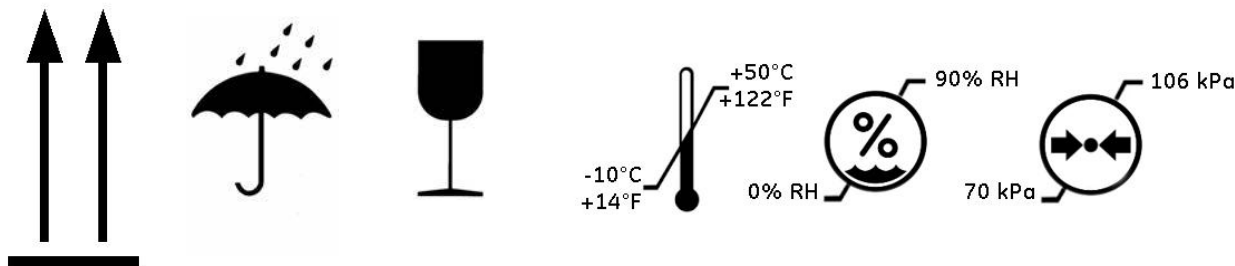
2.1 General Requirements

2.1.1 Environmental requirements

Table 2-1: environmental requirements

Operating Temperature	Operating Humidity	Heat Dissipation	Storage Temperature	Storage Humidity
10 to 30°C (50 to 86°F)	30 to 80% RH non-condensing	2047 BTU/hour	-10 to 50°C (14 to 122°F)	< 90% RH non- condensing

Table 2-2: environmental storage and shipping conditions - labels on package



Caution

If the system has been in storage, transported or is very cold or hot, do not turn on its power until it has had a chance to acclimate to its operating environment. (see: ["System Acclimation Time" on page 3-2](#)).

2.1.1.1 Cooling

The cooling requirement for a Voluson Expert Series system is max. 2047 BTU/hour (typ. 1023 BTU/h). This figure does not include cooling needed for lights, people, or other equipment in the room.

Note Each person in the room places an additional 300 BTU/h demand on the cooling system.

2.1.1.2 Lighting

Bright light is needed for system installation, updates and repairs. However, operator and patient comfort may be optimized if the room light is subdued and indirect. Therefore, a combination lighting system (dim/bright) is recommended. Keep in mind that lighting controls and dimmers can be a source of EMI which could degrade image quality. These controls should be selected to minimize possible interference.

2.1.2 Electrical Requirements

Note GE Healthcare Austria GmbH & Co OG requires a dedicated power and ground for the proper operation of its Ultrasound equipment. This dedicated power shall originate at the last distribution panel before the system.

The Ultrasound will function on voltages from 100-240 Volts and 50 or 60 Hz.

Sites with a mains power system with defined Neutral and Live:

The dedicated line shall consist of one phase, a neutral (not shared with any other circuit), and a full size ground wire from the distribution panel to the ultrasound outlet.

Sites with a mains power system without a defined Neutral:

The dedicated line shall consist of one phase (two lines), not shared with any other circuit, and a full size ground wire from the distribution panel to the ultrasound outlet.

Note Please note that image artifacts can occur, if at any time within the facility, the ground from the main facility's incoming power source to the ultrasound system is only a conduit.

2.1.2.1 Voluson Power Requirements Voluson Expert Series

Table 2-3: electrical specifications for Voluson Expert Series

Voltage	Tolerances	Power Consumption	Frequency
100V - 240V AC	± 10%	max. 600 VA including all options typical ~300 VA without peripherals	50, 60 Hz (± 1 Hz)

2.1.2.2 Inrush Current

Inrush current is not a factor to consider due to the inrush current limiting properties of the power supplies.

2.1.2.3 Site Circuit Breaker

It is recommended that the branch circuit breaker for the system be readily accessible.



Caution: Power outage may occur.

Voluson Expert Series requires a dedicated single branch circuit. To avoid circuit overload and possible loss of critical care equipment, make sure you DO NOT have any other equipment operating on the same circuit.

2.1.2.4 Site Power Outlets

A dedicated AC power outlet must be within reach of the system without extension cords. Other outlets adequate for the external peripherals, medical and test equipment needed to support this system must also be present within 1 m (3.2 ft.) of the system. Electrical installation must meet all current local, state, and national electrical codes.

2.1.2.5 System Power Plug

If the Voluson Expert Series arrives without a power plug, or with the wrong plug, you must contact your GE dealer or the installation engineer must supply what is locally required.

2.1.3 EMI Limitations

Ultrasound systems are susceptible to Electromagnetic Interference (EMI) from radio frequencies, magnetic fields, and transients in the air or wiring. They also generate EMI. The Voluson Expert Series system complies with limits as stated on the EMC label. However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation.

Note

Possible EMI sources should be identified before the system is installed.

Electrical and electronic equipment may produce EMI unintentionally as the result of a defect. Sources of EMI include the following:

- medical lasers
- scanners
- cauterizing guns
- computers
- monitors
- fans
- gel warmers
- microwave oven
- light dimmers
- mobile phones
- in-house wireless phones (DECT phones)
- wireless computer keyboard and mouse
- air conditioning system
- High Frequency (HF) surgery equipment
- general AC/DC adapters

The presence of a broadcast station or broadcast van may also cause interference.

Table 2-4: EMI prevention/abatement

EMI Rule	Details
Be aware of Radio Frequency sources.	Keep the system at least 5 meters (15 feet) away from other EMI sources. Special shielding may be required to eliminate interference problems caused by high frequency, high powered radio or video broadcast signals.
Ground the system.	Poor grounding is the most likely reason a system will have noisy images. Check grounding of the power cord and power outlet.
Assemble all screws, Radio Frequency gaskets, covers and cores.	After you finish repairing or updating the system, assemble all covers and tighten all screws. Any cable with an external connection requires a magnet wrap at each end. Install all covers. Loose or missing covers or Radio Frequency gaskets allow radio frequencies to interfere with the ultrasound signals.
Replace broken Radio Frequency gaskets.	If more than 20% or a pair of the fingers on a Radio Frequency gasket are broken, replace the gasket. Do not turn ON the system until any loose metallic part is removed.
Do not place labels where Radio Frequency gaskets touch metal.	Never place a label where Radio Frequency gaskets meet the system. Otherwise, the gap created will permit Radio Frequency leakage. In case a label has been found in such a position, move it to another more suitable location.
Use GE- specified harnesses and peripherals.	The interconnect cables are grounded and require ferrite beads and other shielding. Also, cable length, material, and routing are all important; do not change from what is specified.
Take care with cellular phones.	Cellular phones may transmit a 5 V/m signal; that could cause image artifacts.
Properly route peripheral cables.	Do not allow cables to lie across the top of the card rack or hang out of the peripheral bays. Loop the excess length for peripheral cables inside the peripheral bays. Attach the monitor cables to the frame.

2.1.4 Environmental Requirements for Probes

Probes can be used in clinical environment.

Ensure that the probe face temperature does not exceed the normal operation temperature range.

Probes must be operated, stored, or transported within the parameters outlined below.

	Operational	Storage	Transport
Temperature	+18° to +30° C (+64.4°F to +86°F)	-10° to +50° C (+14°F to +122°F)	-10° to +50° C (+14°F to +122°F)
Humidity	30% to 75% RH non-condensing	10% to 85% RH non-condensing	10% to 85% RH non-condensing
Pressure	700hPa (3000m) to 1060hPa	700hPa (3000m) to 1060hPa	700hPa (3000m) to 1060hPa

2.1.5 Time and Manpower Requirements

Site preparation takes time. Begin site preparation checks as soon as possible. If possible, six weeks before delivery, to allow enough time to make any changes.



Warning

Have two people available to deliver and unpack the Voluson Expert Series ultrasound system.

Attempts to move the system considerable distances (or on an incline) by one person alone, could result in personal injury and/or damage to the system.

2.1.6 System Specifications

2.1.6.1 Physical Dimensions of Voluson Expert Series

Physical dimensions and weight (without peripherals) of the Voluson Expert Series system are summarized in [Table 2-5](#).

Note *Physical dimensions (especially height and depth) depend on control console and monitor positioning. For more details see [Section 5.10.3 "Control Console Positioning" on page 5-33](#).*

Table 2-5: physical dimensions and weight

Height	Width	Depth	Weight
Parking position: 1125 mm / 44.3 inch Operating min: 1285 mm / 50.6 inch Operating max: 1735 mm / 68.3 inch	583 mm / 22.9 inch	1162 mm / 45.7 inch * 962 mm / 37.8 inch **	approx. 95 kg / 209.5 lbs. without accessories full configured approx. 110 kg / 242.5 lbs.

* maximum (control console moved forwards to the maximum)

** minimum (no control console movement)

2.1.6.2 Acoustic Noise Output

≤ 65 dB(A), typically ≤ 37 dB(A), measured at normal user location in standard working mode at room temperature

2.1.6.3 Electrical Specifications

Refer to: [Section 2.1.2.1 "Voluson Power Requirements Voluson Expert Series" on page 2-3](#).

2.2 Facility Needs

2.2.1 Purchaser Responsibilities

The work and materials needed to prepare the site is the responsibility of the purchaser. Delay, confusion, and waste of manpower can be avoided by completing pre-installation work before delivery.

Use the Pre-installation checklist (provided in [Table 2-6](#)) to verify that all needed steps have been taken.

Table 2-6: Voluson Expert Series pre-installation checklist

Action	Yes	No
Schedule at least 3 hours for installation of the system.		
Notify installation team of the existence of any variances from the basic installation.		
Make sure system and probes have been subject to acclimation period.		
Environmental cooling is sufficient.		
Lighting is adjustable to adapt to varying operational conditions of the system.		
Electrical facilities meet system requirements.		
EMI precautions have been taken and all possible sources of interference have been removed.		
Mandatory site requirements have been met.		
If a network is used, IP address has been set for the system and a dedicated network outlet is available.		

Purchaser responsibility includes:

- Procuring the materials required.
- Completing the preparations before delivery of the ultrasound system.
- Paying the costs for any alterations and modifications not specifically provided in the sales contract.

Note

All electrical installations that are preliminary to the positioning of the equipment at the site prepared for the equipment must be performed by licensed electrical contractors. Other connections between pieces of electrical equipment, calibrations, and testing must also be performed by qualified personnel. The products involved (and the accompanying electrical installations) are highly sophisticated and special engineering competence is required. All electrical work on these products must comply with the requirements of applicable electrical codes. The purchaser of GE equipment must only utilize qualified personnel to perform electrical servicing on the equipment.

The desire to use a non-listed or customer provided product or to place an approved product further from the system than the interface kit allows presents challenges to the installation team. To avoid delays during installation, such variances should be made known to the individuals or group performing the installation at the earliest possible date (preferably prior to the purchase).

The ultrasound suite must be clean prior to delivery of the machine. Carpet is not recommended because it collects dust and creates static. Potential sources of EMI (electromagnetic interference) should also be investigated before delivery. Dirt, static, and EMI can negatively impact system reliability.

2.2.2 Required Facility Needs

- dedicated single branch power outlet of adequate amperage (see: [Table 2-3 on page 2-3](#)), meeting all local and national codes, which is located less than 2.5 m (8.2 ft. / 98.4 in.) from the system's proposed location.; see [Section 2.1.2 "Electrical Requirements" on page 2-2](#).
- door opening is at least 76 cm (2.5 ft./ 30 in.) wide
- proposed location for the system is at least 0.5 m (1.6 ft. / 19.6 in.) from the wall for cooling
- power outlet and place for any external peripheral are within 2 m (6.5 ft. / 78.7 in.) of each other with peripheral within 1 m of the system to connect cables.
- power outlets for other medical equipment
- power outlets for test equipment within 1 m (3.2 ft. / 39.4 in.) of system
- clean and protected space to store probes (in their cases or on a rack)
- material to safely clean probes (done with a plastic container, never metal)

Note *The Voluson Expert Series has outlets for on-board peripherals inside.*

In case of network option:

- An active network outlet in the vicinity of the ultrasound system.
- A network cable of appropriate length (regular Pin-to-Pin network cable).
- An IT administrator who will assist in configuring the system to work with your local network. A fixed IP address is required. Refer to the form provided in [Figure 3-82](#) for network details that are required.

Note *All relevant preliminary network port installations at the prepared site must be performed by authorized contractors. The purchaser of GE equipment must utilize only qualified personnel to perform servicing on the equipment.*

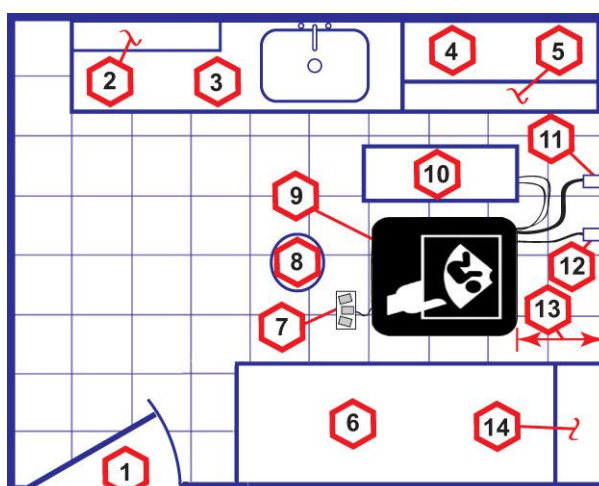


Figure 2-1: recommended Floor Plan 4.3 m x 5.2 m (14 by 17 foot)

1 door – at least 76 cm (2.5 foot / 30 inches)	8 stool
2 film viewer	9 ultrasound system
3 countertop, sink with hot and cold water, supplies storage	10 external peripherals
4 linen supply	11 dedicated power outlet - circuit breaker protected and easily accessible
5 probes/supplies	12 network interface
6 examination table	13 distance from wall or objects
7 footswitch	14 cabinet for software and manuals

2.2.3 Desirable Features

- door is at least 92 cm (3 ft. / 36 in.) wide
- circuit breaker for dedicated power outlet is easily accessible
- sink with hot and cold water
- receptacle for bio-hazardous waste, like used probe sheaths
- emergency oxygen supply
- storage for linens and equipment
- nearby waiting room, lavatory, and dressing room
- dual level lighting (bright and dim)
- lockable cabinet for software and manuals

2.2.4 Network Setup Requirements

2.2.4.1 Stand-alone System (without Network Connection)

None

2.2.4.2 System connected to Hospital's Network

Supported networks:

- Ethernet network connection
- Wireless LAN (option)

2.2.4.3 Purpose of the DICOM Network Function

DICOM¹ (Digital Imaging and Communications in Medicine) services provide the operator with clinically useful features for moving images and patient information over a hospital network. Examples of DICOM services include the transfer of images to workstations for viewing or transferring images to remote printers. As an added benefit, transferring images in this manner frees up the on-board monitor and peripherals, enabling viewing to be done while scanning continues. With DICOM, images can be archived, stored, and retrieved faster, easier, and at a lower cost.

2.2.4.4 DICOM Option Pre-Installation Requirements

To configure the Voluson Expert Series ultrasound system to work with other network connections, the network administrator must provide some necessary information.

Use the [Figure 3-81 on page 3-83](#) to record required information that must include:

- | | |
|----------------------------------|---|
| • Voluson Expert Series Details: | DICOM network details for the Voluson Expert Series system, including the host name, local port, IP address, AE title and net mask. |
| • Routing Information: | IP addresses for default gateway and other routers in use at site. |
| • DICOM Application Information: | Details of DICOM devices in use at the site, including the DICOM host name, AE title, DICOM port number and IP addresses. |

Note *For further details refer to the Voluson Expert Series Instructions for Use.*

¹ DICOM is the registered trademark of the National Electrical Manufacturers Association for its standards publications relating to digital communications of medical information.

Chapter 3

Voluson Expert Series Setup

This chapter contains information needed to setup the Voluson Expert Series ultrasound system. Included are procedures to receive, unpack and configure the equipment. A worksheet is provided (see: [Section 3.14 on page 3-83](#)) to help ensure that all the required information is available, prior to setup the system.

Content in this chapter

3.1 Setup Reminders - - - - -	3-2
3.2 Receiving and Unpacking the System - - - - -	3-4
3.3 Preparing for Setup - - - - -	3-6
3.4 Completing the Setup - - - - -	3-8
3.5 Connection of Auxiliary Devices - - - - -	3-14
3.6 Printer Installation - - - - -	3-32
3.7 System Configuration (Home Menu) - - - - -	3-47
3.8 On-board optional Peripherals - - - - -	3-65
3.9 External I/O Connectors - - - - -	3-66
3.10 Available Probes - - - - -	3-70
3.11 Software/Option Configuration - - - - -	3-70
3.12 Connectivity Setup - - - - -	3-71
3.13 Network Configuration - - - - -	3-73
3.14 Connectivity Setup Worksheet - - - - -	3-83
3.15 Paperwork - - - - -	3-85

3.1 Setup Reminders

3.1.1 Average Installation Time

Once the site has been prepared, the average installation time required is shown in Table 3-1 below.

Table 3-1: average installation time

Description	Average Installation Time	Comments
Unpacking the system	0.5 hours	
Installing the system / options / printers	0.5 to 1.5 hours	depends on required configuration
DICOM Option (connectivity)	0.5 to 1.5 hours	depends on configuration amount
Install InSite	0.5 hours	

3.1.2 Installation Warnings



Caution

Since the Voluson Expert Series weighs approximately 100 kg (220 lbs.) without peripherals, two people are required to unpack it.



Warning

There are no operator serviceable components. To prevent electric shock, do not remove any covers or panels. Should problems or malfunctions occur, unplug the power cord.

Only qualified service personnel should carry out servicing and troubleshooting.

3.1.2.1 System Acclimation Time

After being transported, the Voluson Expert Series system may be very cold or hot. It requires one hour for each 2.5°C increment if it's temperature is below 10°C or above 40°C.



Caution

Equipment damage possibility. Turning the system on without acclimation after arriving at site may cause the system to be damaged.

Table 3-2: Acclimation Time

°C	60	55	50	45	40	35	30	25	20	15	10	5	0	-5	-10	-15	-20	-25	-30	-35	-40
°F	140	131	122	113	104	96	86	77	68	59	50	41	32	23	14	5	-4	-13	-22	-31	-40
hrs	8	6	4	2	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	2	4	6	8	10	12	14	16	18	20

3.1.2.2 Control Console Positioning

If weight is placed on the control console (UI) in its extended position the system could tip over.



Caution

The system should not be moved with the control console (UI) extended. Move the control console to its centered position for transport.



Caution

Monitor mounting mechanism may break if not properly supported (e.g., with packing foam) during transportation.

3.1.2.3 Brake Pedal Operation



Caution

If the wheel brakes are engaged, release brake pedals to disengage the lock, for transportation.

**Caution**

The braking mechanism of the pedals connects the front pedals with the rear pedals. If the pedals are operated on either side (front or rear), the pedals can also move on the opposite side (rear or front). Especially during service operation, where covers are removed and the mechanics of the braking gear is unprotected, keep away fingers, hand, ... from the mechanics of the braking gear.

Instruct other persons that are in the vicinity of the ultrasound console while service-tasks with removed covers are performed not to operate the brake pedals.

The brake mechanism activation is supported by a gas-spring. Pay attention to additional force that can act on the brake pedals due to the force provided by the gas-spring.

3.1.3 Safety Reminders

**Danger**

When using any test instrument that is capable of opening the AC ground line (i.e., meter's ground switch is OPEN), DO NOT touch the system!

**Caution**

To prevent electrical shock, connect the system to a properly grounded power outlet. DO NOT use a three to two prong adapter. This defeats safety grounding.

**Caution**

Connectors and plugs of any kind (AC Mains, DC-voltage supply, signal input/signal output (SIP/SOP) connectors, internal power/signal connectors, ...) must always be firmly connected, i.e. the connector/plug must be completely pushed into the socket, to ensure good electrical contact.

When available, devices for connector/plug securing must be engaged.

**Caution: The Voluson Expert Series requires all covers!**

Do not operate this system unless all board covers and frame panels are securely in place, to ensure safe operation, optimal system performance and cooling. When covers are removed, EMC and EMI compliance might be compromised.

For service procedures where the operation of the system is necessary with board covers or frame panels removed, ensure that there are no EMI sensitive devices in the vicinity of the system. If in doubt, relocate the system to a different environment where no EMI sensitive devices are in the vicinity.

**Caution**

Two people should unpack the system because of its weight. Two people are required whenever a part weighing 16kg (35 lb.) or more must be lifted.

**Caution:**

Do not wear the ESD wrist strap when you work on live circuits and more than 30 V peak is present.

**Caution**

If the system is very cold or hot, do NOT turn on its power until it has had sufficient time to acclimate to its operating environment.

**Caution: Instructions for Use**

The User Manual(s) should be fully read and understood before operating the Voluson Expert Series. Keep manuals near the system for reference.

**Caution: Acoustic Output hazard**

Although the ultrasound energy transmitted from the Voluson Expert Series ultrasound system is within FDA limitations, avoid unnecessary exposure. Ultrasound energy can produce heat and mechanical damage.

3.2 Receiving and Unpacking the System

Note Please read this section carefully before unpacking the Voluson Expert Series ultrasound system and its (optional) peripherals.

The Voluson Expert Series ultrasound system, together with peripherals, probes and accessories are shipped from the factory in a single durable shipping cardboard which is mounted on a raised wooden platform base.

 **Caution**

Transport only with forklift or stacker truck. During transport pay attention to the point of gravity (“tilt and drop” indicator)!

 **Warning**

Have two people available to deliver and unpack the Voluson Expert Series ultrasound system.

Attempts to move the system considerable distances (or on an incline) by one person alone, could result in personal injury and/or damage to the system.

Table 3-3: shipping cardboard -dimensions and weight

Description	Height	Width	Depth	Weight*
Voluson Expert Series incl. peripherals and accessories (when packed in original packaging)	1305 mm / 51.4 inch	790 mm / 31.1 inch	1145 mm / 45.1 inch	135 kg / 298 lbs.

* Weight is approximate and will vary depending upon the supplied peripherals

Before unpacking the system

- Inspect the cardboard for visible damage.
- Inspect the drop and tilt indicator (1) for evidence of accidental shock or tilting during transit.

Note The tilt indicator must not turn red.

- Verify delivery address and remove the packing slip and invoice from the envelope (2) that is located on the front panel of the cardboard.
- Remove the unpacking instruction (3) that is located on the side panel of the cardboard.



Figure 3-1: shipping cardboard

Unpacking procedure

Unpack the Voluson Expert Series ultrasound system and its (optional) peripherals and accessories according to the provided unpacking instruction.

Note *The device must only be transported in the original packaging cardboard!*

It is recommended to keep and store the shipping cardboard and all other packing materials (including the support foams, anti-static plastic cover, etc.), in case the system has to be moved to a different location. Unpack the system in such a way that packaging can be reused. For warranty purposes, storage of the above is required for one year from date of purchase.

Note *If the shipping cardboard is damaged, please inform the GE Healthcare Austria GmbH & Co OG sales representative immediately.*

For brief repacking instructions refer to [Section 8.1.1 on page 8-3](#).

3.2.1 Moving/Lifting the System

Note *For important safety considerations see [Section 1.5.3 "Mechanical Safety" on page 1-19](#).*



How to lift the system:

1 Preparation

- Disconnect all probes and transport them separately.
- Disconnect the ECG kit incl. cable (if applicable) and transport it separately.
- Ensure all peripheral devices are firmly fixed within the system or transport them separately.

2 Lower the system to its minimum height, lock monitor arm and flap monitor down. Refer to [Section 6.2.1 on page 6-3](#).

3 Pass a strap below the footrest as shown at the images on the left.

4 Two people are required to lift the system by the straps and the rear handle.

Caution



- Do not pull or lift the system with the front handle of the user interface (control console).
- Always use a strap to lift the system.
- Move the system forward or backward when going up or down inclines. Do not move the system sideways or diagonally.

3.3 Preparing for Setup

3.3.1 Verify Customer Order

1. After unpacking, it is important to verify that all items ordered by the customer have been received. Compare all items listed on the packing slip (delivery note) with those received.

Note

It is recommended to keep and store the shipping cardboard and all other packing materials (including the support foams, anti-static plastic cover, etc.), in case the system has to be moved to a different location. Unpack the system in such a way that packaging can be reused. For warranty purposes, storage of the above is required for one year from date of purchase.

2. Visually inspect the system components using the following checklist.

Table 3-4: Damage Inspection Checklist - Voluson Expert Series system

✓	Step	Item	Recommended Procedure
	1	Rating Plate	Enter Serial Number: _____ (printed on rating plate, see: Figure 1-1 on page 1-22)
	2	System	Verify that the Voluson Expert Series system is switched OFF and unplugged. Clean the system.
	3	Control Console	Physically inspect the control console for missing or damaged items. After switching on the system, verify the proper illumination of all the control console buttons.
	4	Probes	Check all probes for wear and tear on the lens, cable, and connector. Look for bent or damaged pins on the connector and in the connector socket on the system. Verify that the EMI fingers around the probe connector socket housing are intact. Check the probe locking mechanism and probe switch.
	5	LCD Display	Clean the LCD display by gently wiping with a dry, soft, lint-free non-abrasive folded cloth. Inspect the monitor for scratches and raster burn.
	6	Fans	Verify that the system's cooling fans and peripheral fans are operating.
	7	Rear Panel	Check the rear panel connectors for bent pins, loose connections and loose or missing hardware. Screw all the cable connectors tightly to the connector sockets on the panel. Verify that the labeling is in good condition.
	8	Covers	Check that all screws are tightly secured in place, that there are no dents or scratches and that no internal parts are exposed.
	9	Peripherals	Check and clean the peripherals in accordance with the manufacturer's directions. To prevent EMI or system overheating, dress the peripheral cables inside the peripheral cover.
	10	Power Cord	Check the power cord for cuts, loose hardware, tire marks, exposed insulation, or any deterioration. Verify continuity. Replace the power cord, as required.

Note

Report any items that are missing, backordered, or damaged to your GE Healthcare Austria GmbH & Co OG sales representative. The contact address is shown in ["Contact Information" on page 1-25](#).

3.3.2 EMI Protection

This system has been designed to minimize the effects of Electro-Magnetic Interference (EMI). Many of the covers, shields, and screws are provided primarily to protect the system from image artifacts caused by this interference. For this reason, it is imperative that all covers and hardware are installed and secured before the system is put into operation.

Ensure that the system is protected from electromagnetic interference (EMI), as follows:

- Operate the system at least 15 feet away from equipment that emits strong electromagnetic radiation.
- Operate the system in an area enclosed by walls, floors and ceilings comprised of wood, plaster or concrete, which help prevent EMI.
- Shield the system when operating it in the vicinity of radio broadcast equipment, if necessary.
- Do not operate mobile phones or other EMI emitting devices in the ultrasound room.
- Verify that all EMI rules listed are followed.

The Voluson Expert Series system is approved for use in hospitals, clinics and other environmentally qualified facilities, in terms of the prevention of radio wave interference. Operation of the ultrasound system in an inappropriate environment can cause electronic interference to radios and television sets situated near the medical equipment.

For further details and EMI Prevention/Abatement refer to [Section 2.1.3 "EMI Limitations" on page 2-3](#).

3.4 Completing the Setup

Content in this chapter

<i>3.4.1 Connecting the System to a Power Source</i>	<i>3-8</i>
<i>3.4.2 Power On / Boot Up</i>	<i>3-9</i>
<i>3.4.3 Quick Setup</i>	<i>3-11</i>
<i>3.4.4 Probe Connection</i>	<i>3-11</i>
<i>3.4.5 Power Off / Shutdown</i>	<i>3-13</i>

3.4.1 Connecting the System to a Power Source

Note *Use only the power cords, cables and plugs provided by or designated by GE Healthcare Austria GmbH & Co OG to connect the system to the power source.*

Caution



Prior to connecting the Voluson Expert Series system to a power source, verify compliance with all electrical and safety requirements. Check the power cord to verify that it is intact and of hospital-grade. Products equipped with a power source (wall outlet) plug should be connected to the fixed power socket that has a protective grounding conductor. Never use an adapter or converter to connect with a power source plug (for example, a three-prong to two-prong converter).

Warning



The system's power must be supplied from a separate, properly rated outlet to avoid risk of fire. Refer to [Section 2.1.2.1 "Voluson Power Requirements Voluson Expert Series" on page 2-3](#) for rating information. The power cord should not, under any circumstances, be altered to a configuration rated less than that specified for the current.

Caution



Whenever disconnecting the Voluson Expert Series system from the electrical outlet, always observe the safety precautions. First unplug the main power cable from the wall outlet socket, then from the system itself. Remove by pulling on the cable connector - Do not pull on the cable.

Caution: The Voluson Expert Series requires all covers!

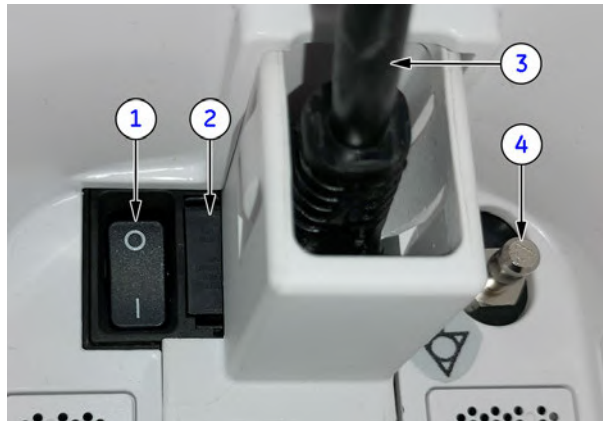


Do not operate this system unless all board covers and frame panels are securely in place, to ensure safe operation, optimal system performance and cooling. When covers are removed, EMC and EMI compliance might be compromised.

For service procedures where the operation of the system is necessary with board covers or frame panels removed, ensure that there are no EMI sensitive devices in the vicinity of the system. If in doubt, relocate the system to a different environment where no EMI sensitive devices are in the vicinity.

3.4.2 Power On / Boot Up

1. If not already done, connect the mains power cable to the back of the system and screw on the pull-out protection with the 2 screws.
2. Connect the mains power cable to a hospital grade power outlet with the proper rated voltage. Never use an adapter that would defeat the safety ground.
3. Switch ON the circuit breaker at the rear of the system.



- 1 circuit breaker
- 2 fuses (2x T8A H/250V)
- 3 mains power cable incl. pull-out protection
- 4 equipotential pin

Figure 3-2: Circuit Breaker at rear of system

Note

When AC power is applied to the system, the **ON/OFF** standby button on the control console illuminates amber, indicating that the system (including the BackEnd Processor) is in standby mode.

4. Connect probes. (Insert the connector into a probe port and twist the probe locking handle clockwise to lock it in place.)
5. Press the **ON/OFF** standby button (see: [Figure 3-3 below](#)) on the control console for ~3 seconds.



Figure 3-3: ON/OFF standby button

Note

The power switch of any attached printer(s) needs to be in **ON** position before starting the system. However, be aware some auxiliary equipment may switch itself to standby mode (e.g., Color video printer) and must therefore be switched on separately.

When the **ON/OFF** standby button on the control console is pressed, the system (including the Back-end Processor) starts and the operating system is loaded which leads to activate the application software.

The system automatically performs an initialization sequence which includes the following:

- loading the operating system
- running a quick diagnostic check of the system
- detecting connected probes

As soon as the software has been loaded, the system enters 2D-Mode with the probe and application that were used before the system shutdown. Total time used for start-up is about 2 minutes.

6. Adjust height and position of the console, see: [Section 6.3 "Control Console Positioning" on page 6-4.](#)

3.4.2.1 During a normal boot, you may observe

1. Power is distributed to Peripherals, Control Console, Monitor, FrontEnd and BackEnd processor.
2. First the "Boot Screen" is displayed (selection **Voluson** is highlighted).

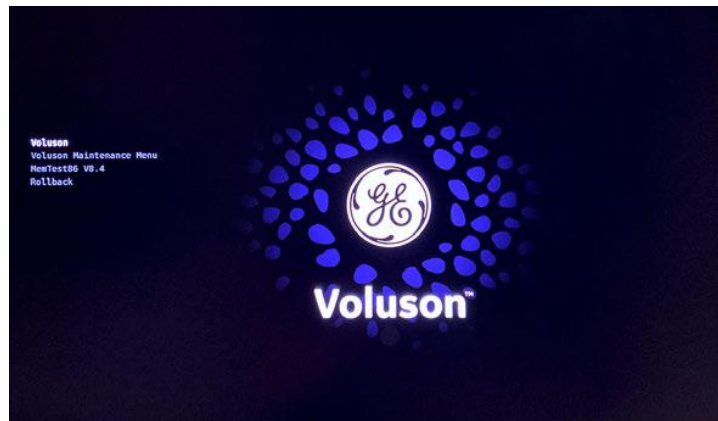


Figure 3-4: Boot screen

3. The BackEnd processor is turned ON and starts to load the software.
4. The start screen is displayed on the Monitor.
5. Start-up progress bars and/or icons indicating software loading procedures, are displayed on the Monitor.

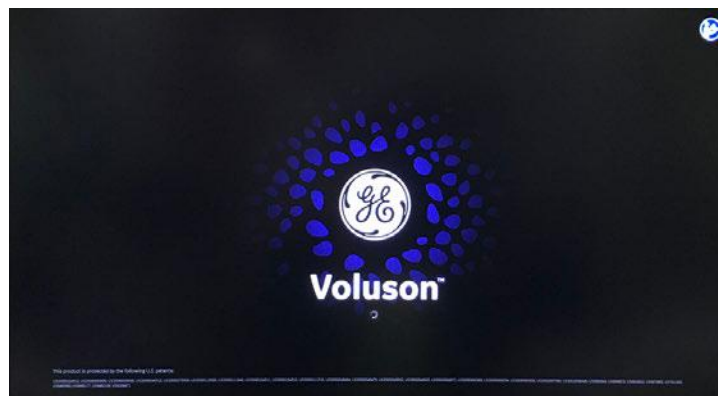


Figure 3-5: start-up screen

6. The software initiates and sets up the FrontEnd electronics and the rest of the system (incl. clicking sound of relays on TCO board).
7. The harkey panel backlight is lit.
8. As soon as the software has been loaded, the 2D screen is displayed on the Monitor.



1. If patient data stored on the internal HDDs D:\ partition are encrypted (protected), the system has to be unlocked by **Password**, **Recovery key** or **USB device with unlock key**.

For further details refer to [Section 3.7.5.18.2 "Unlock an encrypted Disk" on page 3-61](#).

2. If **Activate User Login** is check marked in the *System Setup - Security - Authentication* page, a system login window appears. Please enter the proper *User Name* and *Password* and then click **Login**.

3.4.3 Quick Setup

The Quick Setup contains the most used settings in a guided workflow. Navigation between the 5 different pages is done with the **Back** and **Next** button. **Save & Exit** will save all settings and close the Quick Setup.

Operation see [Section 3.7.4 "Quick Setup" on page 3-49](#).

3.4.4 Probe Connection

Note *When the probe is connected, it is automatically activated. Once connected, probes can be selected for different applications.*

Connect a probe to one of the probe receptacles as follows:

1. Inspect the probe and probe socket to verify that it is free of debris.
2. Ensure that the probe locking handle is at horizontal position.
3. Insert the connector on the receptacle guide pin until it touches the receptacle mating surface.
4. Twist the probe locking handle clockwise (to vertical position) to lock it in place.
5. Carefully position the probe cord so that it is free to move and is not resting on the floor.



Figure 3-6: probe connection

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1 | probe unlocked (locking handle is in horizontal position) |
| 2 | probe locked (locking handle is in vertical position) |



Caution

- Do not bend the probe cable acutely. **Fault conditions can result in electric shock hazard.**
- Do not touch the surface of probe connectors which are exposed when the probe is removed.
- Do not touch the patient when connecting or disconnecting a probe.

Note

Prior to connecting or disconnecting a probe, freeze the image. It is not necessary to turn OFF power to connect or disconnect a probe.

3.4.4.1 How to assign Probes to the desired Probe Holder

The "Respond Probe Holder" feature enables automatic probe detection. The probe detection can learn and remember which probe is currently in use.

Operation:

1. If not already done, Power On/Boot Up the system as described in [Section 3.4.2 on page 3-9](#).
2. If not already done, connect probes as described in [Section 3.4.4 on page 3-11](#).
3. Select the **Arrow** button (A).
4. In the "Probe Menu" select the **Respond Assignment** button (B).



Figure 3-7: 2D screen → Probe Menu

5. In the "Respond - Probe Assignment" menu drag and drop connected probes from the probe header area to the desired probe holder.

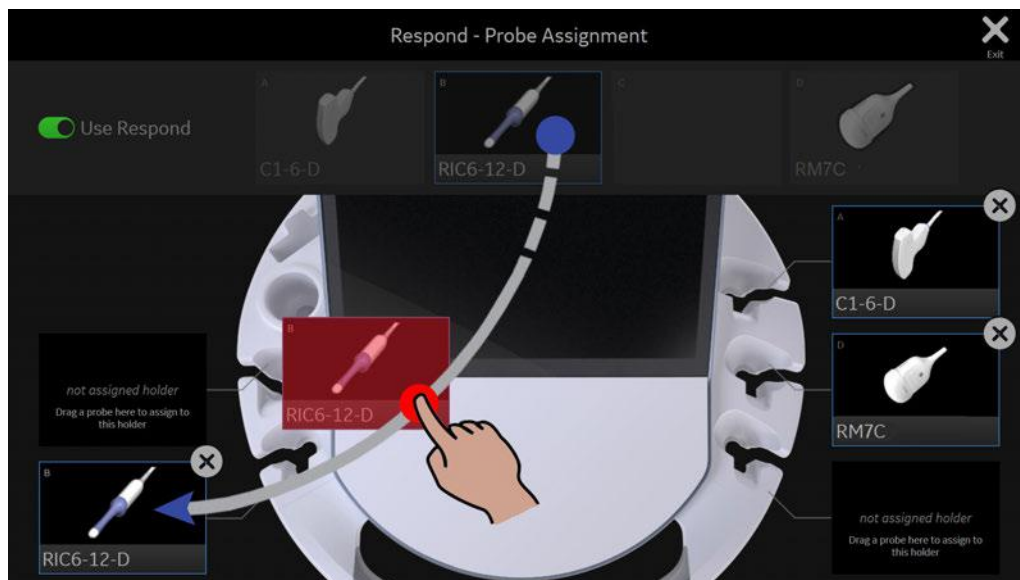


Figure 3-8: drag and drop probes to desired probe holder

The assigned probe holder will show a white light as an indicator that this probe holder has been successfully programmed.

6. Assign all probes in the same manner.

3.4.5 Power Off / Shutdown

Note After turning off a system, wait at least 10 seconds before turning it on again. The system may not be able to boot if power is recycled too quickly.

1. If not already in read mode, freeze the image.
2. Press the **ON/OFF** Standby button on the control console. Following dialog appears.

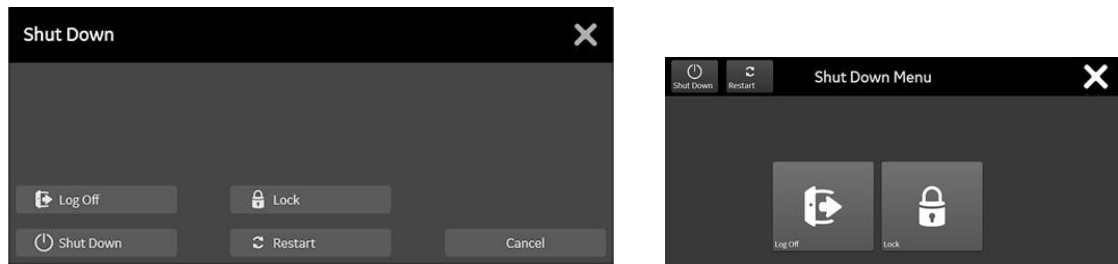


Figure 3-9: Shutdown dialog (monitor and touch, examples)

3. Select **Shutdown**. The system performs an automatic full shutdown sequence.
4. Switch OFF the circuit breaker at the rear of the system.

Note A full shutdown is also performed when pressing the **ON/OFF** standby button on the control console twice.

Note Usually auxiliary equipment need not to be switched ON/OFF separately.

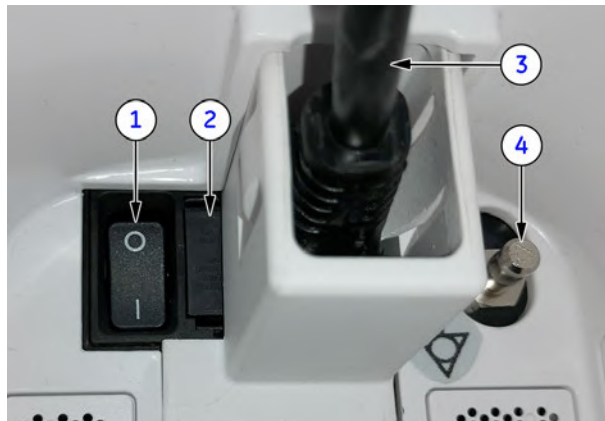


Warning

Disconnection of the mains power cable from AC mains is necessary!

5. After complete power down, unplug the mains power cable from the AC wall outlet socket.

Note Do not disconnect the mains power cable from the systems plug unless it is absolutely required for specific replacement procedures, **or** if it is for any reason not possible to disconnect it from the AC wall outlet socket.



- 1 circuit breaker
- 2 fuses (2x T8A H/250V)
- 3 mains power cable incl. pull-out protection
- 4 equipotential pin

Figure 3-10: Circuit Breaker at rear of system

6. Press on the brakes to block the caster wheels.
7. Disconnect probes. (Turn the probe locking handle counterclockwise and then pull the connector straight out of the probe port.)



Caution

Do not disconnect a probe while running (Live Scan "Write" mode)! A software error may occur. In this case switch the system OFF (perform a reset).

3.5 Connection of Auxiliary Devices

Content in this chapter

3.5.1 Connecting the Monitor - - - - -	3-15
3.5.2 Connecting the Black & White Printer - - - - -	3-16
3.5.3 Connecting the Color Printer - - - - -	3-17
3.5.4 Connecting the Network Color Laser Printer - - - - -	3-18
3.5.5 Connecting the Gel Warmer - - - - -	3-21
3.5.6 Connecting the RFID Log-on Reader - - - - -	3-22
3.5.7 Connecting the Wireless Network Adapter - - - - -	3-23
3.5.8 Connecting an External Patient Monitor - - - - -	3-24
3.5.9 Connecting the Digital Expert - - - - -	3-26
3.5.10 Connecting the Foot Switch - - - - -	3-27
3.5.11 Connecting the Barcode Scanner - - - - -	3-28
3.5.12 Connecting the ECG-preamplifier - - - - -	3-29
3.5.13 Connecting the Magnetic Network Adapter - - - - -	3-30
3.5.14 Connecting an external USB Hard disk or USB Memory Stick - - - - -	3-31
3.5.15 General Remarks when using external USB-Devices - - - - -	3-31

Note

Always observe the instructions given in the manual of the peripheral/auxiliary device.

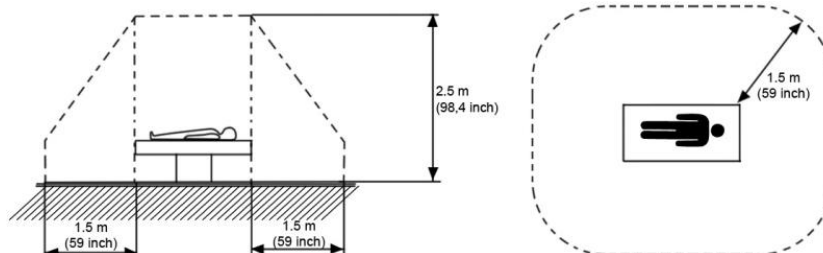


Warning

After each installation, the leakage currents have to be measured according to IEC 60601-1, IEC 62353 or other relevant standard.

Caution

Please observe that some printers may not be medical devices! If Bluetooth-, Line- or Laser Printers are no medical devices, they have to be located outside of the typical patient environment. Examples for typical patient environments can be found in standard IEC 60601 (see illustrations below).



Note

For more detailed Safety Considerations when connecting auxiliary devices to the Voluson Expert Series system, please review: [Section 1.5.5 "Auxiliary Devices Safety" on page 1-20.](#)

3.5.1 Connecting the Monitor

Note *Usually the Monitor comes pre-installed with the system.*

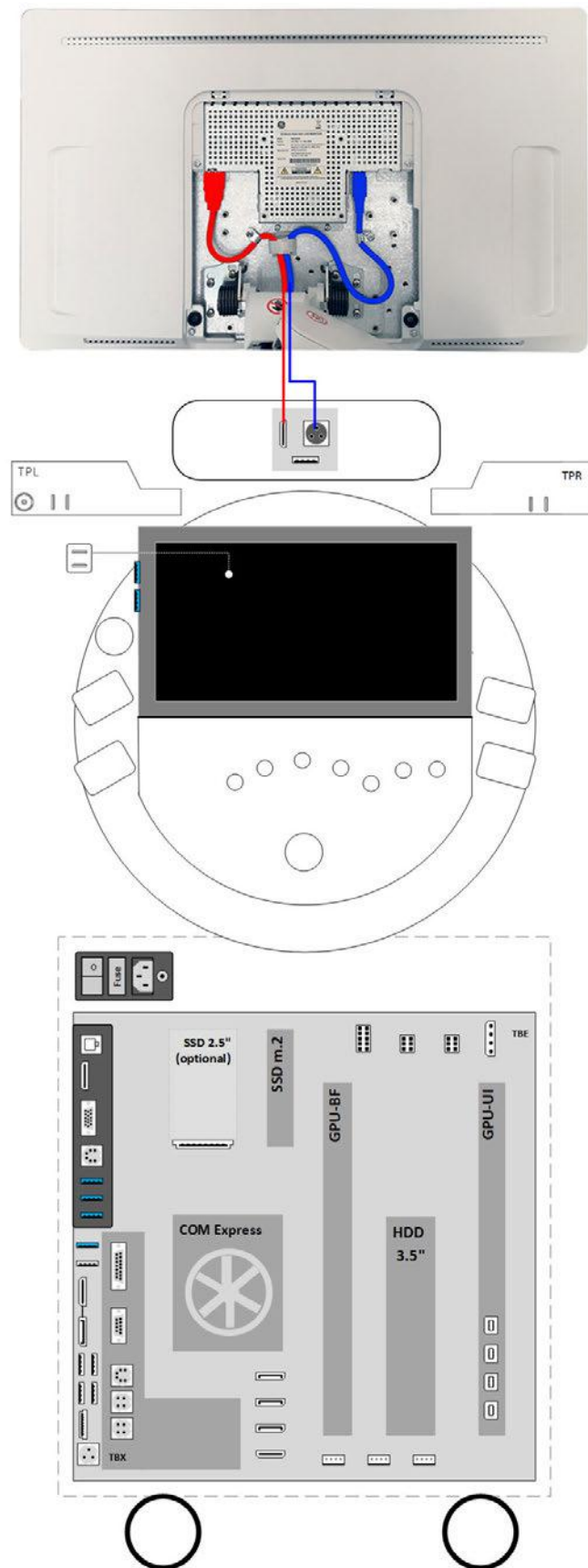


Figure 3-11: Connection Scheme - Monitor

3.5.2 Connecting the Black & White Printer

Note Usually the Black & White Printer comes pre-installed with the system.

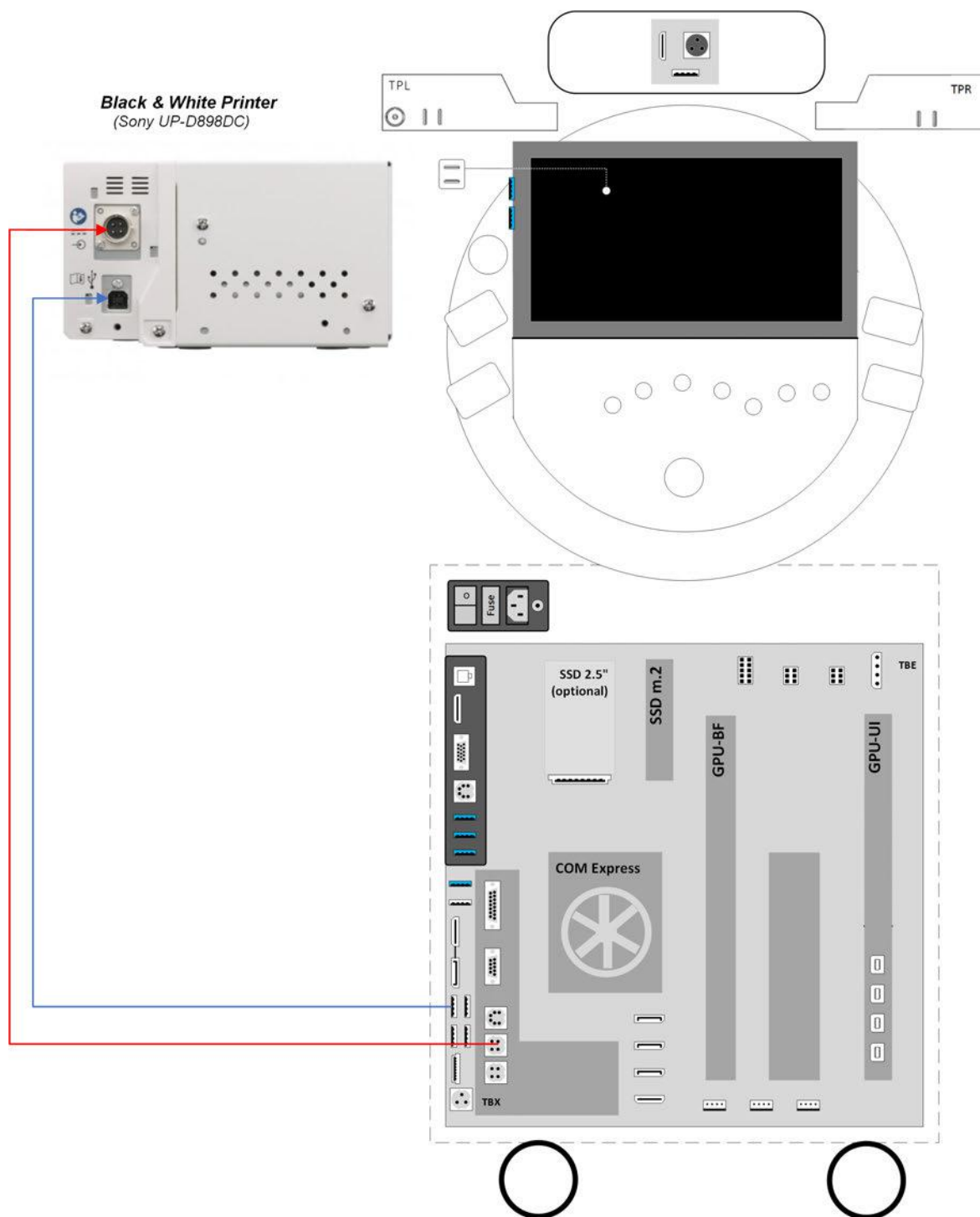


Figure 3-12: Connection Scheme - B&W Printer

3.5.3 Connecting the Color Printer



Caution

Please observe that the complete Printer Assembly has to be located outside of the patient environment (according to IEC 60601-1).

Note

The Wireless Print Kit (KTZ304239 / H48711KZ) **is required** for connecting and usage of the Color Printer.

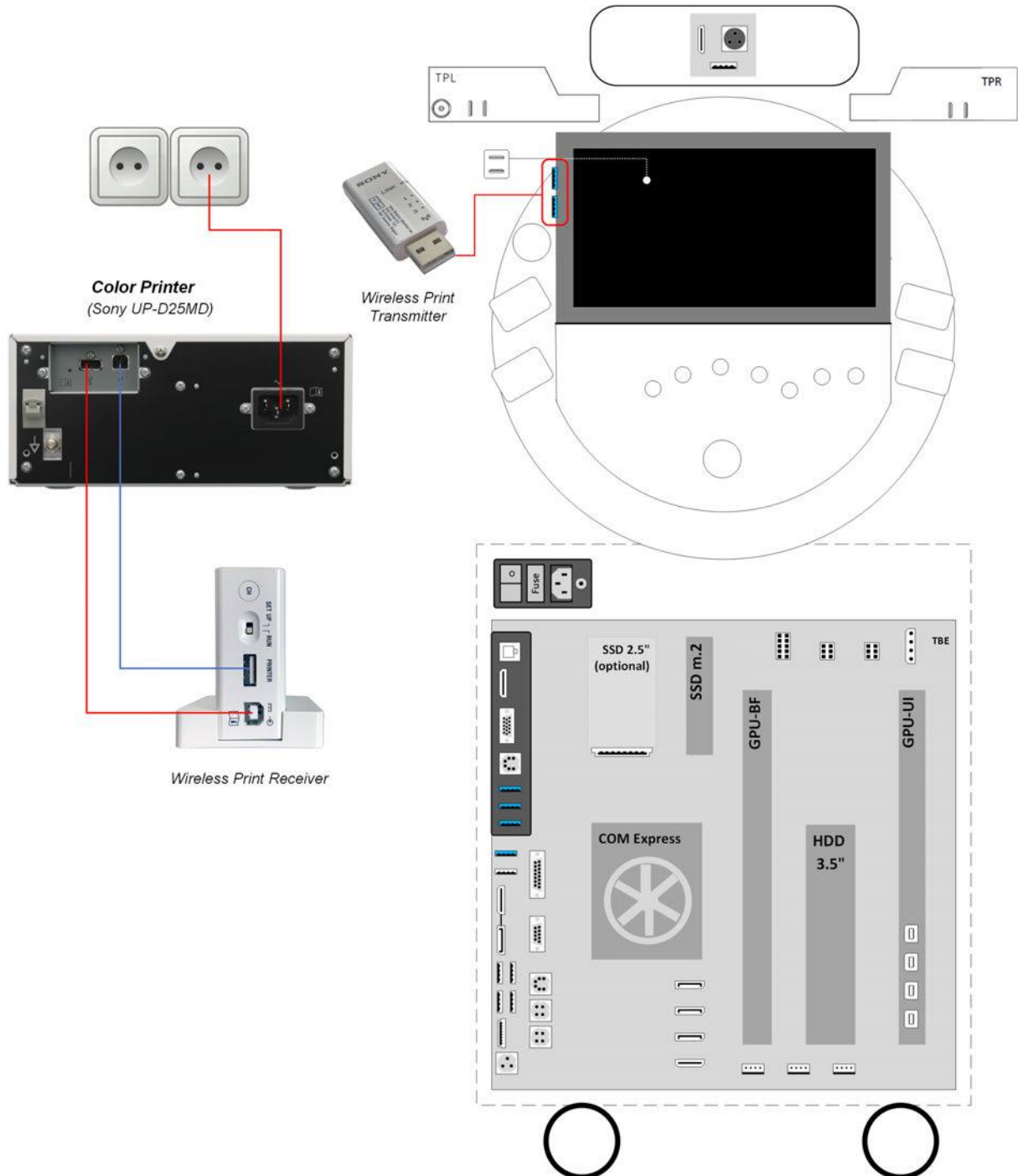


Figure 3-13: Connection Scheme - Color Printer

3.5.4 Connecting the Network Color Laser Printer



Caution

Please observe that the complete Printer Assembly has to be located outside of the patient environment (according to IEC 60601-1).



Caution

The printer being used may not be a medical device. The equipment meets the requirements of the EN 60950 standard.

Note

It does not matter, whether an Ethernet crossover cable or a patch cable (straight through cable) is used. The Network Color Laser Printer automatically reconfigures signals to yield expected results.

Note

*The Network Color Laser printer **MUST NOT** be installed by the user! For installation please contact your local distributor or GE service representative.*

Connection directly to the Voluson Expert Series

Physical connection:

1. Connect the Color Laser Printer.
 - Connect the network cable to the Ethernet **LAN** connector on the Voluson Expert Series system. The other end connect to the Ethernet connector of the Color Laser Printer.
 - Connect the power cable of the printer to an external, non-isolated power source.
2. Install the Color Laser Printer as described in [Section 3.6.3 on page 3-32](#).

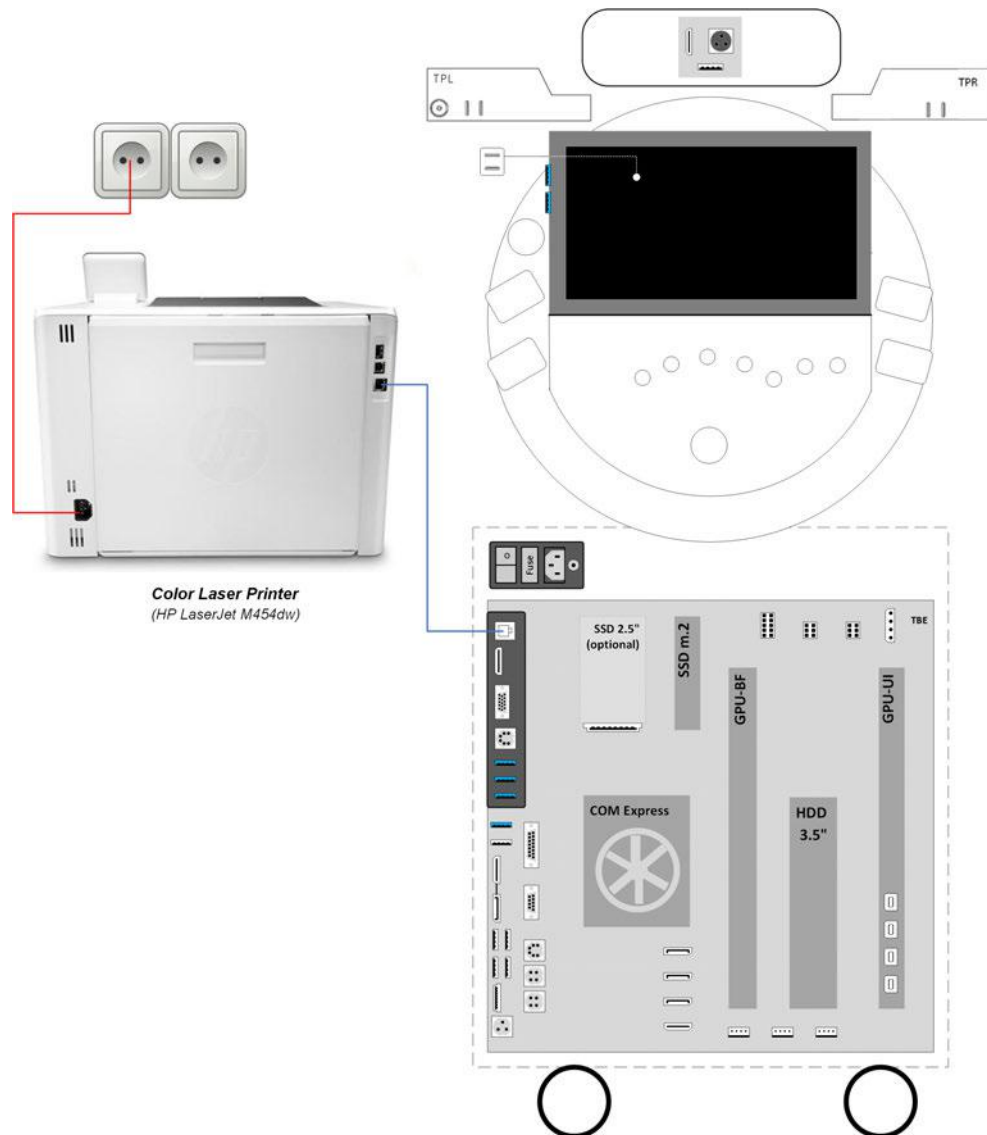


Figure 3-14: Connection Scheme - Color Laser Printer (directly via network cable)

Connection to work within the Network Environment

The Color Laser Printer can be connected to work within the network environment. Usually this will be the hospital network.

Physical connection:

Two network cables are needed.

1. Connect the Color Laser Printer.
 - Connect the first network cable to the Ethernet **LAN** connector on the Voluson Expert Series system. The other end connect to a hospital network wall outlet.
 - Connect the second network cable to the Ethernet connector of the Color Laser Printer. The other end connect to a hospital network wall outlet.
 - Connect the power cable of the printer to an external, non-isolated power source.
2. Install the Color Laser Printer as described in [Section 3.6.3 on page 3-32](#).

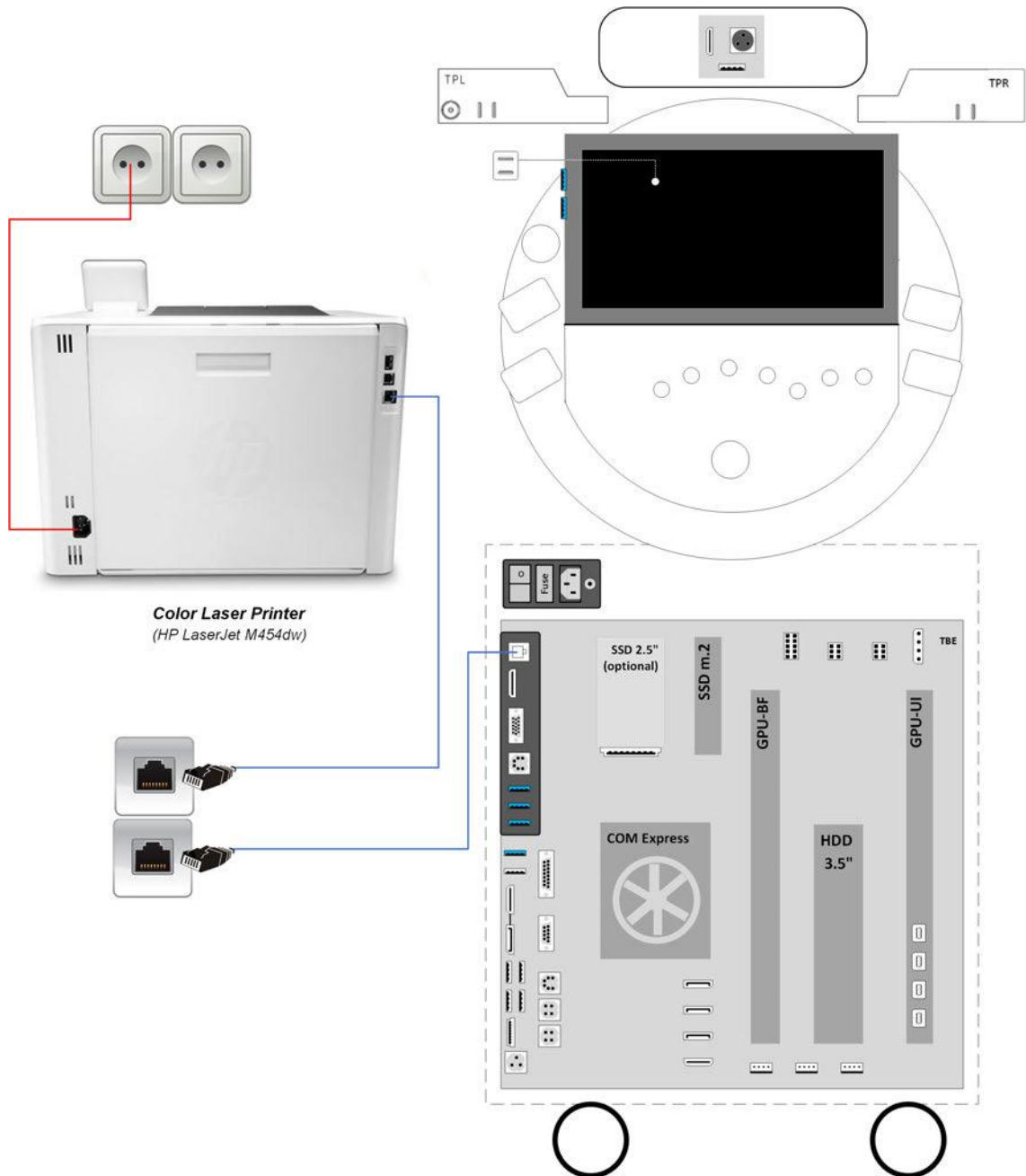


Figure 3-15: Connection Scheme - Color Laser Printer (within Network Environment)

Connection for Wi-Fi Direct Communication

Physical connection:

A WLAN network adapter is required.

1. Connect the power cable of the printer to an external, non-isolated power source.
2. Plug the proper WLAN adapter into an accessible USB port of the Voluson Expert Series system.
3. Install the Color Laser Printer as described in [Section 3.6.3 on page 3-32](#).

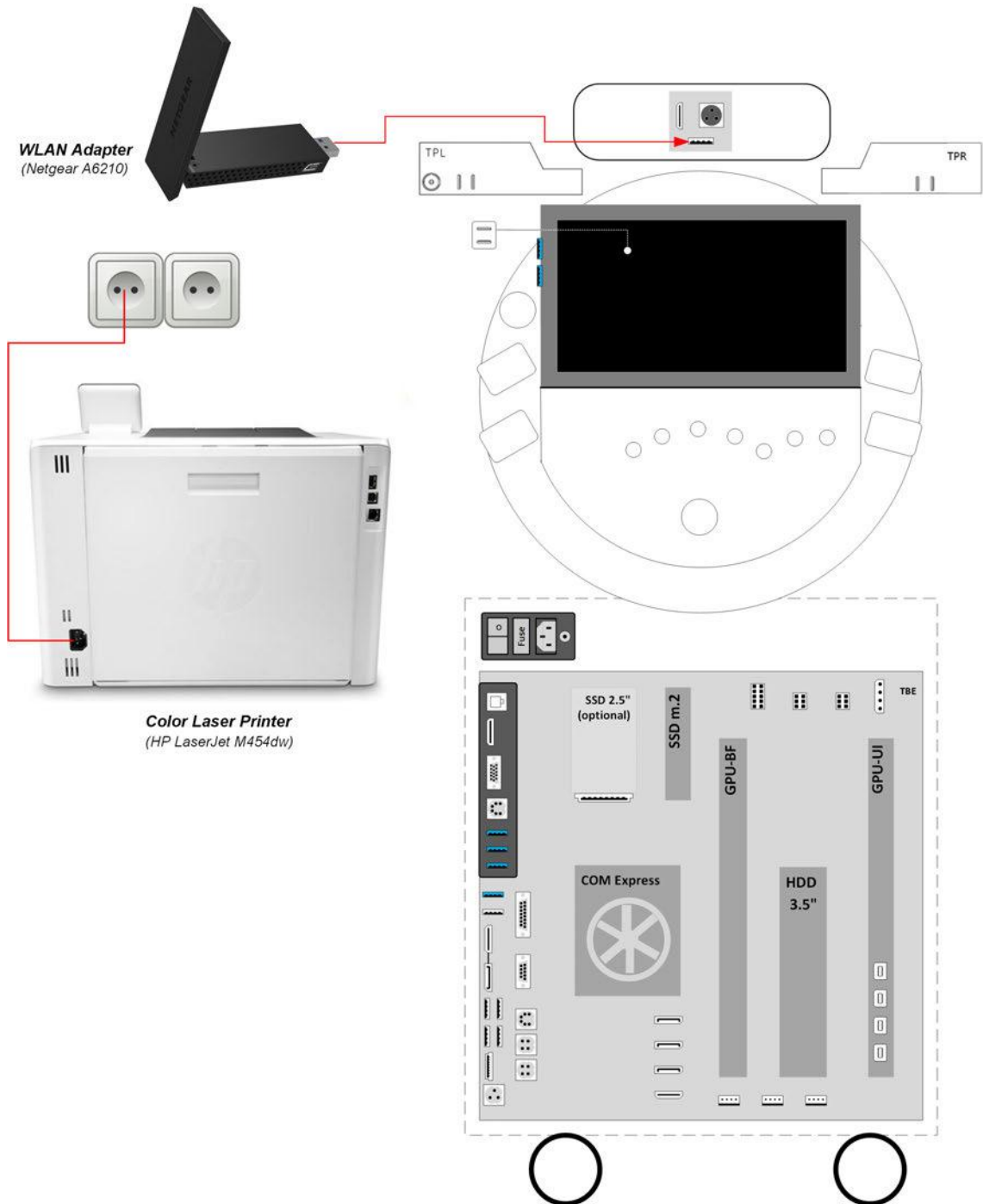


Figure 3-16: Connection Scheme - Color Laser Printer (Wi-Fi Direct Communication)

3.5.5 Connecting the Gel Warmer

The optional Gel Warmer need to be plugged into the power supply connector on the TPL (Peripheral Interface Left) of the Voluson Expert Series system.

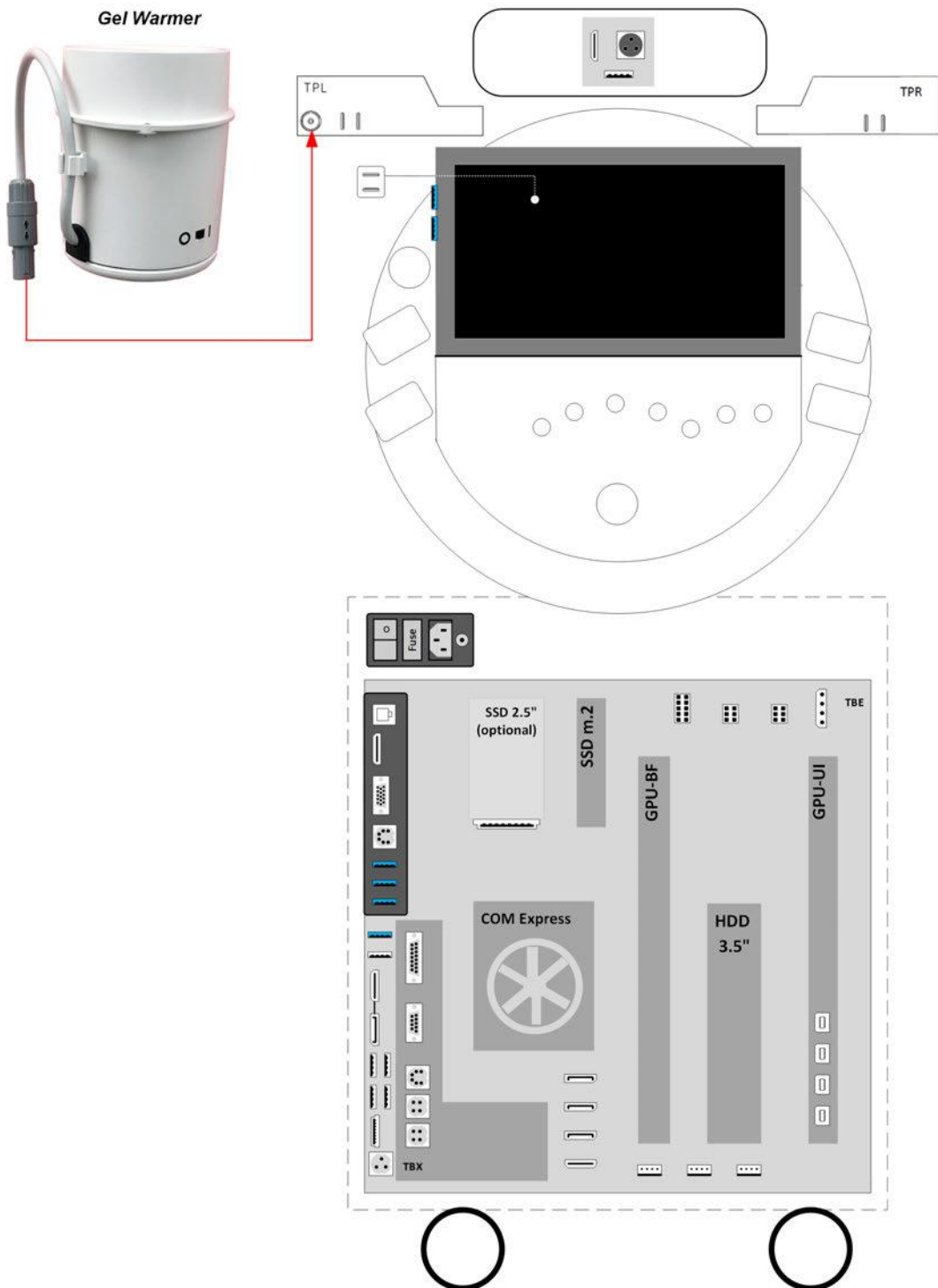


Figure 3-17: Connection Scheme - Gel Warmer

3.5.6 Connecting the RFID Log-on Reader

The optional RFID Log-on reader (Radio-frequency Identification) should be connected to a USB Type-C port on the TPR (Peripheral Interface Right) of the Voluson Expert Series system.

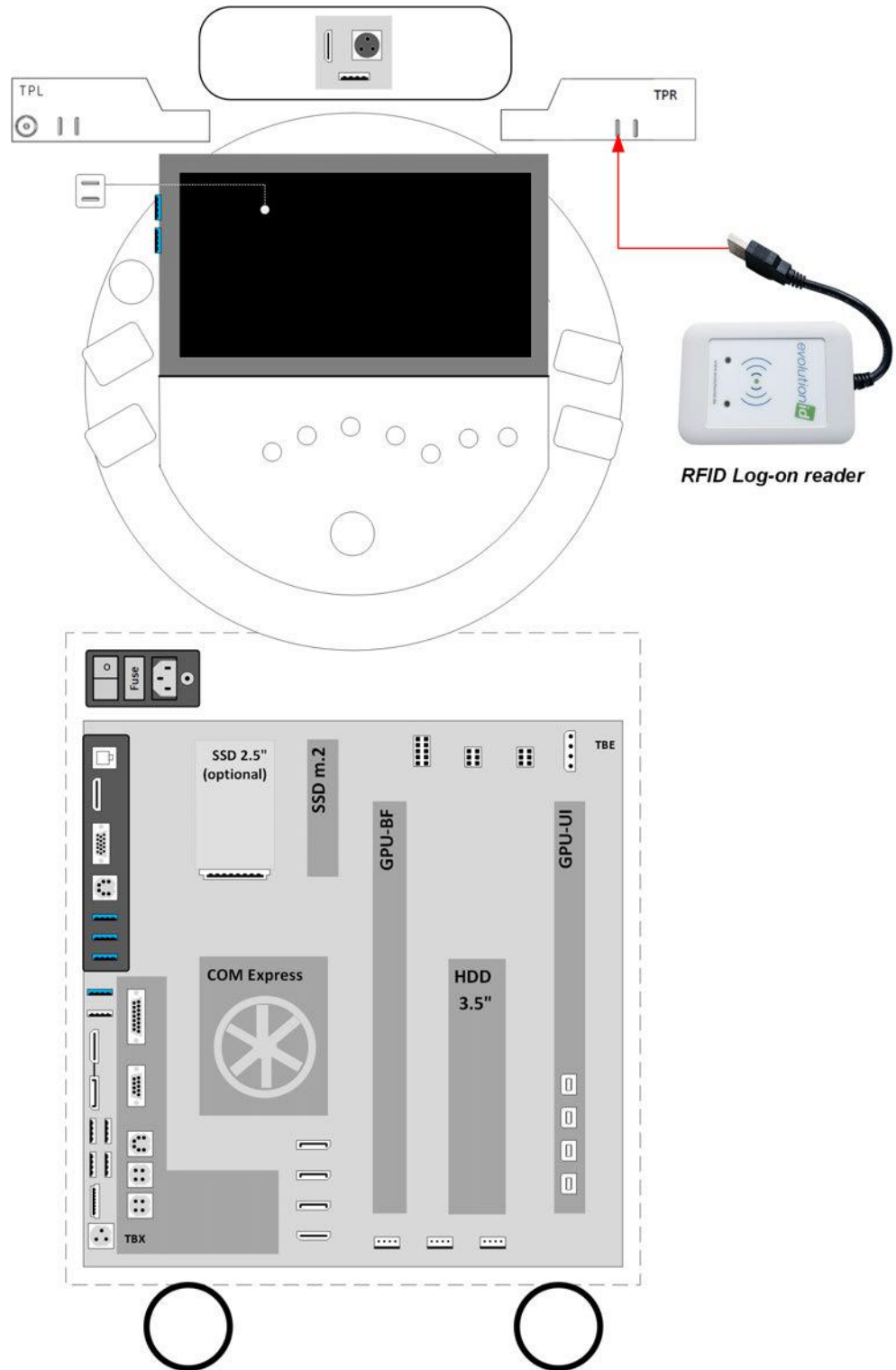


Figure 3-18: Connection Scheme - RFID Log-on reader

3.5.7 Connecting the Wireless Network Adapter

The optional Wireless Network Adapter need to be plugged into the intended USB A-port behind the Rear Cover Top of the Voluson Expert Series system.

1. Turn ON the power of the system and wait till the system has booted.
2. Plug the Wireless Network adapter into the intended USB-A port of the Voluson Expert Series system. All software drivers are pre-installed for the designated Wireless Network adapter only.

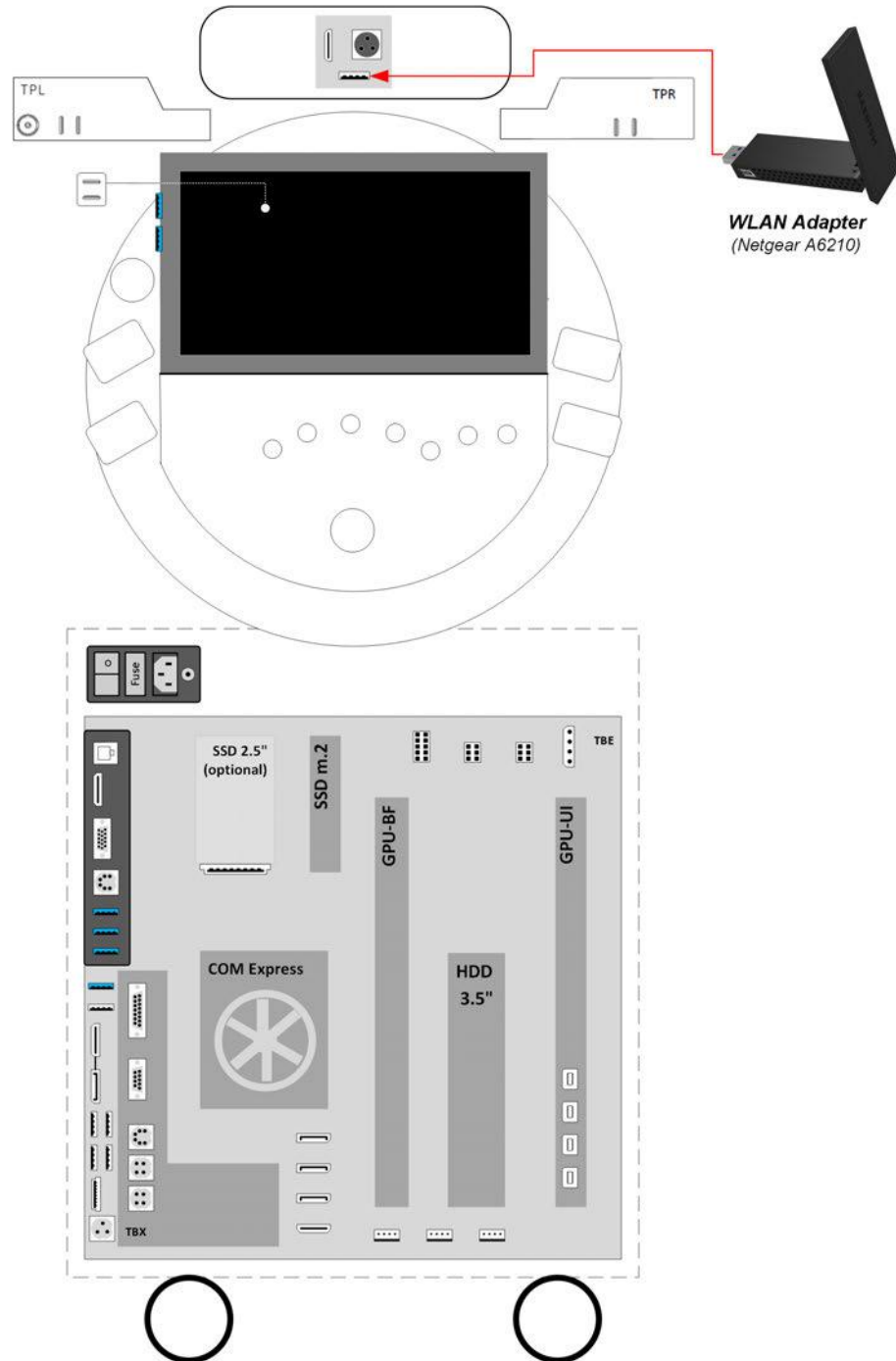


Figure 3-19: Connection Scheme - Wireless (USB) Network Adapter

Note

After physical connection of the WLAN adapter to the Voluson Expert Series system, follow the procedure described in [Section 3.13.2 "WLAN Configuration" on page 3-75](#).

3.5.8 Connecting an External Patient Monitor

- Note** *An External Patient Monitor is **NOT** intended for diagnostic use. It is an additional device used to allow the patient to watch the proceedings.*
- Note** *Take your time to think about the best position of the monitor in your facilities. Patients should be able to view the monitor easily and without having to bend or turn around.*

Connection by means of the Wireless Display Kit (cable-free)

1. Install the External Patient Monitor and Wireless Display Kit according to the connection scheme below.
2. After physical connection to the Voluson Expert Series system check, and if necessary change the Ext. Monitor Output setting, see: [Section 3.7.5.7 on page 3-53](#).

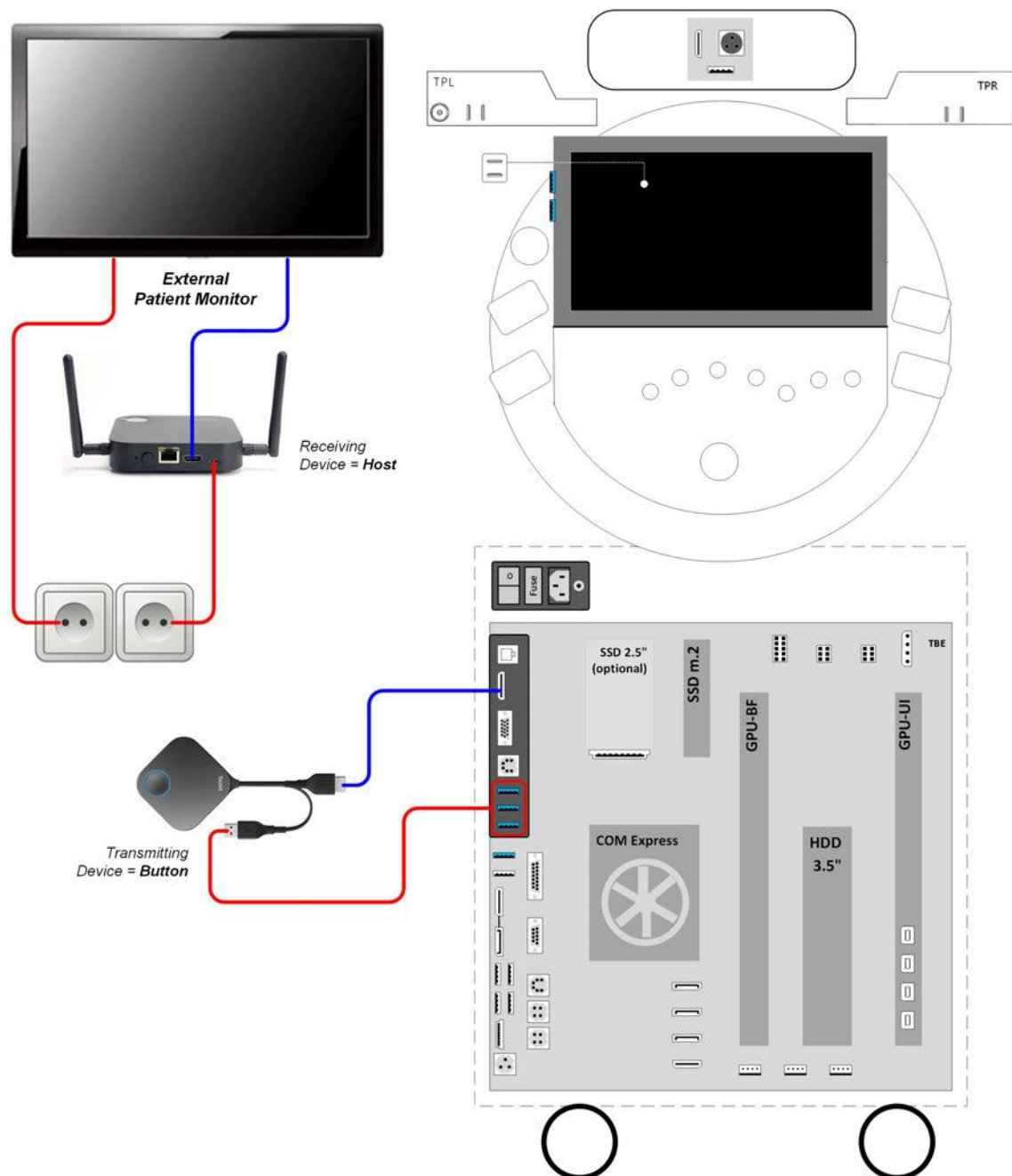


Figure 3-20: Connection Scheme - External Patient Printer (cable-free via Wireless Display kit)

Connection by means of Cables (direct connection) + Isolation Transformer



Caution

An External Patient Monitor **MUST NEVER** be connected to the mains supply directly! Always connect it to an appropriate Isolation Transformer (see [Section 9.11.2 on page 9-31](#)).



Caution

The External Patient Monitor is the only item to be connected to the isolation transformer.

1. Connect the External Patient Monitor according to the connection scheme below.
2. After physical connection to the Voluson Expert Series system check, and if necessary change the Ext. Monitor Output setting, see: [Section 3.7.5.7 on page 3-53](#).

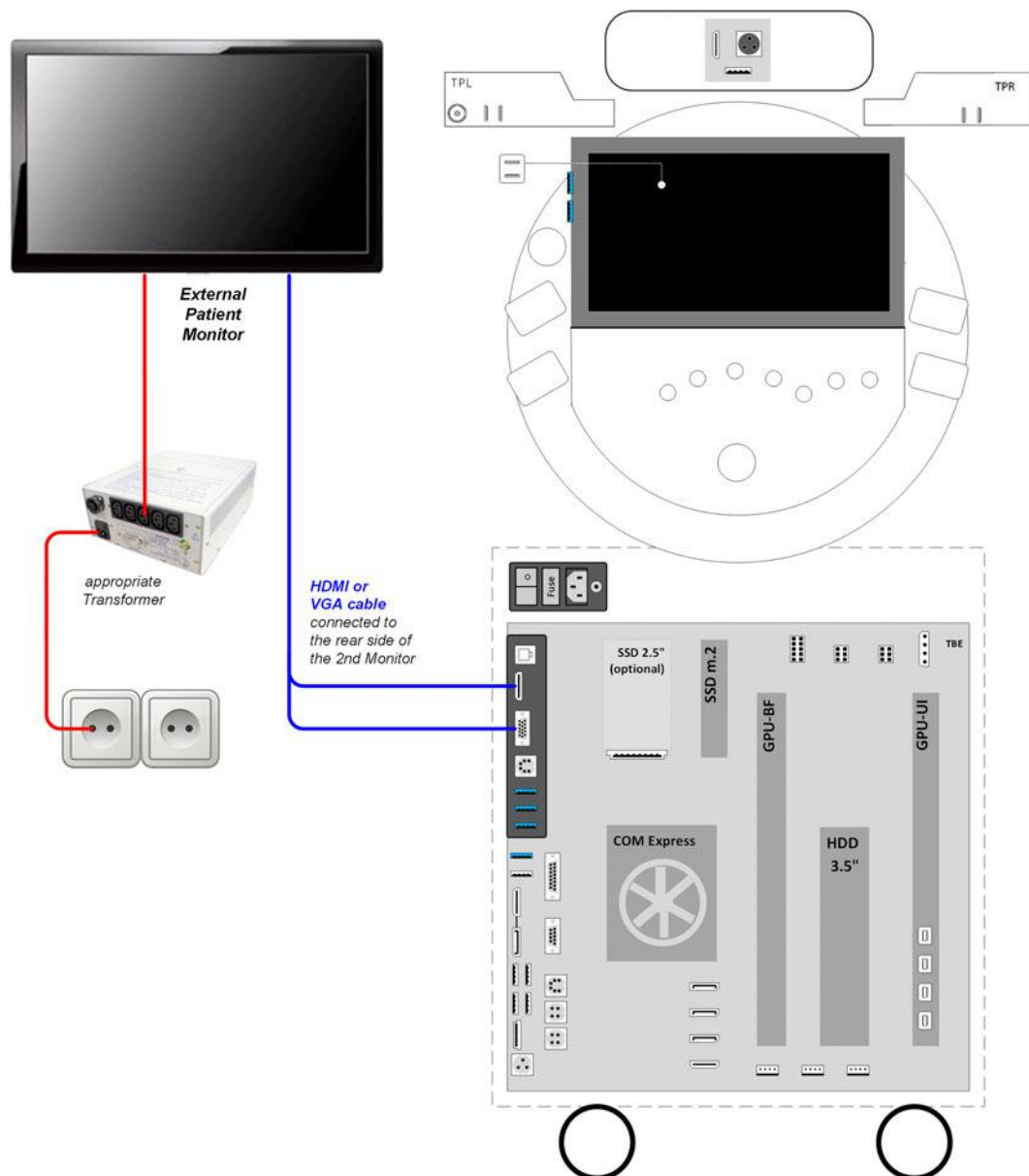


Figure 3-21: Connection Scheme - External Patient Monitor (directly via cables) + Isolation Transformer

3.5.9 Connecting the Digital Expert

1. Connect the Video capture device to the Digital Expert tablet via the USB-A to USB-C connection cable.
2. Connect one end of the HDMI to HDMI cable to the Video capture device. The other end of the cable plug into HDMI Out connector on the rear side of the system.

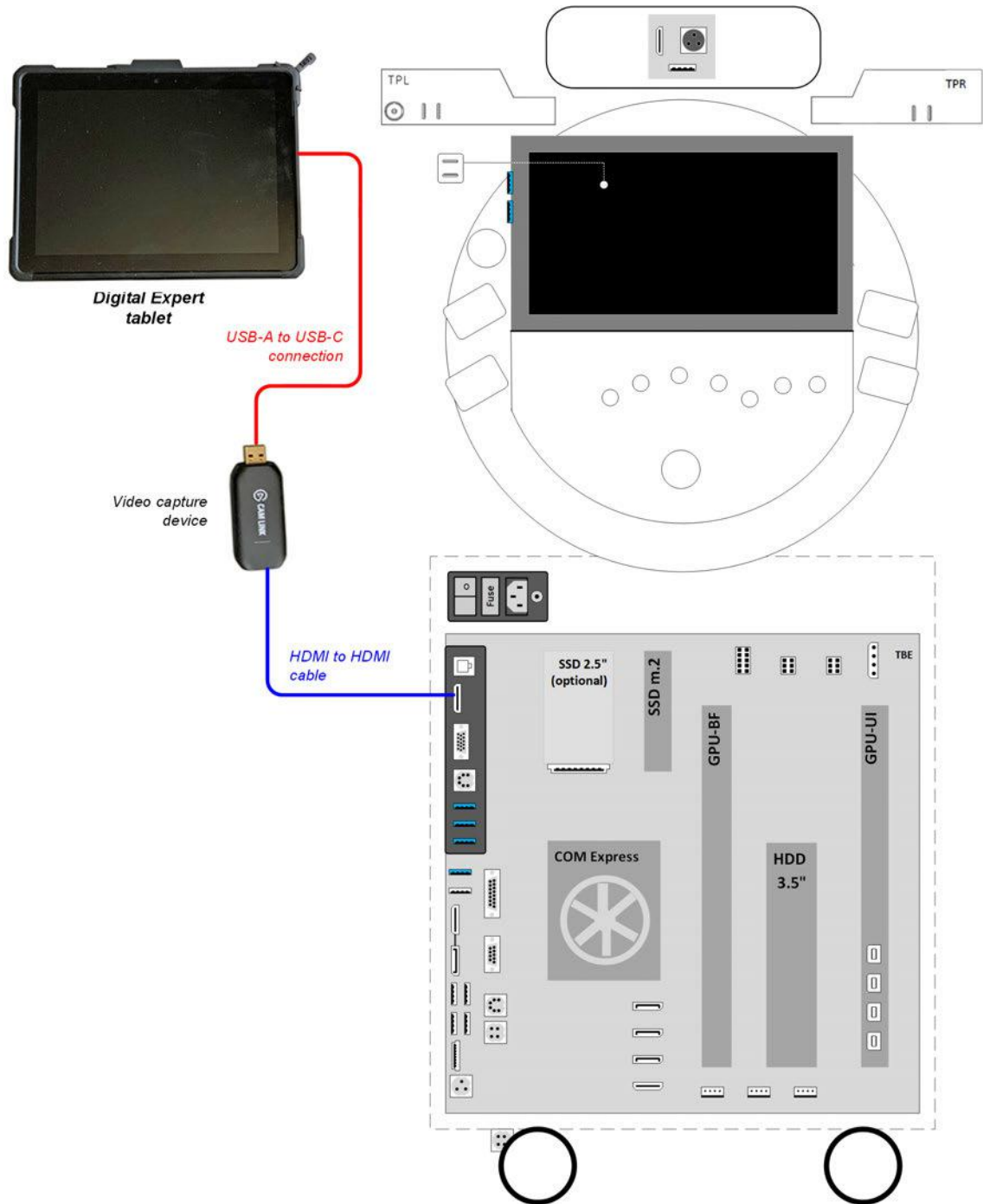


Figure 3-22: Connection Scheme - Digital Expert

3.5.10 Connecting the Foot Switch

The Foot Switch should be directly connected to any accessible USB-port on the Voluson Expert Series (e.g., on rear of the system).

After physical connection, adjust the Foot Switch as described in [Section 3.7.5.8 on page 3-54](#).

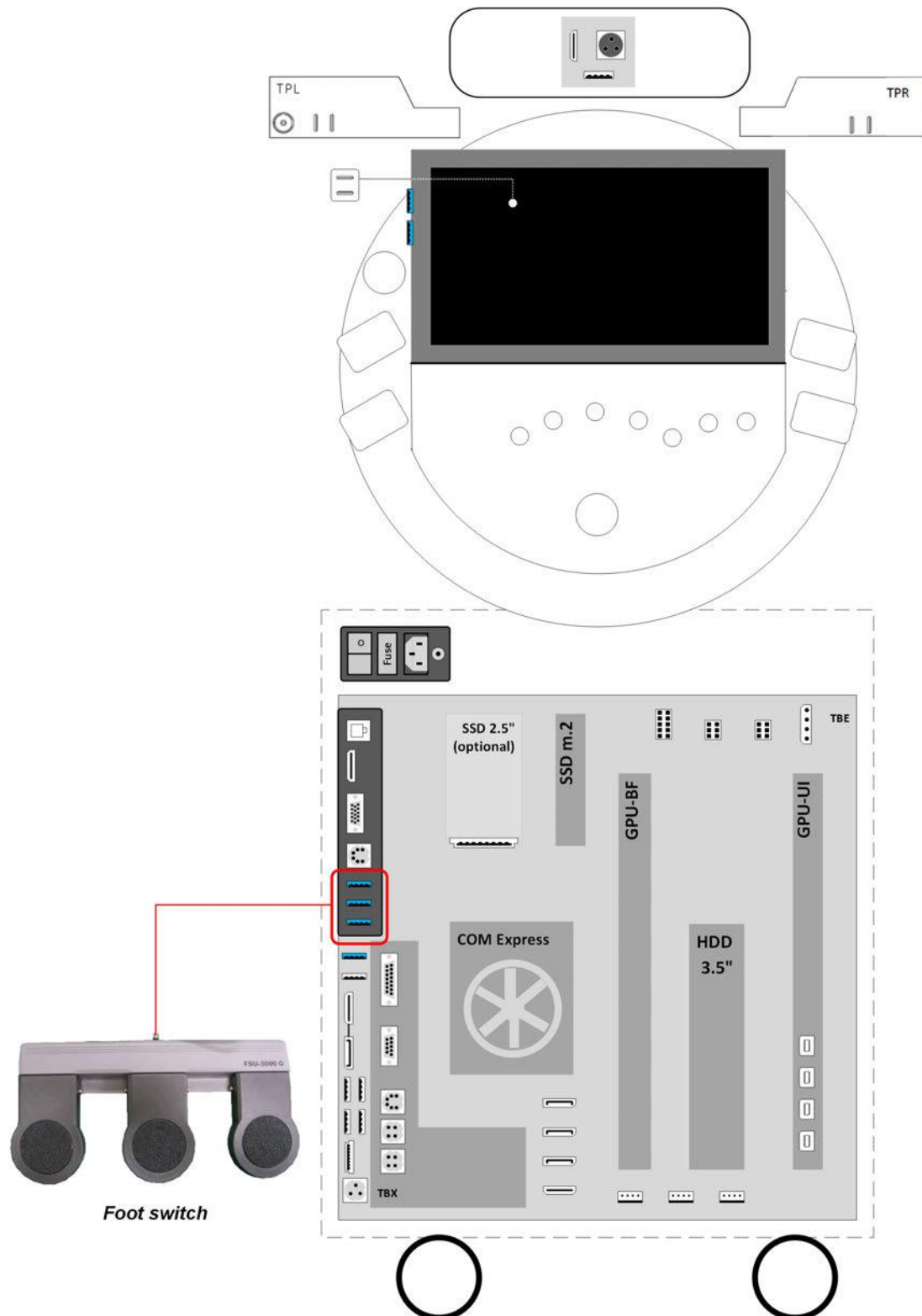


Figure 3-23: Connection Scheme - Foot Switch

3.5.11 Connecting the Barcode Scanner

The Barcode Scanner should be directly connected to any accessible USB-port on the Voluson Expert Series (e.g., next to Touchpanel).

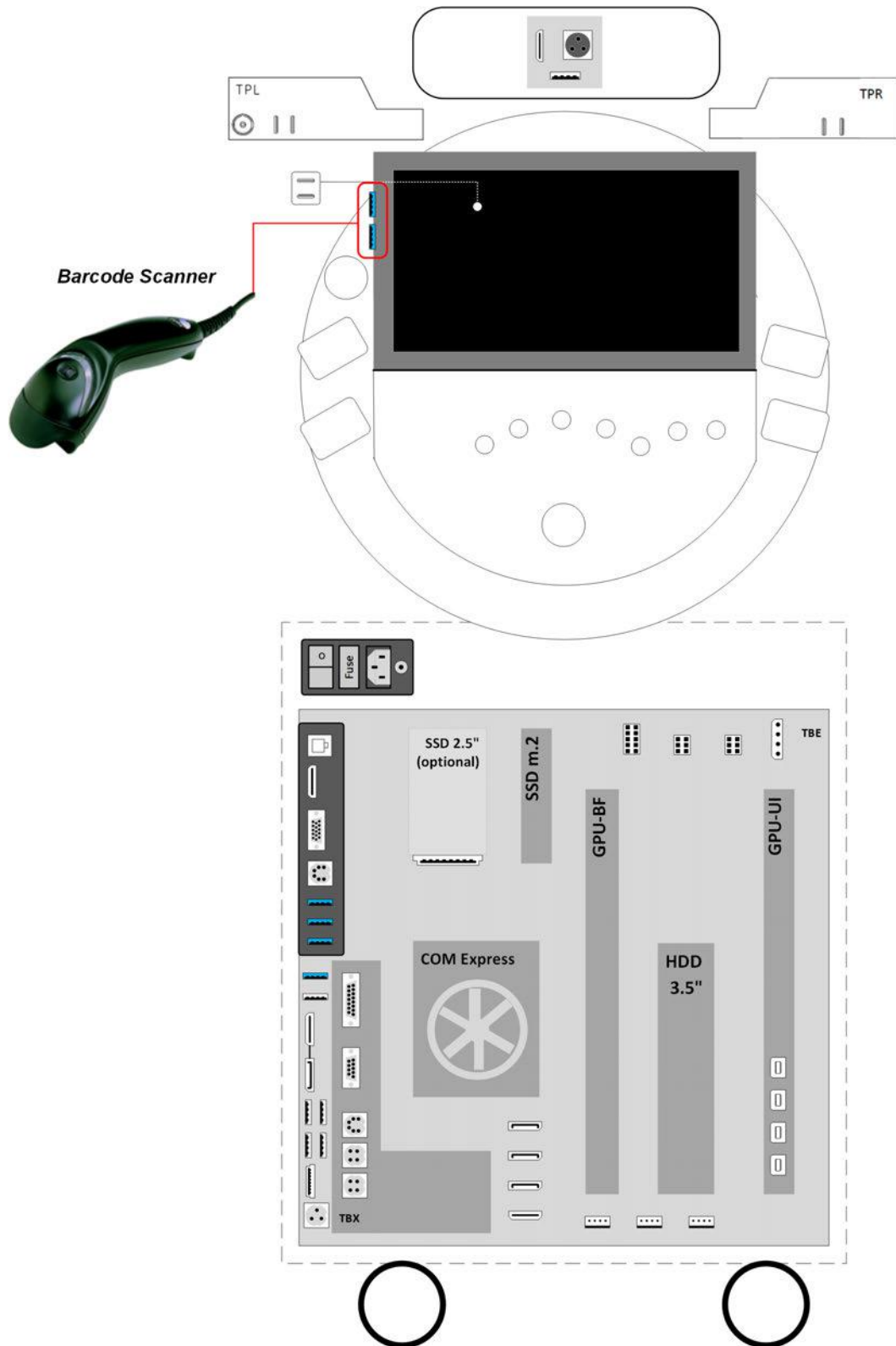


Figure 3-24: Connection Scheme - Barcode Scanner

3.5.12 Connecting the ECG-preamplifier

The optional ECG-preamplifier should be connected to a USB Type-C port on the back side of the Display unit of the Voluson Expert Series system.

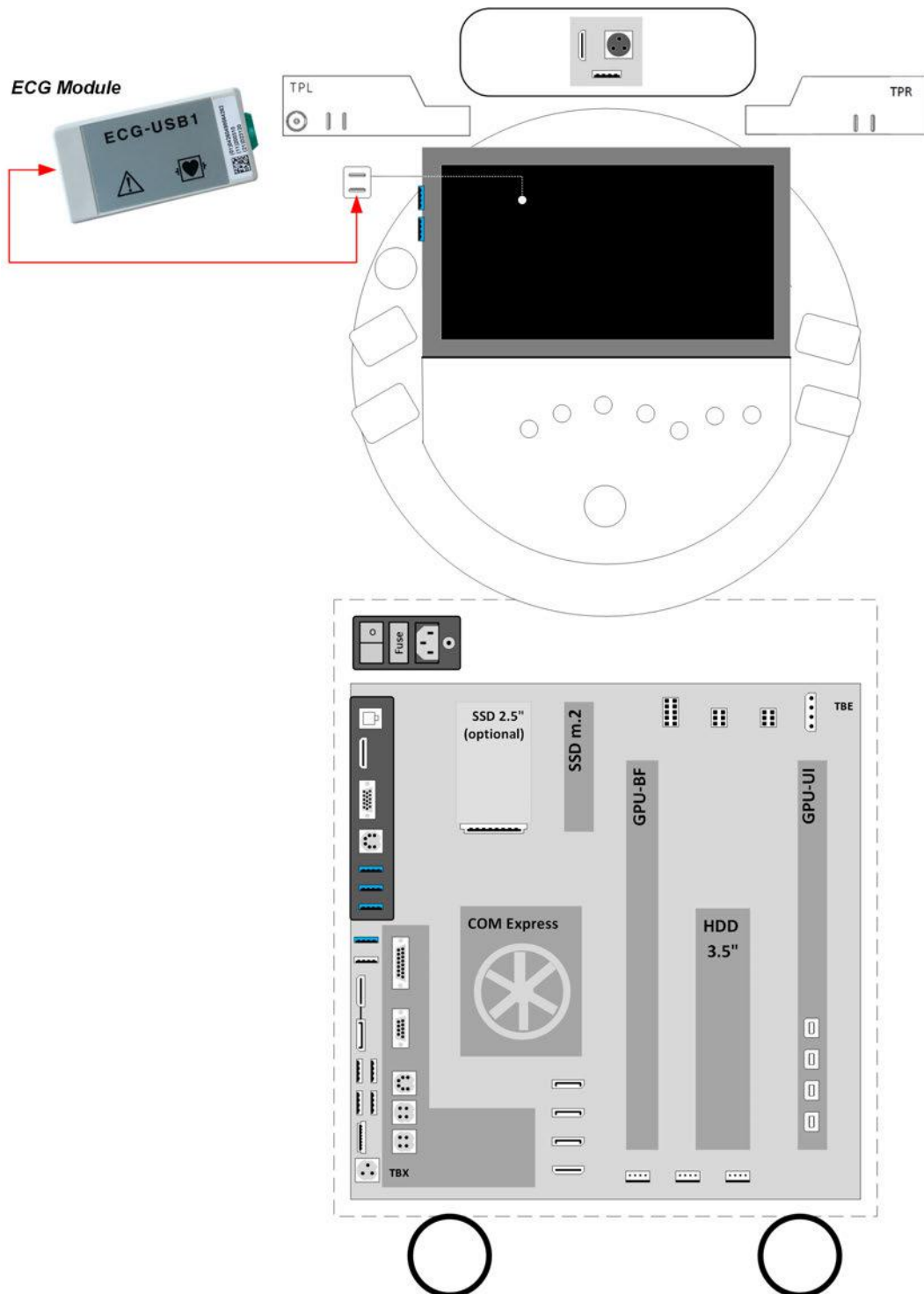


Figure 3-25: Connection Scheme - ECG-preamplifier

3.5.13 Connecting the Magnetic Network Adapter

The optional Magnetic Network Adapter needs to be plugged into the Ethernet **LAN** connector on the rear side of the Voluson Expert Series system.

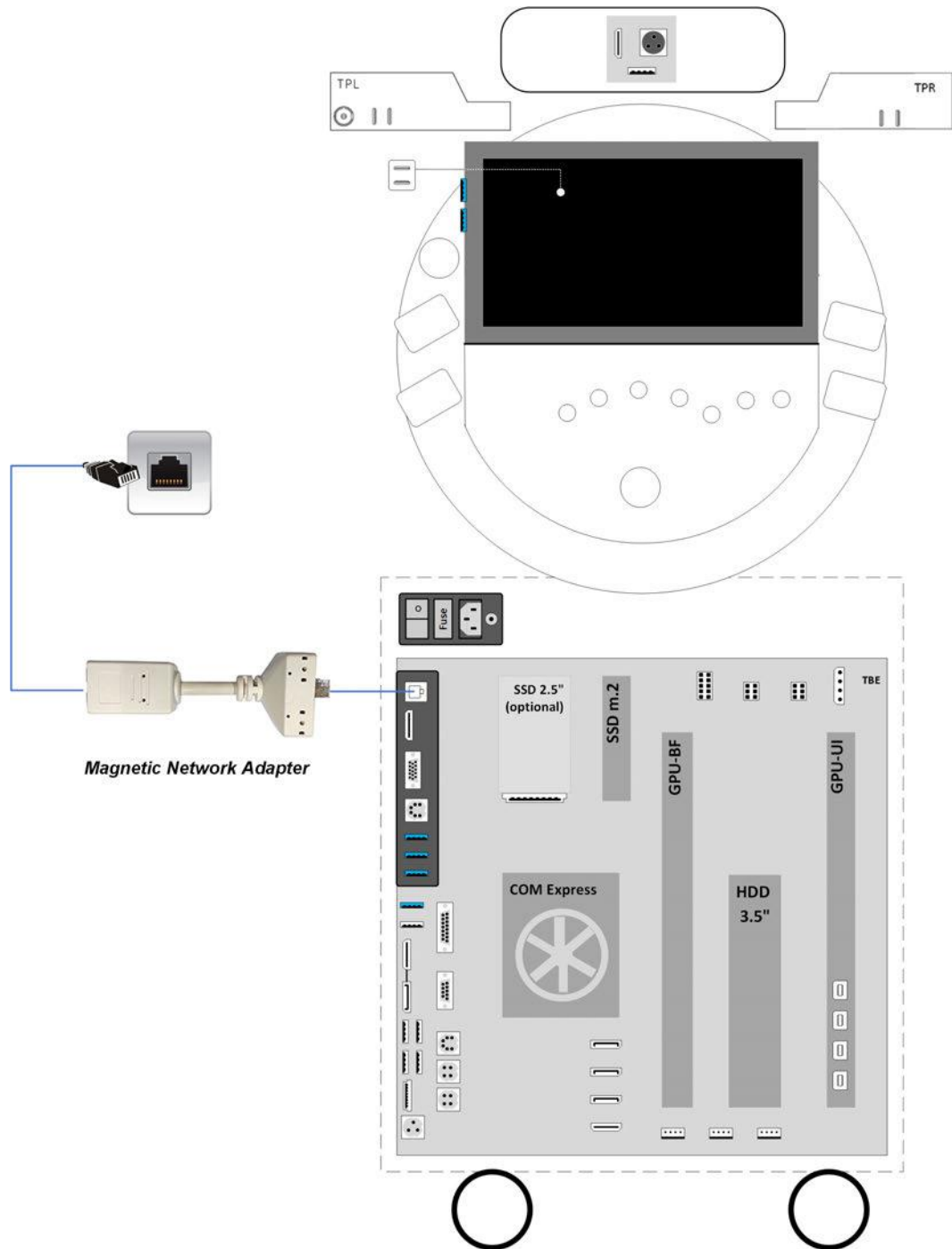


Figure 3-26: Connection Scheme - Magnetic Network Adapter

3.5.14 Connecting an external USB Hard disk or USB Memory Stick

Note Before connecting an USB device, please read [Section 3.5.15 "General Remarks when using external USB-Devices"](#) on page 3-31.

An external HDD or USB stick may be connected to any accessible USB port of the Voluson Expert Series system.

An external USB Hard Disk Drive or USB stick can be connected once the system is powered ON, or after shutdown. The Voluson Expert Series, Windows detects the device and automatically installs a driver. During this process several dialogs may pop up, starting with the „Found New Hardware“ dialog.

Note Memory drives or sticks may be sensitive to EMC interference. This may affect system performance and/or image quality.

3.5.15 General Remarks when using external USB-Devices



Caution

Do not connect or disconnect any external USB-devices to or from the system while scanning a patient! The appearing dialogs could distract you from the scan!

When an external USB-storage device (such as an USB-memory stick or an external hard disk) is connected to the Voluson Expert Series, Windows detects the device and automatically installs a driver. During this process, several dialogs may pop up, starting with the “Found New Hardware” dialog.

The device is then accessible using the drive letter the system assigned to it.

Note If an external drive was not recognized automatically after connecting it, click **Rescan Drive**.

Note When connecting external USB devices, be sure to execute Safety Directions found in the Voluson Expert Series Instructions for Use.

3.5.15.1 External USB-Devices - Disconnection



Before an external USB-device (e.g., USB-memory stick) can be disconnected, the system has to be informed about the removal of the device! For this purpose, select the **Eject Media** button at the Right Toolbar.



Caution

Unplugging or ejecting USB devices without first stopping them can cause result in loss of valuable data.

By selecting the **Eject Media** button at the Right Toolbar, a dialog window (see: [Figure 3-27 below](#)) is displayed, which shows all USB and Network drives connected to the system. Using this dialog, the USB-devices can be stopped before they are physically disconnected.

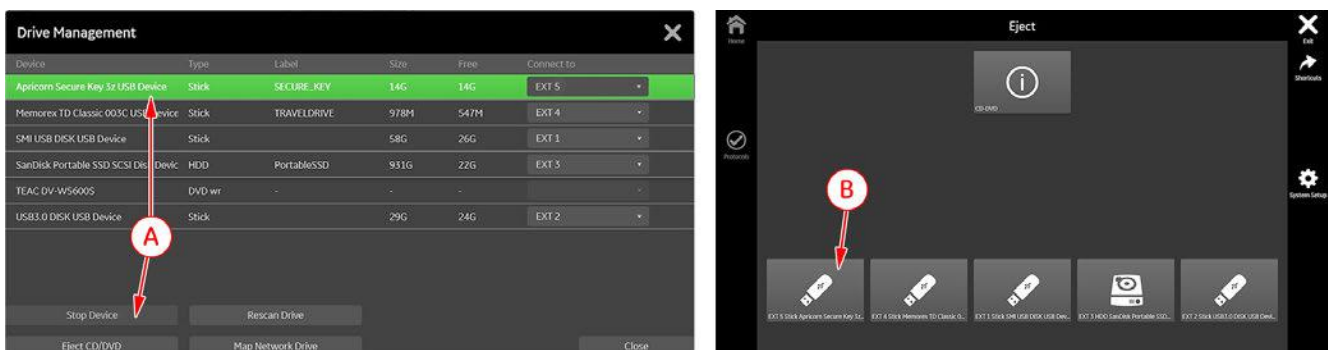


Figure 3-27: Drive Management

To stop the external device, either

- select the device and then click the **Stop Device** button on the Monitor screen (A) or
- touch the **Device** to be stopped on the Touchpanel (B).

Finally, physically disconnect (remove) the device from the system and **Close** or **Exit** the window.

3.6 Printer Installation

Note For connection schemes see [Section 3.5 "Connection of Auxiliary Devices"](#) on page 3-14.

Content in this chapter

3.6.1 Installing the Digital Black & White Printer	3-32
3.6.2 Installing the Digital Color Printer	3-32
3.6.3 Installing the Network Color Laser Printer	3-32
3.6.4 Printer Installation manually	3-40
3.6.5 Adjustment of Printer Settings	3-41
3.6.6 Report Printer Selection	3-44
3.6.7 Button Configuration (Remote Control)	3-45

Note The Network Color Laser printer **MUST NOT** be installed by the user! For installation please contact your local distributor or GE service representative.



Warning

After each installation, the leakage currents have to be measured according to IEC 60601-1, IEC 62353 or other relevant standard.

Note If the **Whitelisting** option is available and activated in Home - System Setup - Security, a password login window might appear during the installation procedure.

3.6.1 Installing the Digital Black & White Printer

1. Connect and install the printer as described in [Section 3.5.2 on page 3-16](#).
2. Verify correct printer settings; see [Section 3.6.5 "Adjustment of Printer Settings" on page 3-41](#).
3. Assign printer to remote keys, see [Section 3.6.7 "Button Configuration \(Remote Control\)" on page 3-45](#).

3.6.2 Installing the Digital Color Printer

1. Connect and install the printer as described in [Section 3.5.3 on page 3-17](#).
2. Verify correct printer settings; see [Section 3.6.5 "Adjustment of Printer Settings" on page 3-41](#).
3. Assign printer to remote keys, see [Section 3.6.7 "Button Configuration \(Remote Control\)" on page 3-45](#).

3.6.3 Installing the Network Color Laser Printer

Content in this chapter

3.6.3.1 Prepare the Network Color Laser Printer	3-33
3.6.3.2 Network Configuration	3-33
3.6.3.3 Configure Wi-Fi Network on the Voluson Expert Series system	3-36
3.6.3.4 Network Color Laser Printer Installation Procedure	3-37

The Network Color Laser Printer can either be connected

- directly to the system, [Figure 3-14 on page 3-18](#)
- to work within the network environment (usually the hospital network), [Figure 3-15 on page 3-19](#)
- via Wi-Fi Direct (communication without requiring a wireless access point), [Figure 3-16 on page 3-20](#)

3.6.3.1 Prepare the Network Color Laser Printer

1. Connect the printer as described in [Section 3.5.4 on page 3-18](#).
2. Press the **Power ON** button on the printer.
3. Install ink tanks and load paper.
4. Wait until the Printer Touchscreen shows the "Home screen".

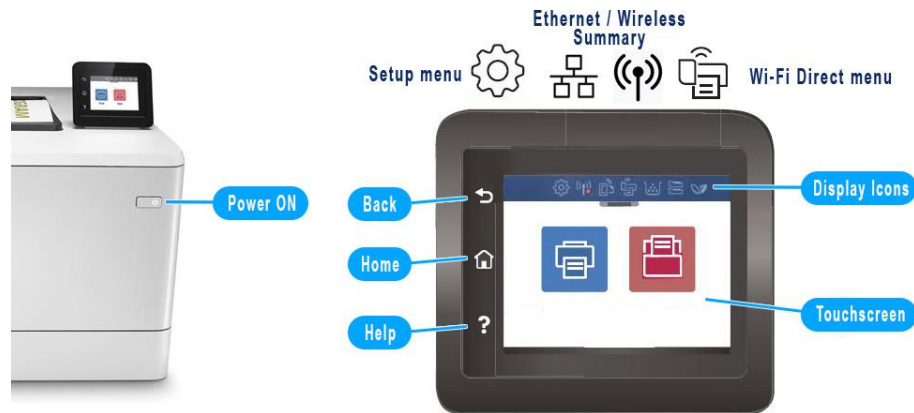


Figure 3-28: basic printer controls - Home screen

5. Depending on the connection type (Ethernet or Wireless) touch the proper icon on the Printer Touchscreen (twice).



Ethernet Summary icon to display printers IP Address (when it's connected via LAN cable)



Wireless Summary icon to display printers IP Address (when it's connected via WLAN)

6. If required, turn on Wi-Fi Direct.



Wi-Fi Direct icon and the **Setup menu** icon to **Turn ON** Wi-Fi Direct.



Setup menu icon to adapt/view settings

7. Select **Setup menu** → **Power Management** → **Sleep Mode** and select **After 30 minutes**.
8. Press the **Back** button until the Printer displays the Home screen.

3.6.3.2 Network Configuration

Note *The Network Configuration page and the required setup details depend on the used printer and the connection method.*

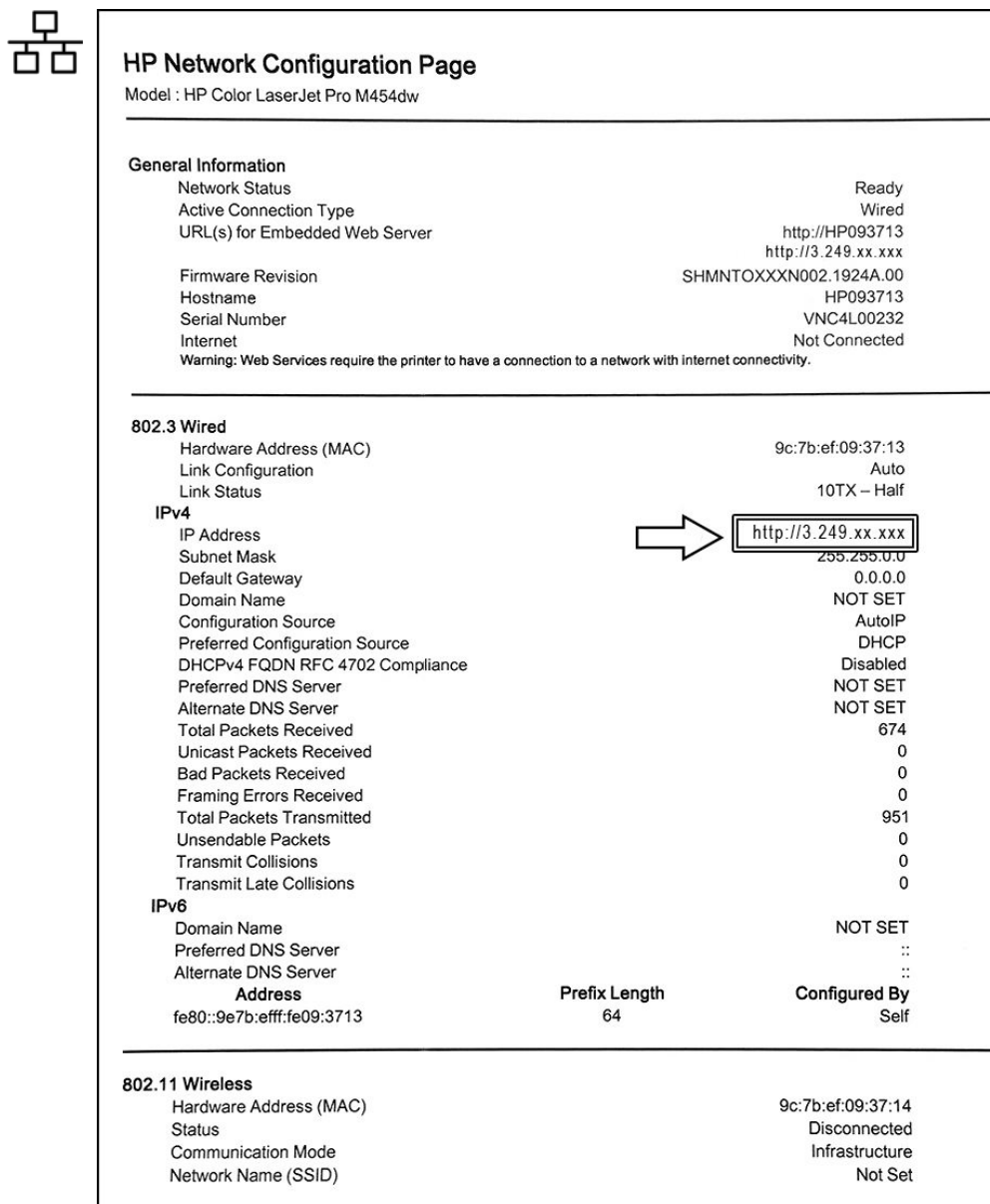
Content in this chapter

3.6.3.2.1 Network Configuration Page (Ethernet Connection)	3-34
3.6.3.2.2 Network Configuration Page (Wi-Fi Connection)	3-35

3.6.3.2.1 Network Configuration Page (Ethernet Connection)

1. Touch the **Ethernet Summary** icon and then select **Print Details**.

Figure 3-29: HP Network Configuration Page -> Ethernet Connection (example)



HP Network Configuration Page
Model : HP Color LaserJet Pro M454dw

General Information

Network Status	Ready
Active Connection Type	Wired
URL(s) for Embedded Web Server	http://HP093713 http://3.249.xx.xxx
Firmware Revision	SHMNT0XXXN002.1924A.00
Hostname	HP093713
Serial Number	VNC4L00232
Internet	Not Connected

Warning: Web Services require the printer to have a connection to a network with internet connectivity.

802.3 Wired

Hardware Address (MAC)	9c:7b:ef:09:37:13
Link Configuration	Auto
Link Status	10TX – Half

IPv4

IP Address	http://3.249.xx.xxx
Subnet Mask	255.255.0.0
Default Gateway	0.0.0.0
Domain Name	NOT SET
Configuration Source	AutoIP
Preferred Configuration Source	DHCP
DHCPv4 FQDN RFC 4702 Compliance	Disabled
Preferred DNS Server	NOT SET
Alternate DNS Server	NOT SET
Total Packets Received	674
Unicast Packets Received	0
Bad Packets Received	0
Framing Errors Received	0
Total Packets Transmitted	951
Unsendable Packets	0
Transmit Collisions	0
Transmit Late Collisions	0

IPv6

Domain Name	NOT SET
Preferred DNS Server	::
Alternate DNS Server	::

Address	Prefix Length	Configured By
fe80::9e7b:eff:fe09:3713	64	Self

802.11 Wireless

Hardware Address (MAC)	9c:7b:ef:09:37:14
Status	Disconnected
Communication Mode	Infrastructure
Network Name (SSID)	Not Set

2. Below **802.3 Wired** you can find the printers IPv4 Address (e.g., IP Address: 3.249.xx.xxx).

Note

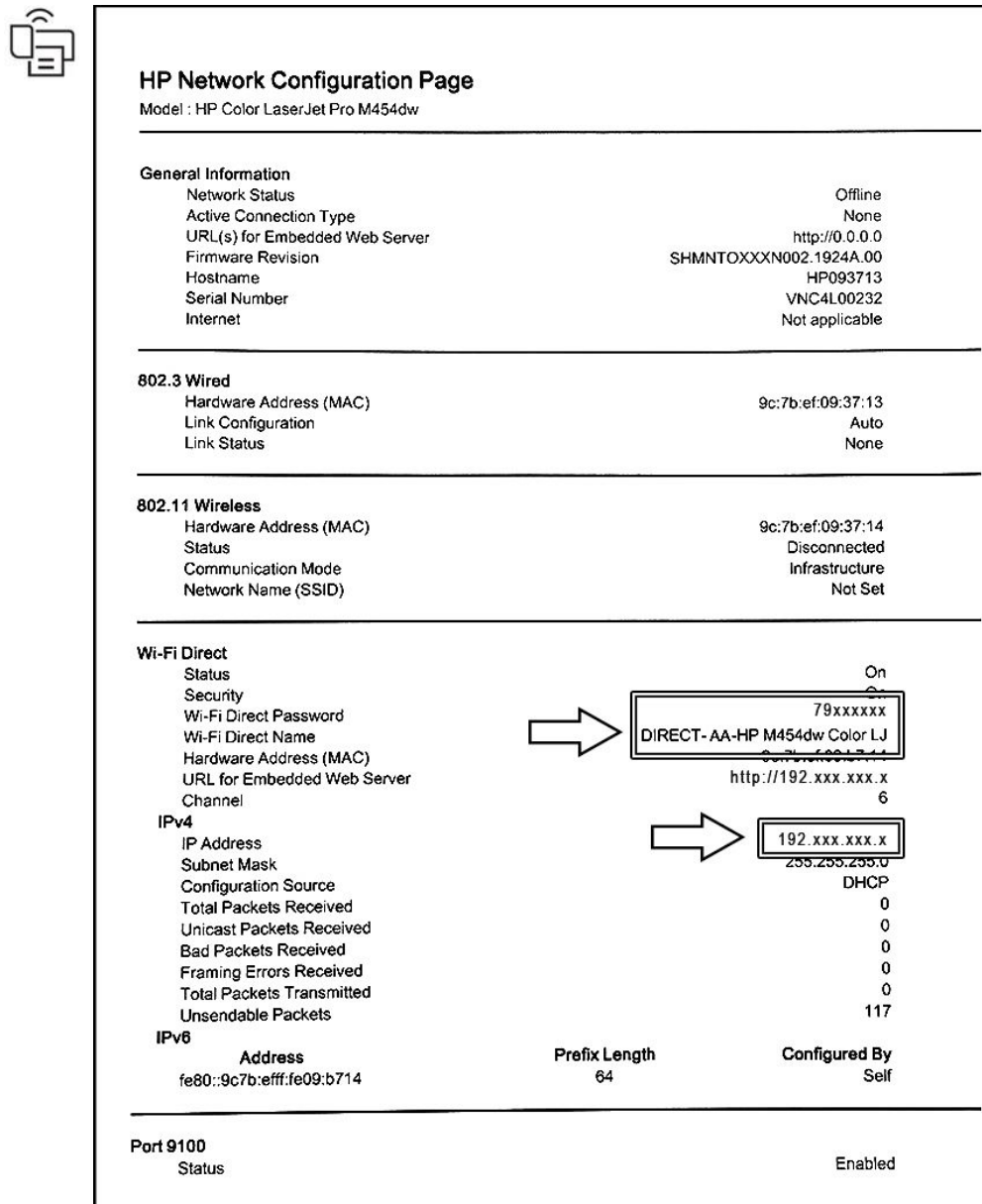
Keep in mind this unique printer IP Address (IPv4 Address). It must be entered during Printer Installation procedure.

Proceed with [Section 3.6.3.4 "Network Color Laser Printer Installation Procedure" on page 3-37](#).

3.6.3.2.2 Network Configuration Page (Wi-Fi Connection)

1. Touch the **Wi-Fi Direct** icon and then select **Print**.

Figure 3-30: HP Network Configuration Page -> Wi-Fi Connection (example)



HP Network Configuration Page
Model : HP Color LaserJet Pro M454dw

General Information

Network Status	Offline
Active Connection Type	None
URL(s) for Embedded Web Server	http://0.0.0.0
Firmware Revision	SHMNT0XXXN002.1924A.00
Hostname	HP093713
Serial Number	VNC4L00232
Internet	Not applicable

802.3 Wired

Hardware Address (MAC)	9c:7b:ef:09:37:13
Link Configuration	Auto
Link Status	None

802.11 Wireless

Hardware Address (MAC)	9c:7b:ef:09:37:14
Status	Disconnected
Communication Mode	Infrastructure
Network Name (SSID)	Not Set

Wi-Fi Direct

Status	On
Security	79xxxxxx
Wi-Fi Direct Password	DIRECT-AA-HP M454dw Color LJ
Wi-Fi Direct Name	http://192.xxx.xxx.x
Hardware Address (MAC)	6
URL for Embedded Web Server	
Channel	

IPv4

IP Address	192.xxx.xxx.x
Subnet Mask	255.255.255.0
Configuration Source	DHCP
Total Packets Received	0
Unicast Packets Received	0
Bad Packets Received	0
Framing Errors Received	0
Total Packets Transmitted	0
Unsendable Packets	117

IPv6

Address	Prefix Length	Configured By
fe80::9c7b:eff:fe09:b714	64	Self

Port 9100

Status	Enabled
--------	---------

2. In the **Wi-Fi Direct** section you can find the **Wi-Fi Direct Password**, **Name** and **IP Address**.

For example:

Wi-Fi Direct Password	79xxxxxx
Wi-Fi Direct Name	DIRECT-AA-HP M454dw Color LJ
IP Address	192.xxx.xxx.x

Note

Keep in mind this unique printer IP Address. It might be entered during Printer Installation procedure. The Wi-Fi Direct Password must be entered when connecting to the Wi-Fi network. For security purposes, this "Password" needs to be kept a secret!

3.6.3.3 Configure Wi-Fi Network on the Voluson Expert Series system

1. Select the **Home** button at the Left Toolbar.
2. In the "Home" menu touch the **System Setup** button to invoke the setup desktop on the screen.
3. Select **Connectivity** and then click the **Device Setup** tab.
4. Click the **WLAN Configuration** button.
5. The WLAN Configuration screen with available networks appears.

Note

*If no networks are available, check the WLAN button (a) which needs to show Off. Wait about one minute for pairing. If still no networks available, click on **Scan** (b).*

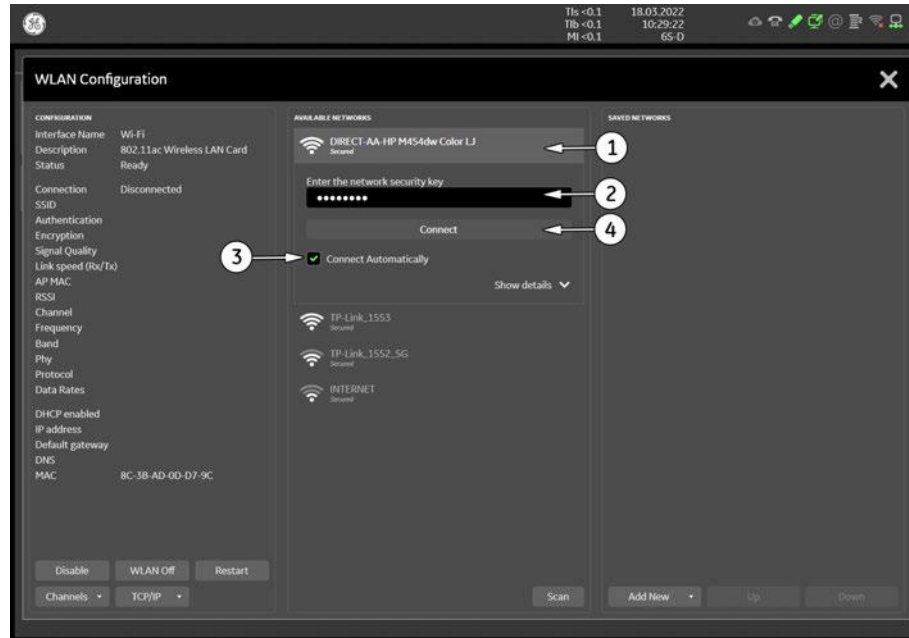


Figure 3-31: Wireless Networks - Connect

6. In the displayed window select the printers wireless network **DIRECT-AA ...** (1), enter the Wi-Fi Direct Password (2) (e.g., 79xxxxxx, see [Figure 3-30 on page 3-35](#)), check mark "Connect Automatically" (3) and then click **Connect** (4).
7. When the printers wireless network **DIRECT-AA ...** is connected, close WLAN windows.

3.6.3.4 Network Color Laser Printer Installation Procedure

1. Select the **Home** button at the Left Toolbar.
2. In the "Home" menu touch the **System Setup** button to invoke the setup desktop on the screen.
3. Select **Connectivity** and then click the **Peripherals** tab.
4. Click the **Add Printer** button.

Please read the displayed message carefully and click **Yes** if you have skills to do this.

5. In the displayed window click on **The printer that I want isn't listed** and then click **Next**.

Note

*If the printer is prepared for Wi-Fi Direct, it is usually listed in the field of the following screen. In this case, select the printer, click **Next**, wait while setup installs necessary files and then proceed with **step 11**.*

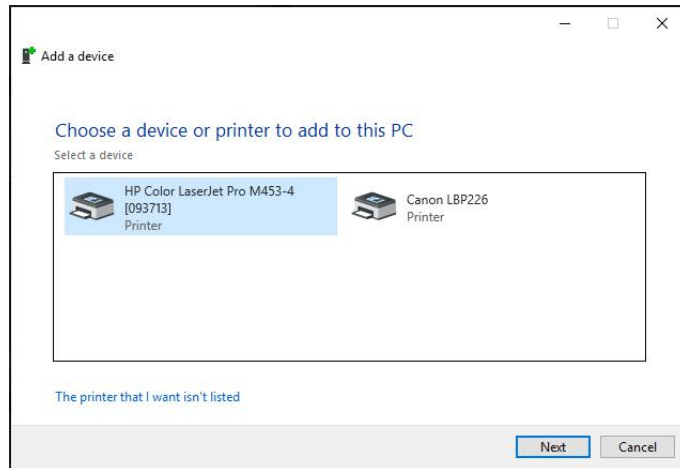


Figure 3-32: the printer is not listed

6. Check mark **Add a printer using a TCP/IP address or hostname** and then click **Next**.

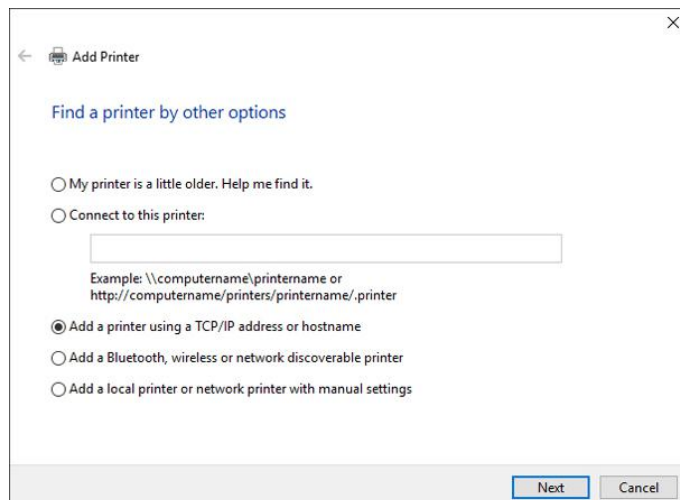


Figure 3-33: add a printer using TCP/IP address

7. In the displayed screen:

- select **TCP/IP Device** from the pull-down menu
- enter previously print out **IP address**
 - * e.g., Ethernet connection: 3.249.xx.xxx; see [Figure 3-29 on page 3-34](#)
 - * e.g., Wi-Fi connection: 192.xxx.xxx.x; see [Figure 3-30 on page 3-35](#)
- if required, enter a different **Port name** (e.g., 9100)
- remove the check mark at "Query the printer....." and then click **Next**.

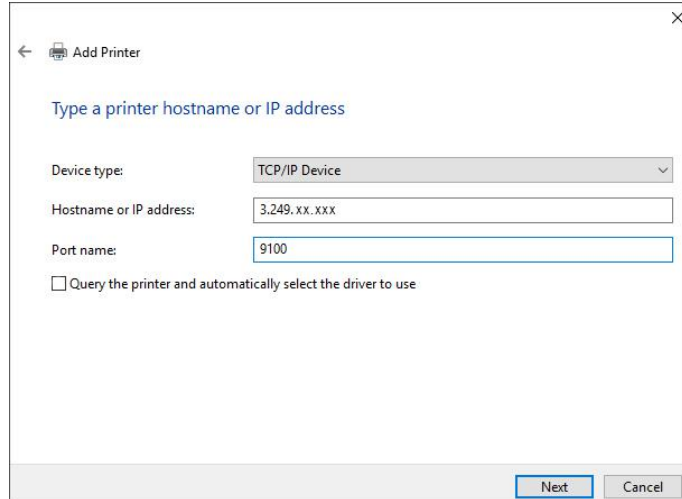


Figure 3-34: enter printers IP Address (example)

8. Choose the printer from the list and then click **Next**.

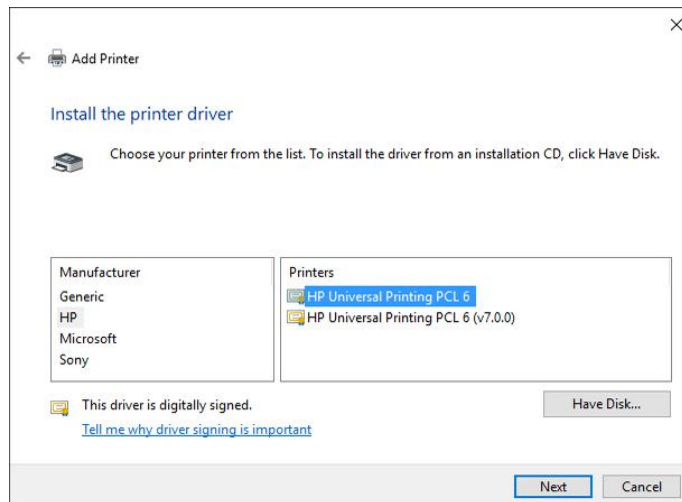
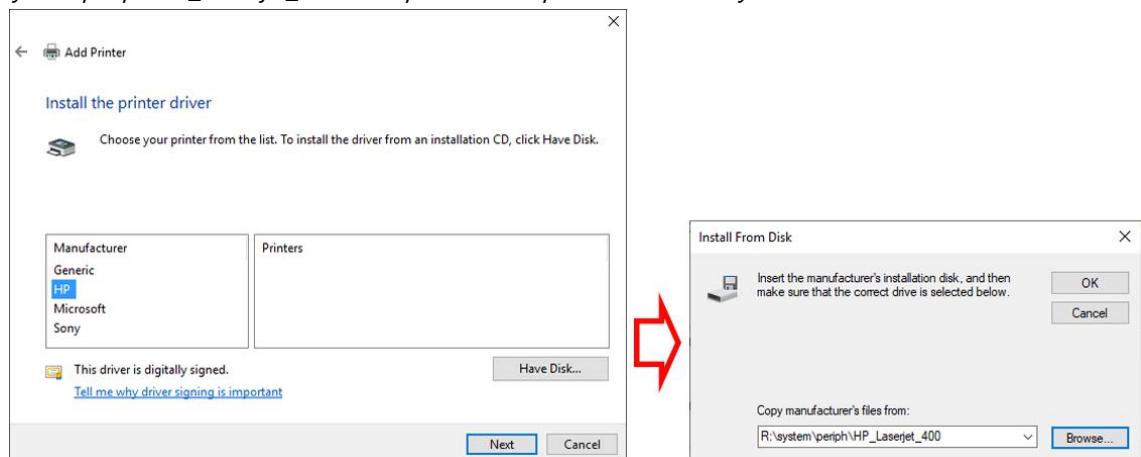


Figure 3-35: choose printer from list

Note

If the printer is unexpectedly not listed, click the **Have Disk** button to browse the internal hard disk for R:\system\periph\HP_Laserjet_400 and open the file hpcu175u.inf. Finally click **OK**.



9. Select **HP Universal Printing PCL6** and then click **Next** to start the installation.

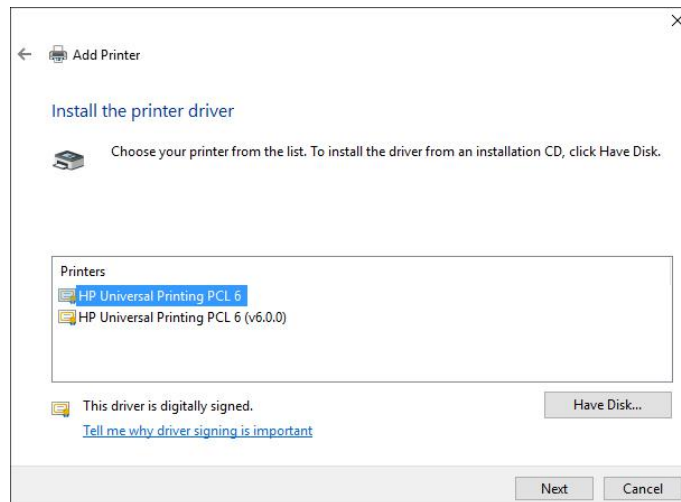


Figure 3-36: select proper printer

10. If desired, change the "Printer Name" and then confirm with **Next** to start the installation.
 11. In the next screen, check mark desired "Printer Sharing" option and then click **Next**.
 12. Remove the check mark at **Set as the default printer** and then click on **Print a test page**.
 13. After the printout click **Finish**.

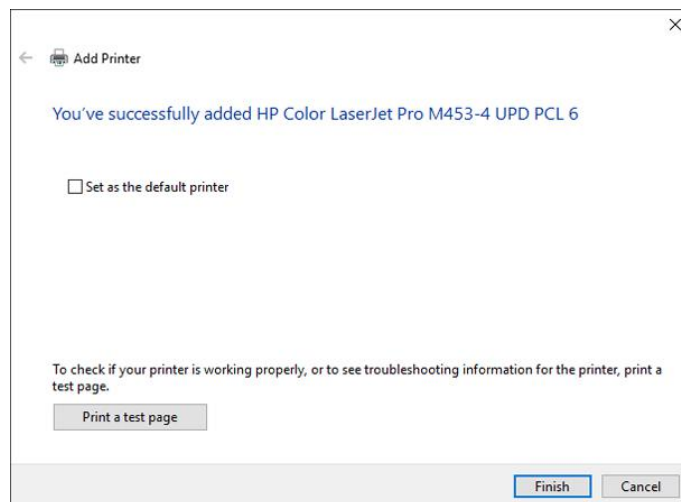


Figure 3-37: installation successful

14. Close all open windows, select **Save & Exit** and then reenter system setup.
 15. Assign the printer as desired:
 a. to remote keys in the **Connectivity** → **Button Configuration** tab, see [Section 3.6.7 on page 3-45](#).
 b. as Report Printer in the **Connectivity** → **Peripherals** tab, see [Section 3.6.6 on page 3-44](#).
 16. Close all open windows, select **Save & Exit** and restart the system (turn off and on the system).
 17. Print a Test Page (e.g., Patient Report with measurement results).

3.6.4 Printer Installation manually

Note

If the **Whitelisting** option is available and activated in Home - System Setup - Security, a password login window might appear during the installation procedure.

1. Select the **Home** button at the Left Toolbar.
2. In the "Home" menu touch the **System Setup** button to invoke the setup desktop on the screen.
3. Select **Connectivity** and then click the **Peripherals** tab.

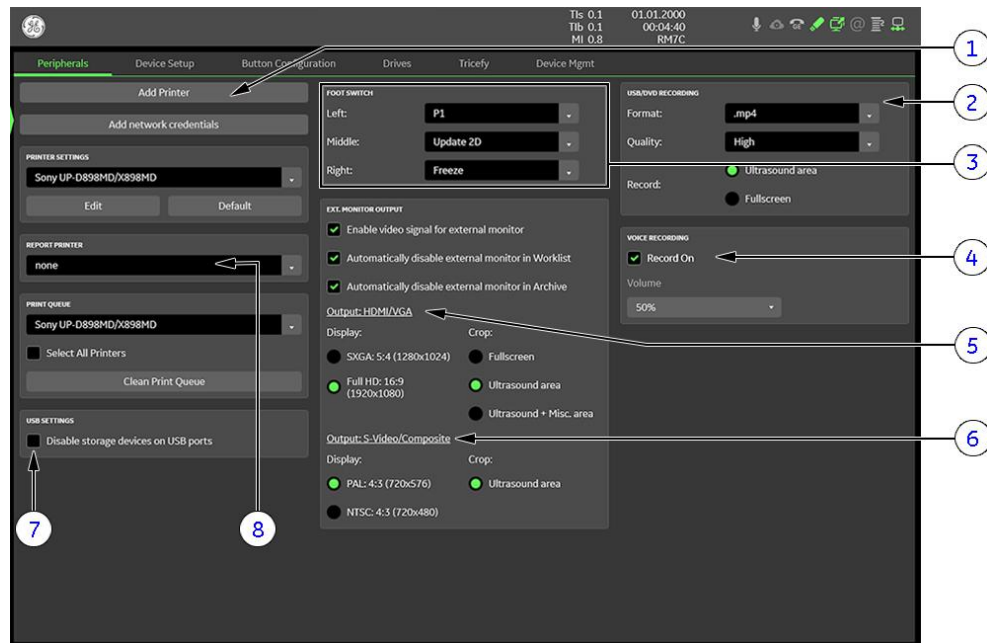


Figure 3-38: System Setup - Connectivity - PERIPHERALS page

- | | |
|--|-------------------------------------|
| 1 Add Printer button | 5 External Monitor Output selection |
| 2 USB/DVD recording (Format and Quality setting) | 6 Video Norm selection |
| 3 Foot Switch Remote Control | 7 Report Printer selection |
| 4 Voice recording | 8 USB Settings (disable USB ports) |
4. Click the **Add Printer** button.
Please read the displayed message carefully and click **Yes** if you have skills to do this.
 5. Click the **Next** button to start the Add Printer Wizard.
 6. After installation, close all open windows, select **Save & Exit** and restart the system (turn off and on the system).
 7. Verify correct printer settings; see [Section 3.6.5 "Adjustment of Printer Settings" on page 3-41](#).
 8. Assign printer to remote keys, see [Section 3.6.7 "Button Configuration \(Remote Control\)" on page 3-45](#).

3.6.5 Adjustment of Printer Settings

After system restart:

1. Select the **Home** button at the Left Toolbar.
2. In the "Home" menu touch the **System Setup** button to invoke the setup desktop on the screen.
3. Select **Connectivity** and then click the **Peripherals** tab.
4. Select the desired printer from the Printer Settings pull-down menu and click the **Edit** button.



Figure 3-39: select desired printer

- ["UP-D898MD Printer - Settings" on page 3-41](#)
- ["UP-D25MD Printer Settings" on page 3-43](#)



Warning

After each installation, the leakage currents have to be measured according to IEC 60601-1, IEC 62353 or other relevant standard.

3.6.5.1 UP-D898MD Printer - Settings

1. Call up the "Printer Settings"; see [Section 3.6.5 "Adjustment of Printer Settings" on page 3-41](#).
2. Choose Orientation, Format and Printing Preferences.

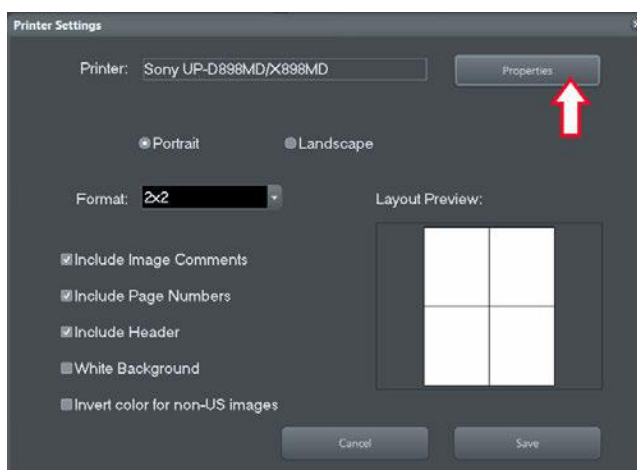


Figure 3-40: Printer Settings

3. Click the **Properties** button.

4. In the **Main** page select:
 - Paper Size: **4096x1280**
 - Orientation: **Portrait**
 - Interpolation Method: **Bilinear**

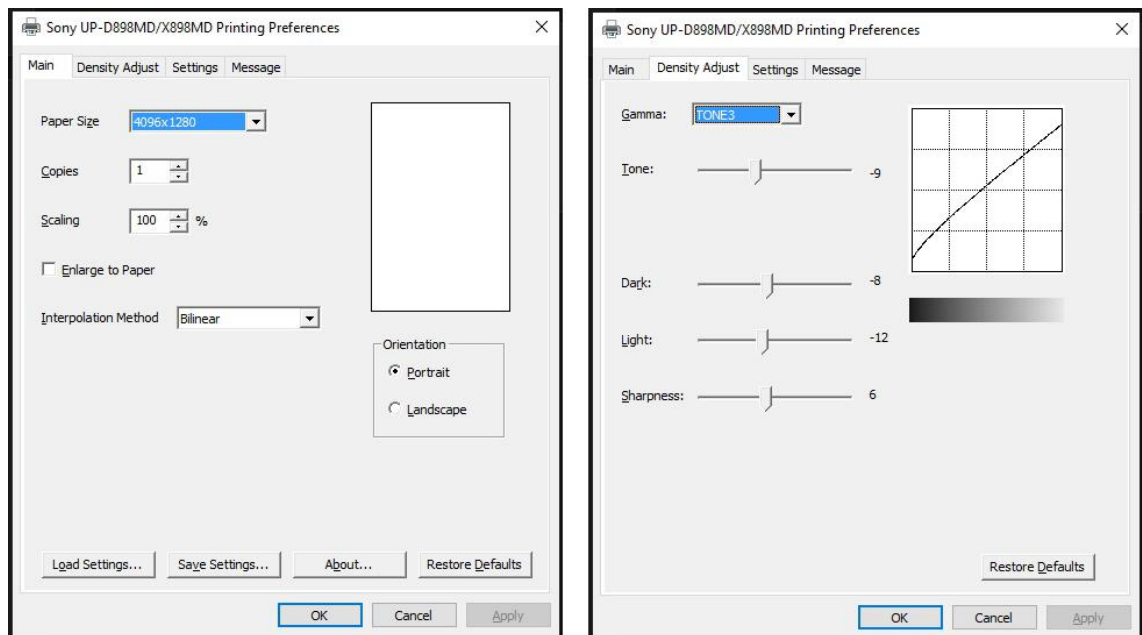


Figure 3-41: Main / Density Adjust page

5. Select the **Density Adjust** page and select:
 - Gamma: **TONE3**
 - Tone = **-9**, Dark = **-8**, Light = **-12**, Sharpness = **6**
6. Save the adjusted printer settings with **Apply** and **OK**. Close window and exit System Setup.
7. Assign printer to remote keys, see [Section 3.6.7 "Button Configuration \(Remote Control\)" on page 3-45](#).

3.6.5.2 UP-D25MD Printer Settings

1. Call up the "Printer Settings"; see [Section 3.6.5 "Adjustment of Printer Settings" on page 3-41](#).
2. Choose Orientation, Format and Printing Preferences.

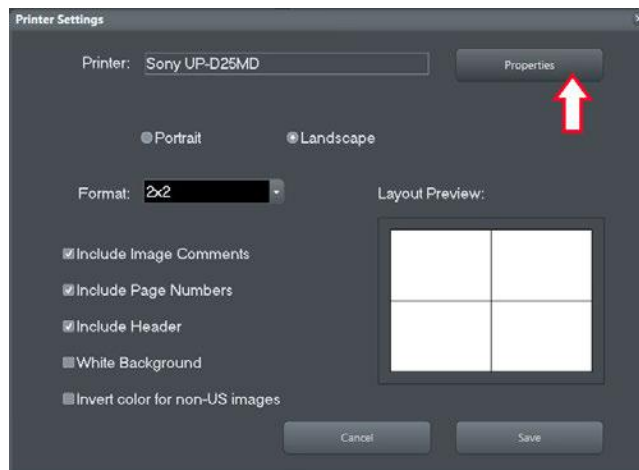


Figure 3-42: Printer Settings

3. Click the **Properties** button.
4. Select the **Paper** page and select:
 - Paper: **UPC-...L (large) / UPC-...S (small)**
 - Orientation: **Landscape** (recommended when using large paper size)
 - **High Speed** (check mark on)

Note

*Settings for paper size **must** match with the used paper (large/small) and the right color ink cartridge has to be used. Otherwise you will get an error message at printing.*

5. Select the **Graphics** page. From the "Color Adjust" pull-down menu select:
6. **Color Balance**: Cyan = 0, Magenta = 0, Yellow = 0

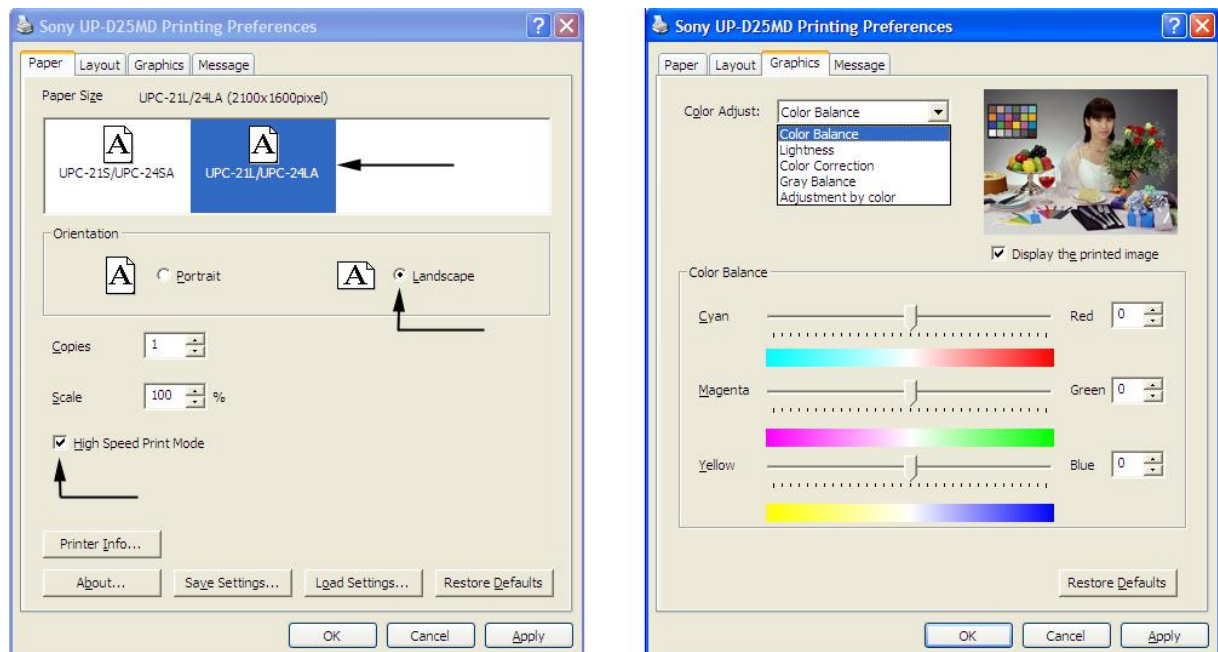


Figure 3-43: Paper / Graphics page

7. **Lightness:** Sharpness = 7, Dark = 0, Gamma = -6, Light = 2, Gamma Curve = Curve 1

8. **Color Correction:** check mark **Printer Hardware Color Correction**

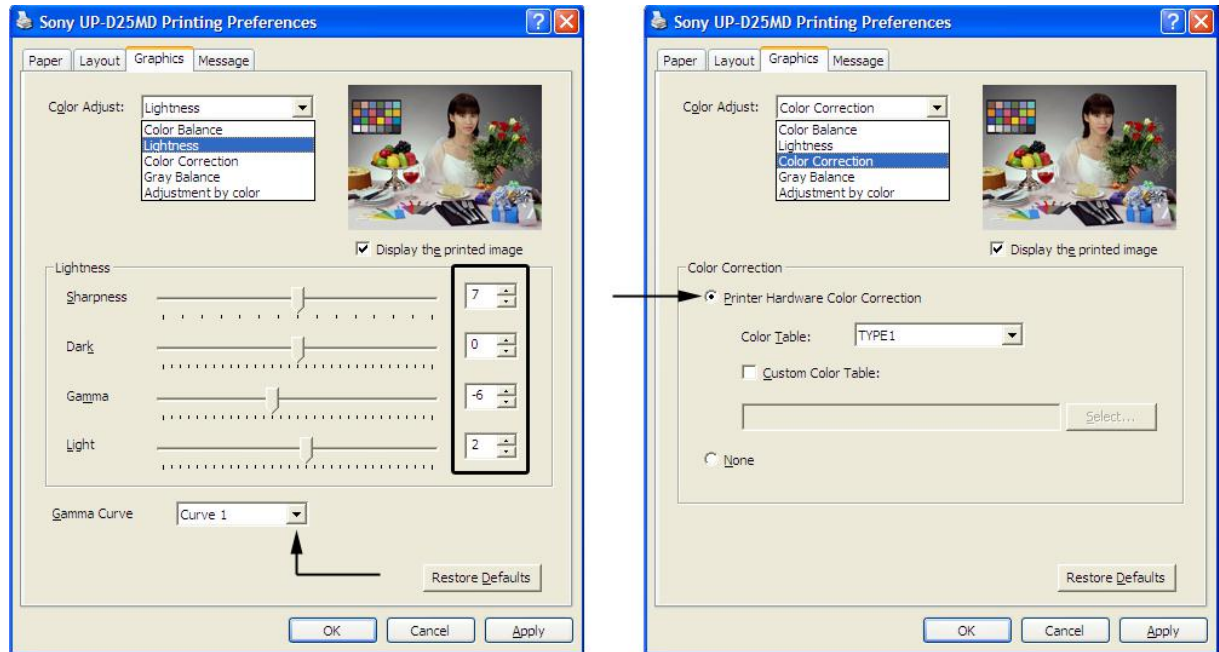


Figure 3-44: Graphic page (Lightness / Color Correction)

9. **Gray Balance:** X = 50, Y = 50

10. **Adjustment by Color:** Color (region) = Magenta Red

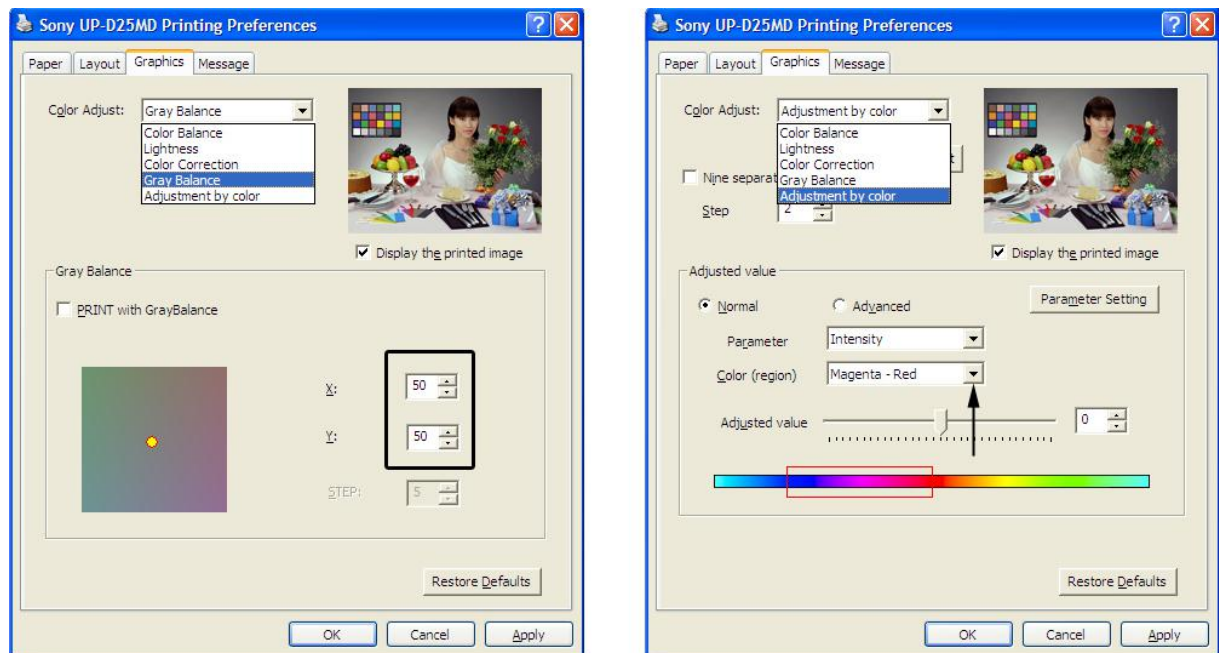


Figure 3-45: Graphic page (Gray Balance / Adjustment by Color)

11. Save the adjusted printer settings with **Apply** and **OK**. Close window and exit System Setup.

12. Assign printer to remote keys, see [Section 3.6.7 "Button Configuration \(Remote Control\)"](#) on page 3-45.

3.6.6 Report Printer Selection

1. Click on the **Peripherals** tab; see [Figure 3-38](#) on page 3-40.

2. Select the desired Report Printer from the pull-down menu.

Note

The selected Report Printer is usually used for printing reports and images from the Archive.

3.6.7 Button Configuration (Remote Control)

To assign any auxiliary device (e.g., printer) to the remote keys **P1**, **P2**, **P3** and/or **P4**, or to assign specific task to customizable **C1**, **C2**, **C3** and/or **C4** button:

1. Select the **Home** button at the Left Toolbar.
2. In the “Home” menu touch the **System Setup** button to invoke the setup desktop on the screen.
3. Select **Connectivity** and then click the **Button Configuration** tab.

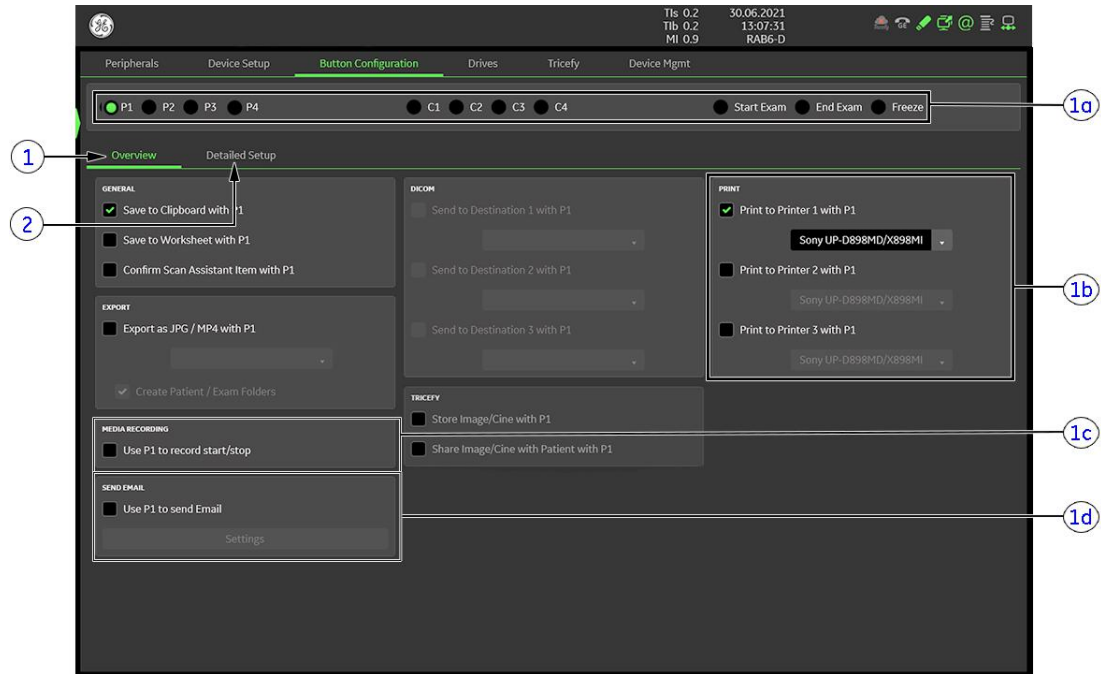


Figure 3-46: System Setup - Connectivity - BUTTON CONFIGURATION page (Overview)

1	Overview	2	Detailed Setup
1a	Configurable buttons		
1b	Select Printer		
1c	Recorder Control		
1d	Select P? key to send Email		

1. **Overview** tab: Select basic actions to be performed when pressing a particular key.
2. **Detailed Setup** tab: Choose what exactly happens when a particular key is pressed. (i.e.: If you choose to save images in the Overview tab, then the format of the images to save can be selected in the Detailed Setup tab.)

Content in this chapter

3.6.7.1 How to configure P1-P4 Keys	3-45
3.6.7.2 How to configure C1-C4 Keys	3-46

3.6.7.1 How to configure P1-P4 Keys

1. Select the Home - System Setup - Connectivity - **Button Configuration** tab.
2. Click the desired remote control **P1-P4** key and select its task among the given features.
3. If desired, adjust settings in the Detailed Setup tab.

3.6.7.2 How to configure C1-C4 Keys

1. Select the Home - System Setup - Connectivity - **Button Configuration** tab.
2. Click the desired configurable **C1-C4** key and select its function among the given features in the drop-down menu.

Note

*If desired, select **Save/Send/Print (P-Key)**. This opens extended configuration view to allow same functions as for P-Keys.*

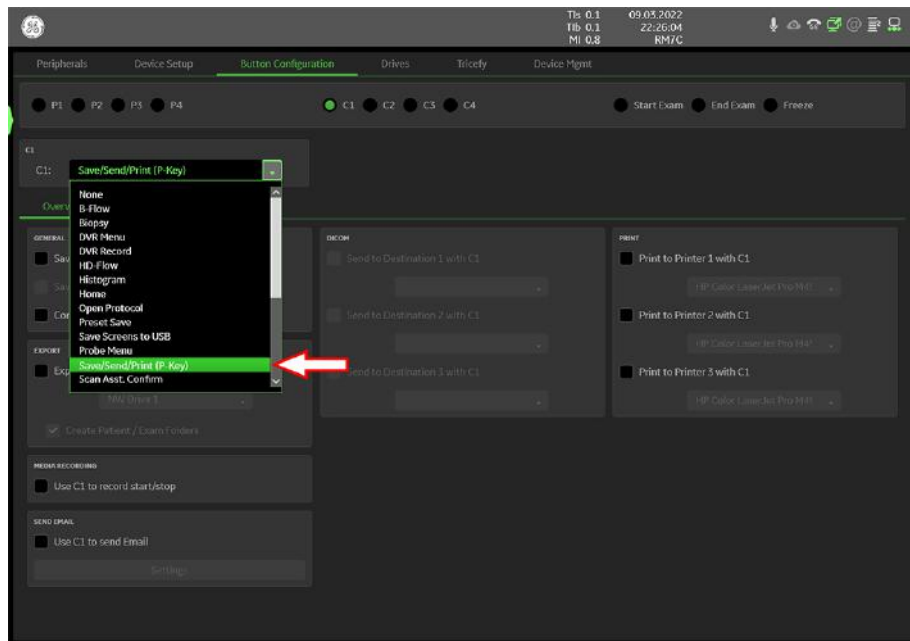


Figure 3-47: System Setup - Connectivity - BUTTON CONFIGURATION page - C1

3.7 System Configuration (Home Menu)

1. Select the **Home** button at the Left Toolbar.

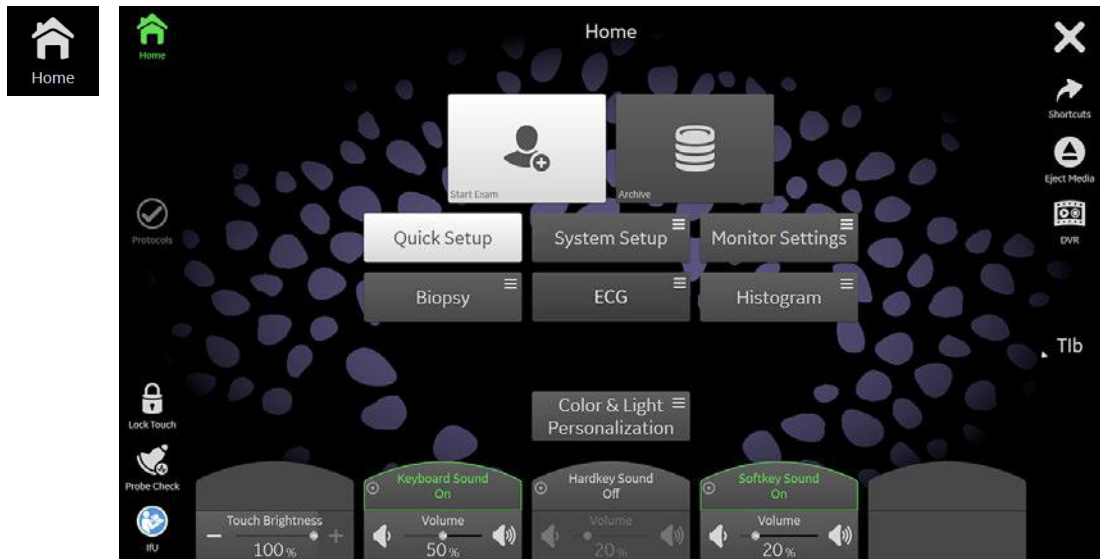


Figure 3-48: Home menu

Note For further details refer to the *Voluson Expert Series Instructions for Use*.

Content in this chapter

3.7.1 IfU (Instructions for Use) - - - - -	3-47
3.7.2 Probe Check - - - - -	3-48
3.7.3 Lock Touch - - - - -	3-48
3.7.4 Quick Setup - - - - -	3-49
3.7.5 System Setup - - - - -	3-50
3.7.6 Monitor Settings - - - - -	3-63
3.7.7 Color and Light Personalization - - - - -	3-63
3.7.8 Shortcuts - - - - -	3-64

3.7.1 IfU (Instructions for Use)



1. Insert the **elIfU** (electronic Instructions for Use) DVD into the drive.
2. Select the **Home** button at the Left Toolbar.
3. In the "Home" menu touch the **IfU** button at the Left Toolbar. This opens the index file from the DVD.

Note If no DVD, or an incorrect DVD is inserted, a message to insert the correct DVD appears.

3.7.2 Probe Check

Note *The lens surface or cap surface must be clean (e.g., free of dirt, water or coupling gel) to perform the test.*



1. Select the **Home** button at the Left Toolbar.
2. In the "Home" menu touch the **Probe Check** button at the Left Toolbar.
3. Verify that probe lens/cap surface is clean, then select **Start Test**.
4. When Probe Check is finished select **Ok**.

3.7.3 Lock Touch

Frequent and diligent cleaning of the Voluson Expert Series ultrasound system reduces the risk of spreading infection from person to person and helps to maintain a clean work environment.

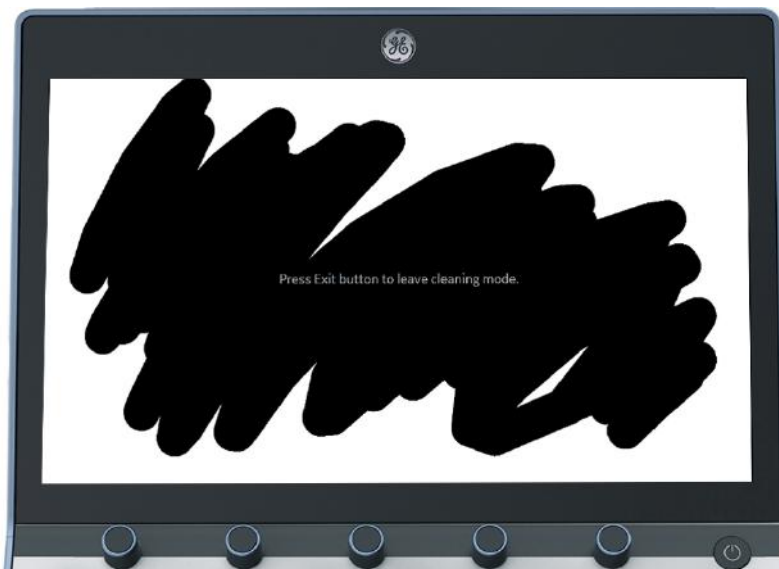


Do not use high-proof alcohol for cleaning. Only use cleaning/disinfecting agents listed in the Instructions for Use of the Voluson Expert Series system.



1. Select the **Home** button at the Left Toolbar.
2. In the "Home" menu touch the **Lock Touch** button at the Left Toolbar. This opens the "Cleaning Mode" screen.
3. Use cleaning agent on a soft, non-abrasive, damp cloth to carefully wipe the Touchpanel (already cleaned area changes color from white to black).

Caution: DO NOT allow any liquid to drip or seep into the system.



4. When cleaning is finished press the **Exit** button.

3.7.4 Quick Setup

1. Select the **Home** button at the Left Toolbar.
2. In the “Home” menu touch the **Quick Setup** button to invoke quick setup pages on the screen.

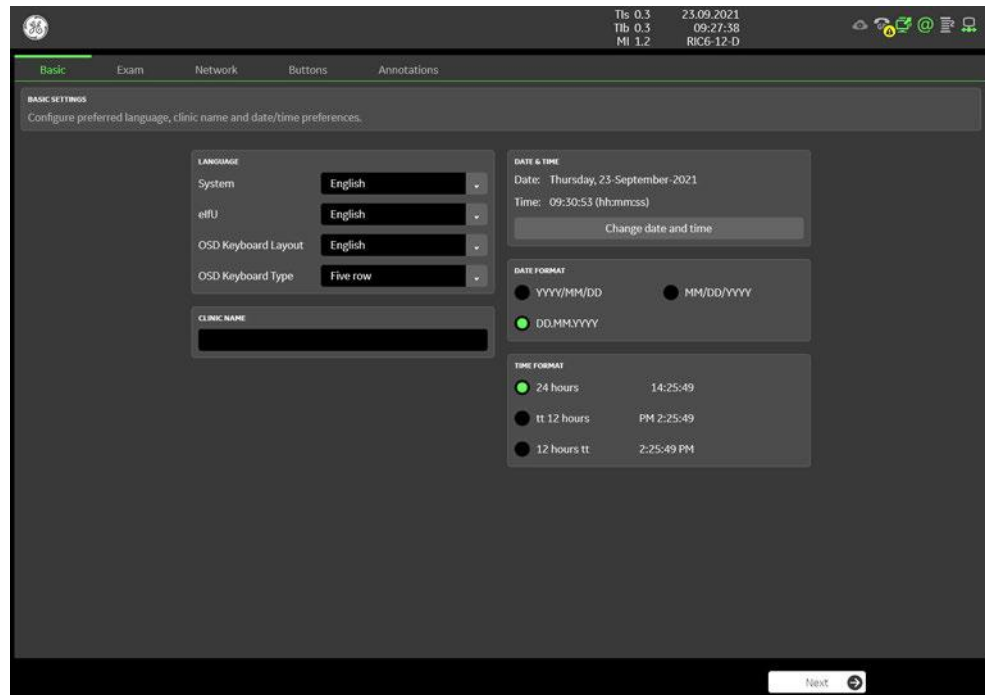


Figure 3-49: Quick Setup (e.g., BASIC)

The Quick Setup contains the most used settings in a guided workflow. Navigation between the 5 different pages is done with the **Back** and **Next** button. **Save & Exit** will save all settings and close the Quick Setup.

□ **Basic**

Configure preferred language, clinic name and date/time preferences.

□ **Exam**

Select applications shown when entering patient exam data. Hidden applications can still be accessed if needed using the configuration selection within the patient information screen.

□ **Network**

Configure network preferences and enter email to enable Tricefy.

□ **Buttons**

Select programmable key actions based on data management and workflow preferences.

□ **Annotations**

Configure general settings related to annotations, cursor position and bodymarkers. Annotations can be customized by long pressing the ABC menu located on the scan screen.

3.7.5 System Setup

1. Select the **Home** button at the Left Toolbar.
2. In the “Home” menu touch the **System Setup** button to invoke the setup desktop on the screen.

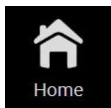
Modifications of system setup parameters and settings are supported by 8 major groups. Each major group contains diverse dialog pages and sub windows.

Settings	• General: <i>Date & Time</i>, Clinic Name, Language, Screen saver, etc. • Details: Doppler 2D Refresh, Zoom options, Menu Brightness, Trackball Speed, etc. • Annotation: adjustment of different Annotation presets (e.g., Home position, etc.) • Clipboard: adjustment of Clipboard display and functions • Patient / Archive: Drop Down Management, Title Bar Settings, Capitalize Letter in Patient Names, etc. • Scan Assistant: Scan Assistant List/Item Settings, etc. • SonoLyst: enable/disable SonoLyst live algorithm
Administration	• Service: enter the password « she » to get access to the Service Tools • System Info: shows which Software/Hardware version is installed in the system • Options: shows which options are installed in the system.
Connectivity	• Peripherals: <i>Video Norm</i> selection, <i>Foot switch</i> assignment, Add Printer, Edit Printer settings, etc. • Device Setup: to set up all DICOM, Archive and Network configuration nodes (e.g., <i>TCP/IP</i>, <i>WLAN</i>, <i>EMAIL</i>, etc.) • Button Configuration: assignment of Remote keys P-buttons (e.g., Printer selection), C-buttons, ... • Drives: USB and Network drives: stop devices, map network drive, erase CD • Tricefy: enable and activate Tricefy • Device Mgmt: activate remote device management tool
Security	• Authentication: access setting (password protection) to authentication functions • Disk Encryption: enables an encryption to secure all Patient Data, Patient Images and corresponding measurements • Whitelisting: prevents the system from installing unwanted software • System Password: password for the Windows Operating system
Backup	• Configuration Backup: Save/Load/Delete System Configuration Backup • Image Archive: Save/Load Image Archive
Imaging Presets	• Presets: to save User Folders/Presets and 3D/4D Presets, Logo display, etc. • Global Parameters: adjustment of different parameters for specific or all applications
Biopsy Setup	• Menu to program Biopsy Lines
Measure Setup	• Measure & Calc: shows all settings, which are used for generic measurements as well as calculations in different applications • Application Parameters: to adjust Status on Freeze for different modes, Manual Trace method, Calculation Ratio, etc. • Global Parameters: select cursor type and size, font size and color of measure results, position of results for different modes, etc. • Report: adjustment and setup of Report display • Result Window: adjustment of Result and OB Graph display • Button Configuration: adjust assignment of buttons • SonoAVC: adjustment of follicle parameters

Note For further details refer to the *Voluson Expert Series Instructions for Use*.

Content in this chapter

<i>3.7.5.1 How to invoke the System Setup Procedure</i>	<i>3-51</i>
<i>3.7.5.2 How to set Date and Time</i>	<i>3-52</i>
<i>3.7.5.3 How to enter Clinic Name</i>	<i>3-52</i>
<i>3.7.5.4 How to change System Language</i>	<i>3-52</i>
<i>3.7.5.5 How to change Language of Instruction for Use</i>	<i>3-53</i>
<i>3.7.5.6 How to change Video Norm</i>	<i>3-53</i>
<i>3.7.5.7 How to change Ext. Monitor Output Settings</i>	<i>3-53</i>
<i>3.7.5.8 How to adjust Function of the Foot Switch</i>	<i>3-54</i>
<i>3.7.5.9 How to adjust Format and Quality setting for USB/DVD recording</i>	<i>3-54</i>
<i>3.7.5.10 How to disable Storage Devices on USB ports</i>	<i>3-54</i>
<i>3.7.5.11 How to activate Tricefy</i>	<i>3-54</i>
<i>3.7.5.12 How to activate Device Management</i>	<i>3-55</i>
<i>3.7.5.13 How to change the Keyboard Layout</i>	<i>3-55</i>
<i>3.7.5.14 How to configure InSite</i>	<i>3-55</i>
<i>3.7.5.15 How to execute Additional Software Installation (ASI)</i>	<i>3-56</i>
<i>3.7.5.16 How to load "Voluson Update" Packages</i>	<i>3-57</i>
<i>3.7.5.17 How to activate User Login Authentication</i>	<i>3-58</i>
<i>3.7.5.18 How to perform Disk Encryption</i>	<i>3-59</i>
<i>3.7.5.19 How to protect the system by Whitelisting</i>	<i>3-62</i>
<i>3.7.5.20 How to change the System Password</i>	<i>3-62</i>

3.7.5.1 How to invoke the System Setup Procedure

1. Select the **Home** button at the Left Toolbar.
2. In the "Home" menu touch the **System Setup** button to invoke the setup desktop on the screen.
3. Select the corresponding "major group" and then click the desired tab.

Note

In general operations are done with the trackball and the trackball keys (mouse emulation).



Trackball (mouse position):
positions the pointing device (arrow) on the desktop



left / right trackball key (left mouse button):
sets, fixates markers and activates pages/buttons etc. marked by the pointing device



upper / lower trackball key (upper trackball key = right mouse button):
functionality depend upon the currently displayed menu
no function in system desktop

3.7.5.2 How to set Date and Time

- 1. Invoke System Setup as described in [Section 3.7.5.1 on page 3-51](#).
- 2. Select **Settings** and then click the **General** tab.

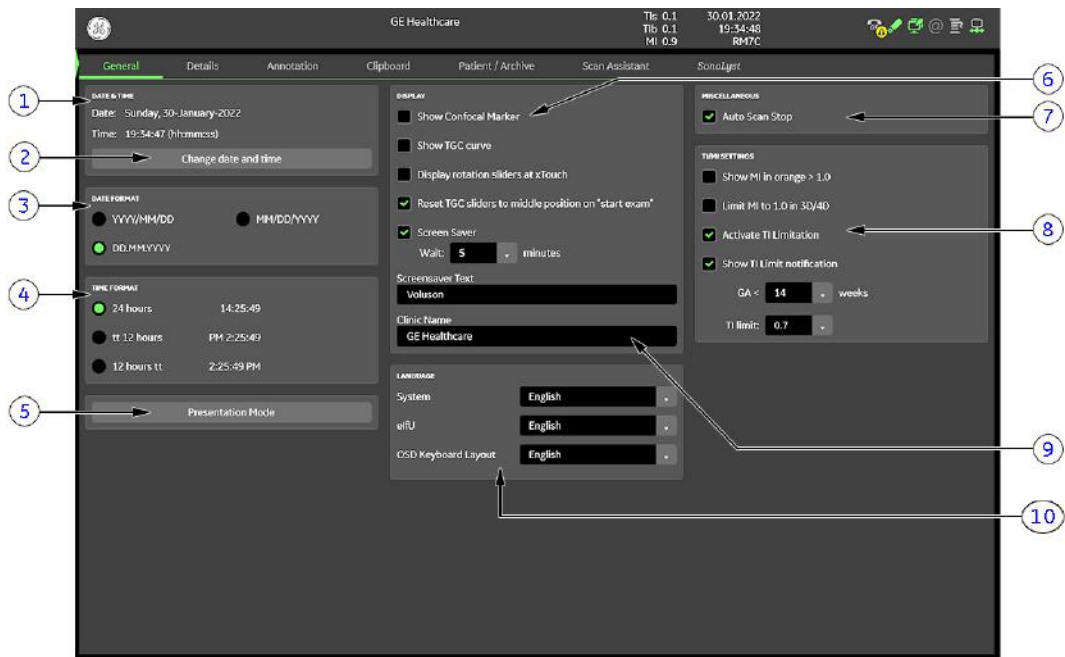


Figure 3-50: System Setup - Settings - GENERAL page

1	Date and Time	6	Display options
2	change date and time	7	Miscellaneous options
3	Date Format	8	TI/MI settings
4	Time Format	9	Screensaver Text and Clinic Name
5	Presentation Mode	10	Language settings (System, elfU, ...)

- 3. Click the **Change date and time** button to activate a sub dialog window to enter date, time and time zone.
- 4. Select the "Date Format" (only one can be active).
- 5. Select the "Time Format" (only one can be active).
- 6. Close the Service page with **Save&Exit**.

3.7.5.3 How to enter Clinic Name

- 1. Invoke System Setup as described in [Section 3.7.5.1 on page 3-51](#).
- 2. Select **Settings** and then click the **General** tab.
- 3. Select the text box to enter a new "Clinic Name" with the keyboard.
- 4. Close the Service page with **Save&Exit**.

The clinic name will be copied into the Clinic Name (ID) field of the information header.

3.7.5.4 How to change System Language

- 1. Invoke System Setup as described in [Section 3.7.5.1 on page 3-51](#).
- 2. Select **Settings** and then click the **General** tab.
- 3. Select the desired "System" language from the pull-down menu.
- 4. Close the Service page with **Save&Exit** and restart the system.

Note After changing the system language the Voluson Expert Series has to reboot.

3.7.5.5 How to change Language of Instruction for Use

1. Invoke System Setup as described in [Section 3.7.5.1 on page 3-51](#).
2. Select **Settings** and then click the **General** tab.
3. Select the desired "elfU" language from the pull-down menu.
4. Close the Service page with **Save&Exit** and restart the system.

3.7.5.5.1 How to store an elfU file on the local HDD

1. Insert the **elfU** (electronic Instructions for Use) DVD into the drive.
2. Press the **F1** key on the alphanumeric keyboard to open the "Instructions for Use" in the language that is selected in the System Setup.

The file is automatically copied to the systems local HDD C:\ drive.

Whenever the **F1** key is pressed again to open elfU, the system checks availability of the DVD.

- If no DVD is present, the locally stored elfU file is opened.
- If neither a DVD nor a locally stored elfU file is present, a message to insert the correct DVD appears.

3.7.5.6 How to change Video Norm

1. Invoke System Setup as described in [Section 3.7.5.1 on page 3-51](#).
2. Select **Connectivity** and then click the **Peripherals** tab.

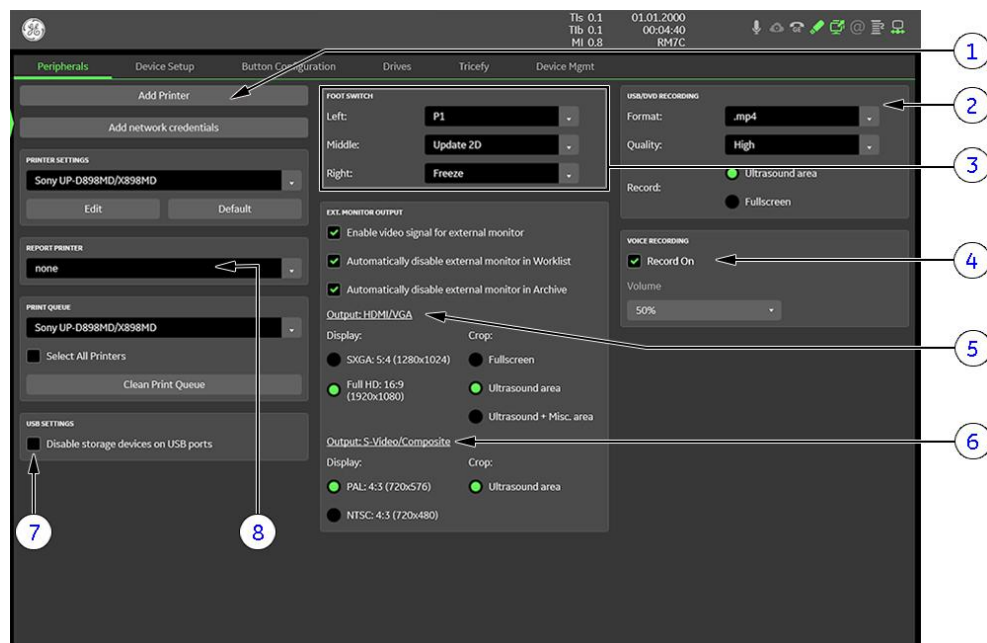


Figure 3-51: System Setup - Connectivity - PERIPHERALS page

- | | |
|--|-------------------------------------|
| 1 Add Printer button | 5 External Monitor Output selection |
| 2 USB/DVD recording (Format and Quality setting) | 6 Video Norm selection |
| 3 Foot Switch Remote Control | 7 Report Printer selection |
| 4 Voice recording | 8 USB Settings (disable USB ports) |
3. Click the proper field: PAL (50Hz) or NTSC (60Hz).
 4. Close the Service page with **Save&Exit** and restart the system.

3.7.5.7 How to change Ext. Monitor Output Settings

1. Invoke System Setup as described in [Section 3.7.5.1 on page 3-51](#).
2. Select **Connectivity** and then click the **Peripherals** tab.
3. If not properly selected, choose desired settings in the "External Monitor Output" section.
4. Close the Service page with **Save&Exit** and restart the system.

3.7.5.8 How to adjust Function of the Foot Switch

1. Invoke System Setup as described in [Section 3.7.5.1 on page 3-51](#).
2. Select **Connectivity** and then click the **Peripherals** tab.
3. Select desired function of the Foot Switch.
4. Close the Service page with **Save&Exit** and restart the system.

3.7.5.9 How to adjust Format and Quality setting for USB/DVD recording

1. Invoke System Setup as described in [Section 3.7.5.1 on page 3-51](#).
2. Select **Connectivity** and then click the **Peripherals** tab.
3. Select the desired recording **Format** from the pull-down menu.
4. Select the desired recording **Quality** from the pull-down menu.
5. Close the Service page with **Save&Exit** and restart the system.

3.7.5.10 How to disable Storage Devices on USB ports

1. Invoke System Setup as described in [Section 3.7.5.1 on page 3-51](#).
2. Select **Connectivity** and then click the **Peripherals** tab.
3. Check mark **Disable storage devices on USB ports**.

Note If the option "Advanced Security Features" is not set, **Disable storage devices on USB ports** is not available.

Note When **Disable storage devices on USB ports** is checked, the system does not recognize when a USB storage device is connected. Therefore, the export / import from and the recording to USB storage devices is not possible. A blue info badge is visible in the tab **Drives** when USB ports are disabled.

4. Close the Service page with **Save&Exit** and restart the system.

3.7.5.11 How to activate Tricefy

Note *Tricefy is an option and might not be available in all countries. If this option is not set, the tab **Tricefy** is not available in System Setup - Connectivity.*

1. Select the **Home** button at the Left Toolbar.
2. In the "Home" menu touch the **System Setup** button to invoke the setup desktop on the screen.
3. On the left side of the screen select **Connectivity** and then click the **Tricefy** tab.

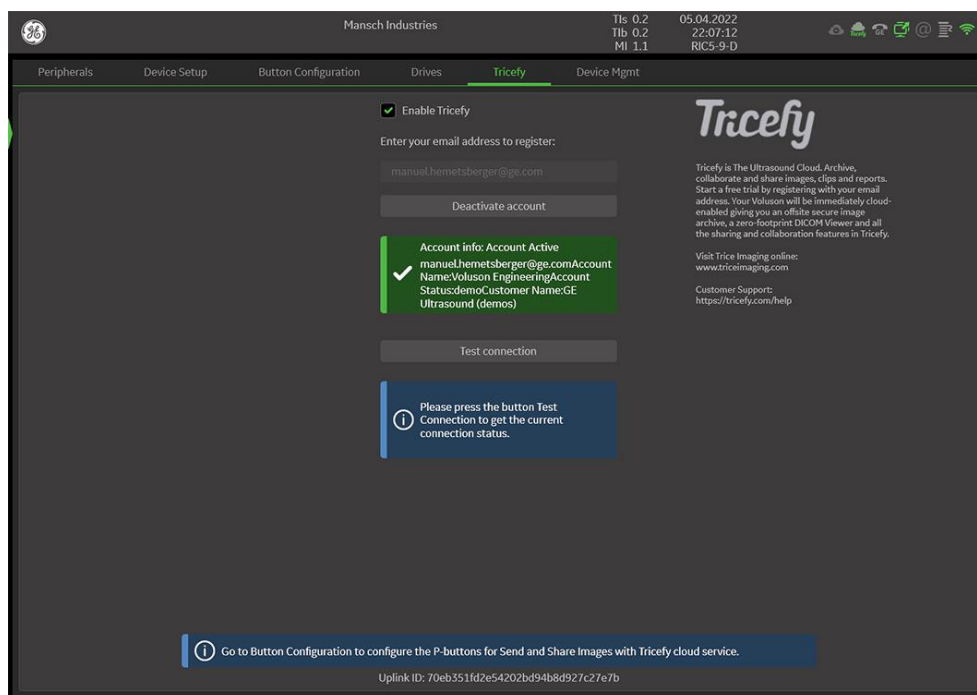


Figure 3-52: System Setup - Connectivity - Tricefy already activated

4. Check mark **Enable Tricefy**.
5. Enter your email address to register.
6. Click **Activate account**.

3.7.5.12 How to activate Device Management

Note

*AVURI Device Management is an option and might not be available in all countries. If this option is not set, the tab **Device Mgmt** is not available in System Setup - Connectivity.*

1. Select the **Home** button at the Left Toolbar.
2. In the "Home" menu touch the **System Setup** button to invoke the setup desktop on the screen.
3. On the left side of the screen select **Connectivity** and then click the **Device Mgmt** tab.

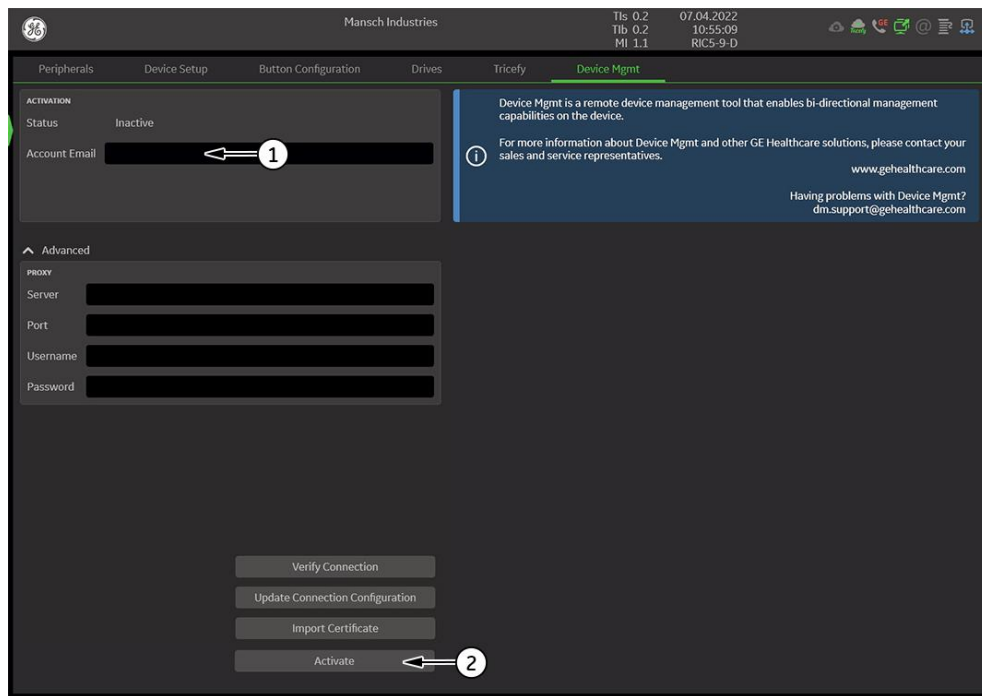


Figure 3-53: System Setup - Connectivity - Device Mgmt

4. Enter **Account Email** (1).

Note

If desired select "Advanced" to enter further details.

5. Click **Activate** (2).

3.7.5.13 How to change the Keyboard Layout

see [Section 6.4 "Modification of Keyboard Layout" on page 6-5](#)

3.7.5.14 How to configure InSite

see [Section 3.13.6 "RSvP Agent Configuration" on page 3-82](#)

3.7.5.15 How to execute Additional Software Installation (ASI)

1. Invoke System Setup as described in [Section 3.7.5.1 on page 3-51](#).
2. Select **Administration** and then click the **Service** tab.

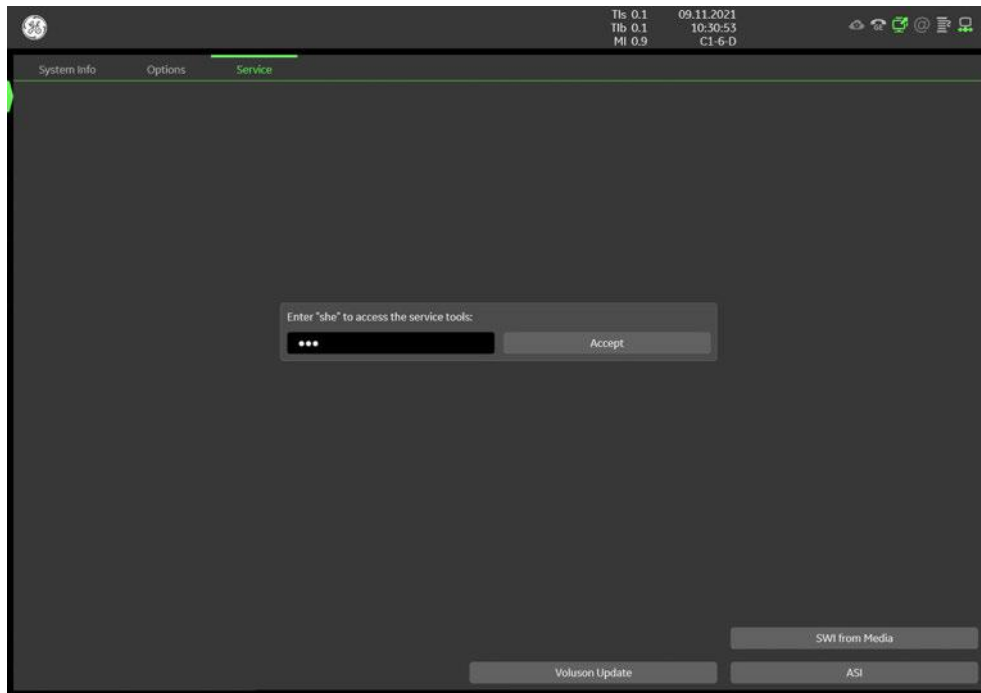


Figure 3-54: System Setup - Administration - SERVICE page

3. Click the **ASI** button.

The software parts to be installed depend on the contents of the System DVD that is used.

3.7.5.16 How to load "Voluson Update" Packages

Note "Voluson Remote Updates" is an option.

1. Invoke System Setup as described in [Section 3.7.5.1 on page 3-51](#).
2. Select **Administration** and then click the **Service** tab.
3. Click the **Voluson Update** button.
4. In the displayed window select available updates (A).

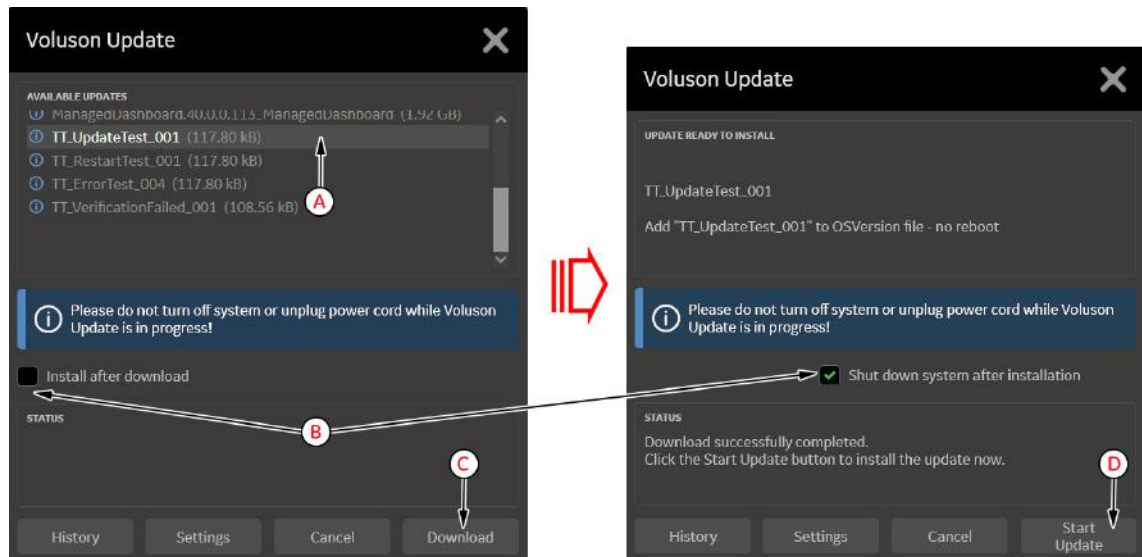


Figure 3-55: Voluson Update

5. Check mark desired settings (B).
6. Click **Download** (C).

Note If "Whitelisting" and/or "Disc Encryption" is activated, a password might be required before the solidify process starts (depends on set check marks).

7. After successful download, you might have to click the **Start Update** button (D) (depends on set check marks) to initiate the installation process.



Successfully installed updates are listed in the **History** page.

3.7.5.17 How to activate User Login Authentication

1. Invoke System Setup as described in [Section 3.7.5.1 on page 3-51](#).
2. Select **Security** and then click the **Authentication** tab.
3. Check mark **Activate User Login**.

Note

If requested, select "Security Level" from the given features in the pull-down menu.

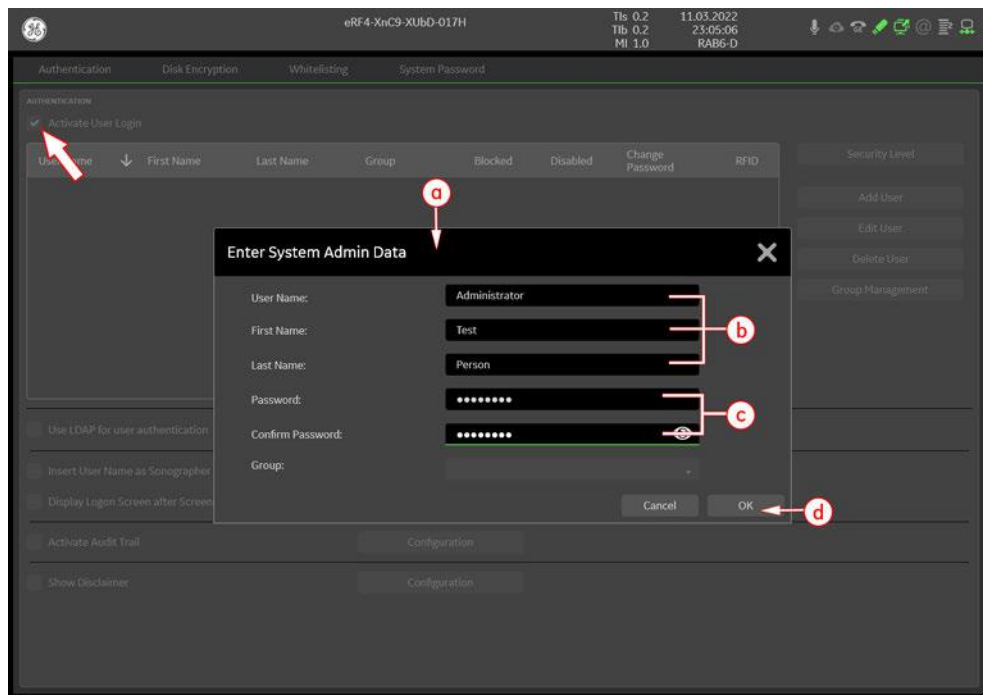


Figure 3-56: System Setup - Security - Authentication

- a. The **Enter System Admin Data** dialog appears.
- b. Enter the **User Name**, the **First Name** and the **Last Name**.
- c. Enter a **Password** and **Confirm Password**.

Note

Restrictions for a valid password depend on **Security Level** setting.

- d. Confirm with **OK** to save User Login Authentication.

4. Close the Service page with **Save&Exit** and restart the system.

The "System Login" window appears as soon as the system is started or a current user logs off.

The correct User Name and Password has to be entered to login. If the correct password/user name combination is entered, it is also possible to change the password.

Note

If you have assigned a RFID Card for Log-on authentication (optional RFID Log-on reader required) just hold your card to the card reader.

The **Emergency** button enables emergency mode with restricted access.

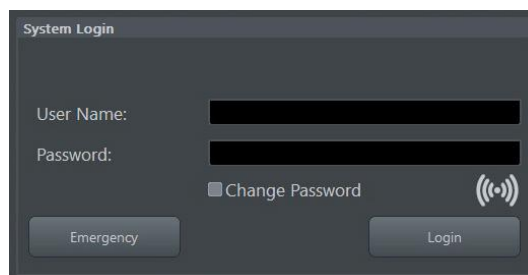


Figure 3-57: System Login

Note

For further details refer to the Voluson Expert Series Instructions for Use.

3.7.5.17.1 How to assign a RFID Card for Login Authentication

Note Assigning a RFID Card for Login Authentication is only possible if the optional RFID Log-on reader is connected.

1. Invoke System Setup as described in [Section 3.7.5.1 on page 3-51](#).
2. Select **Security** and then click the **Authentication** tab.
3. Select a User Name (a).
4. Click **Edit User**. A dialog appears (b).
5. Now click **Assign RFID Card** (c).

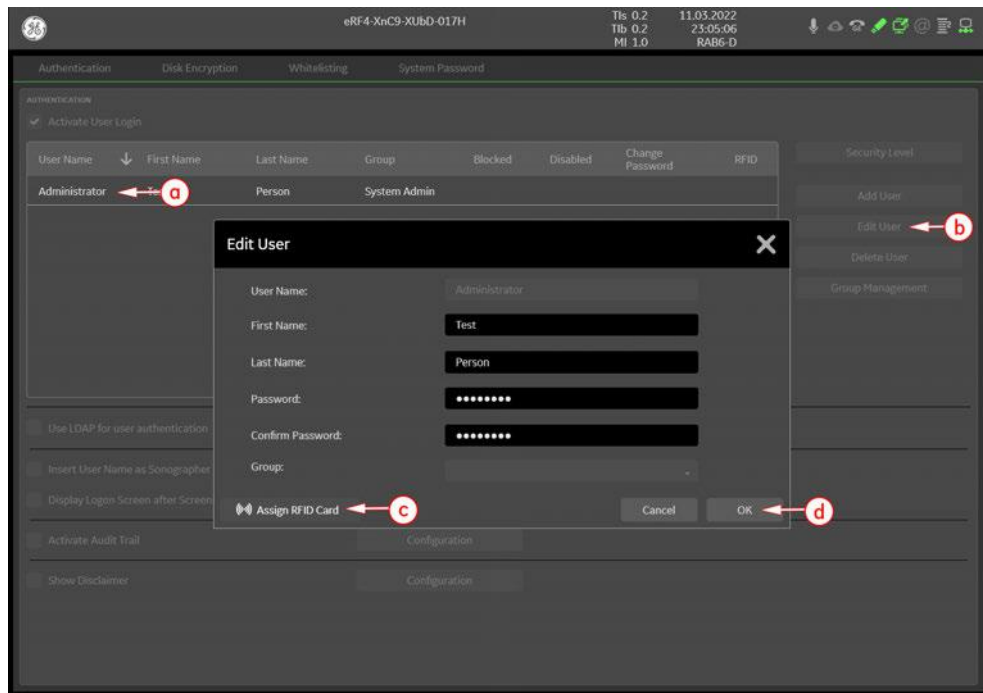


Figure 3-58: System Setup - Security - Authentication - Edit User

6. Hold the card to the card reader and click **Scan**.
7. The card will be assigned (a short "Peep" is audible). Click **OK**.
8. Confirm with **OK (d)** to save User Login Authentication.
9. Close the Service page with **Save&Exit** and restart the system.

The "System Login" window appears as soon as the system is started or a current user logs off.

Note To modify or remove a card from a user, enter the "Edit User" window again.

3.7.5.18 How to perform Disk Encryption

Disk Encryption enables an encryption to secure all Patient Data, Patient Images and corresponding measurements.

Caution



Without the Encryption Password, the Recovery Key or USB device with unlock key it will not be possible to access the Ultrasound device including emergency mode, scanning, patient information, images, or local archive. GE has no access to this information or the ability to undo encryption in the event that the Encryption Password and Recovery Key are lost. The security and safety of the Encryption Password and Recovery Key is solely the user's responsibility.

Note Disk Encryption is an option and might not be available in all countries. If the option is not set, the tab **Disk Encryption** is not available in System Setup - Security.

Content in this chapter

3.7.5.18.1 Disk Encryption Workflow	3-60
3.7.5.18.2 Unlock an encrypted Disk	3-61
3.7.5.18.3 Decrypt Disk	3-61

3.7.5.18.1 Disk Encryption Workflow

1. Invoke System Setup as described in [Section 3.7.5.1 on page 3-51](#).
2. On the left side of the screen select **Security** and then click the **Disk Encryption** tab.
3. Start Encryption.

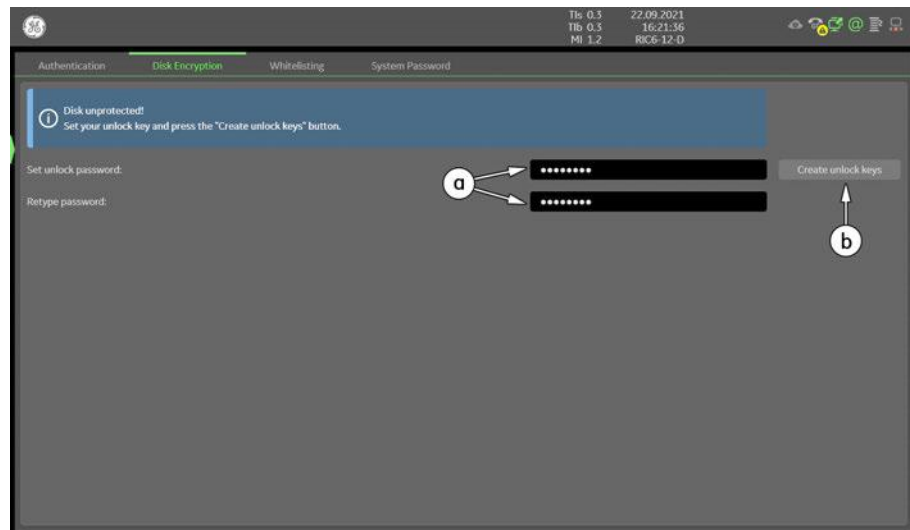


Figure 3-59: System Setup - Security - Disk Encryption

- a. **Set unlock password** and **Retype password**.

Note

The entered password is not visible and has a minimum of 8 characters.

- b. Click **Create unlock keys**.

Identifier and Recovery key as well as an USB unlock key is automatically created by the system.

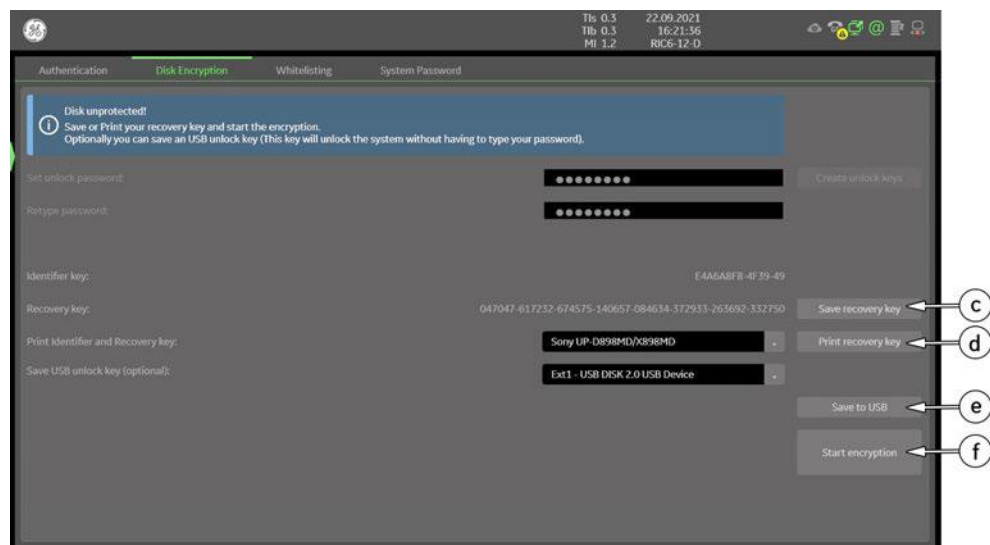


Figure 3-60: System Setup - Security - Disk Encryption

- c. **Save recovery key** to an external or network device.
- d. Choose connected printer from the pull-down menu and click **Print recovery key**.
- e. If desired, click the **Save to USB** button to save the USB unlock key to a connected USB device.
- f. Click the **Start encryption** button.

Note

Encryption process of patient data will take a considerable amount of time (one to several hours). Normal scanning can be performed without limitations.

- g. Confirm the dialogs with **Yes** and **OK** to start encryption.

A progress bar is displayed during disk encryption process.



Make sure Password, Recovery Key and USB unlock key are kept secret and safe. Without these you will not be able to unlock your Voluson.

3.7.5.18.2 Unlock an encrypted Disk

If patient data stored on the internal HDDs D:\ partition are encrypted (protected), following dialog window appears as soon as the system is started.

Figure 3-61: unlock screen at encrypted disk

The system has to be unlocked by one of the following possibilities:

- Enter the previously defined user **Password** (minimum of 8 characters) and click **Unlock**.
- Click the **Recovery key** button, enter the key into the displayed dialog and click **Unlock**.
- Connect the **USB device with unlock key** and click **Unlock**.



If the USB device with unlock key is connected to your Voluson Expert Series, the system is automatically unlocked during boot up.

3.7.5.18.3 Decrypt Disk

1. Invoke System Setup as described in [Section 3.7.5.1 on page 3-51](#).
2. Select **Administration** and then click the **Service** tab.
3. Enter the password « she » and click **Accept**.
4. Click the **Decrypt Disk** button.

Note *Security of patient data on the system will be reduced when encryption is turned off. Decryption will take a considerable amount of time (one to several hours).*

5. Confirm the dialogs with **Yes** and **OK** to start encryption.

A progress bar is displayed during decryption process.

Note *The system should not be used while decryption process is ongoing.*

3.7.5.19 How to protect the system by Whitelisting

Note *Whitelisting is an option and might not be available in all countries. If the option "Advanced Security Features" is not set, the tab **Whitelisting** is not available in System Setup - Security.*

1. Invoke System Setup as described in [Section 3.7.5.1 on page 3-51](#).
2. On the left side of the screen select **Security** and then click the **Whitelisting** tab.



Figure 3-62: System Setup - Security - Whitelisting

3. Enter **Password** and **Verify Password**.

Note *The entered password is not visible and has a minimum of 8 characters.*

4. Click **Activate**.
5. Close the Service page with **Save&Exit** and restart the system.

3.7.5.20 How to change the System Password

Note *"System Password" is the password for the Windows Operating system. This password is not needed for users and usage of the Voluson Expert Series system. DO NOT change this password unless you are the system administrator.*

1. Invoke System Setup as described in [Section 3.7.5.1 on page 3-51](#).
2. On the left side of the screen select **Security** and then click the **System Password** tab.

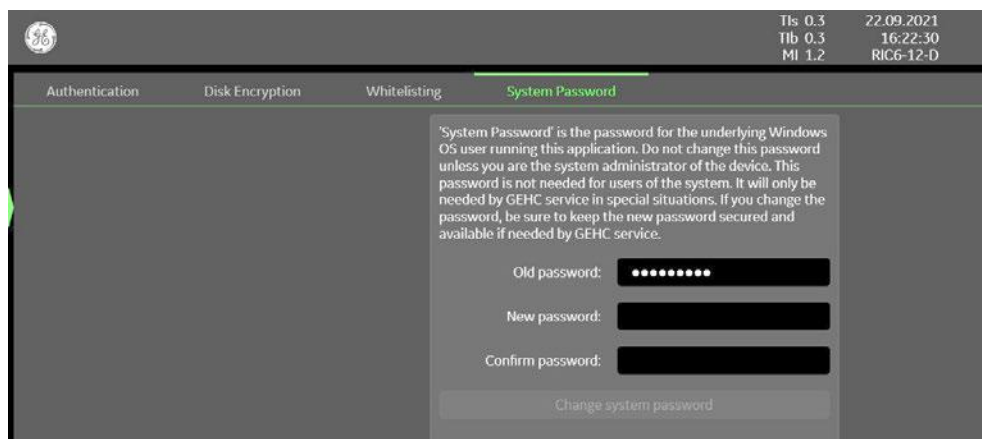


Figure 3-63: System Setup - Security - System Password

3. Enter the current password in the **Old Password** field (if the current password is the predefined system password, it is entered by the system automatically).
4. Enter **New password** and **Confirm password**.

Note *The entered password has a minimum of 6 characters.*

5. Click **Change system password**.
6. Close the Service page with **Save&Exit** and restart the system.

3.7.6 Monitor Settings



1. Select the **Home** button at the Left Toolbar.
2. In the Home" menu touch the **Monitor Settings** button.
3. Select adequate/desired color setting for local room conditions.
4. Touch the Cold color setting **Semi Dark Room** button to load default monitor settings for your system.

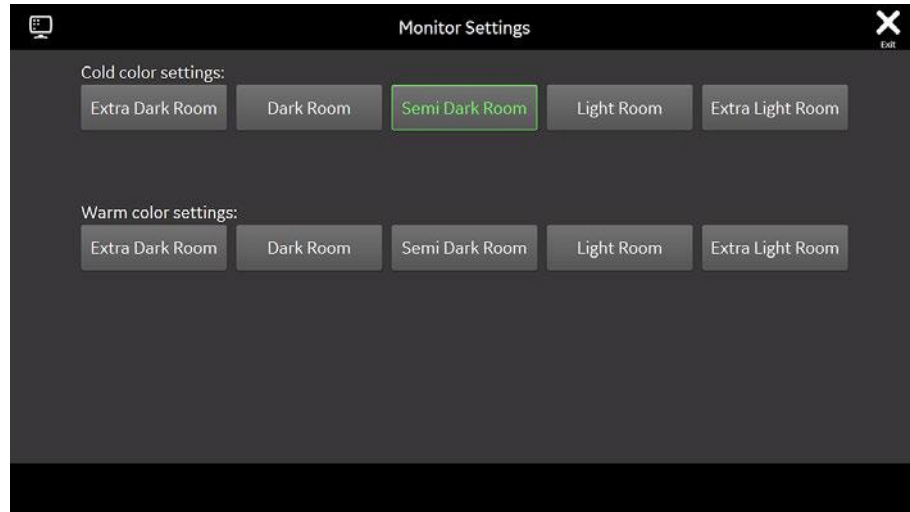


Figure 3-64: Monitor Settings

3.7.7 Color and Light Personalization



1. Select the **Home** button at the Left Toolbar.
2. In the Home" menu touch the **Color & Light Personalization** button.
3. In the "Color and Light Personalization" menu select adequate/desired colors and brightness for **Ambient**, **Operating Panel** and **UI Theme**.



Figure 3-65: Color and Light Personalization (e.g., Ambient)

3.7.8 Shortcuts



1. Select the **Shortcuts** button at the Right Toolbar.
2. Touch the desired "Shortcut" button.



Figure 3-66: Shortcuts

Table 3-5: list of shortcuts + description what they do

Button	Description
Export system state (Alt +D)	Configuration Backup and dump files are exported to D:\ConfigurationBackup
Presets Save	save current user presets
Save Logfile Snapshot	max. 2 Logfiles + screenshot of Monitor & Touch are stored on the D:\export folder as a *.zip file
Save Screens to HDD	saves the image as *.jpg to the D:\export folder on the internal HDD
Save Screens to USB	saves the image as *.png to the automatically generated "Voluson" folder on the last connected external USB drive
Start Presentation Mode	starts presentation mode

3.8 On-board optional Peripherals

Note Some peripheral devices (hardware options) may not be available and/or approved in all countries. Please contact Sales & Marketing in your region for information on availability.



Caution

There is an increased risk of electric shock due to increased leakage current when connecting devices not explicitly recognized by the system manufacturer GE Healthcare Austria GmbH & Co OG to the Voluson Expert Series ultrasound system.

Table 3-6: Approved Peripherals

Device	Manufacturer	Model	Connection	Comment
Digital B/W Printer, 12 Volt DC	SONY	UP-D898DC	12V DC port	Table 9-10
Digital Color Printer ²	SONY	UP-D25MD	Wireless	Table 9-10
Wireless Kit for Color Printer	SONY	UPA-WU10R	USB-Port	Table 9-10
Color Laser Printer (Network)	Hewlett Packard (HP)	HP LaserJet M454dw	Ethernet LAN or USB-Port or Wi-Fi Direct	Table 9-10
ECG Module (ECG-USB1)	NORAV	1200 Series, ECGUSB1DEX	USB Type-C Port	Table 9-11
Wireless Adapter (WLAN)	Netgear	A6210	USB-Port	Table 9-11
Barcode Scanner	Honeywell	Eclipse 5145	USB-Port	Table 9-11
Magnetic Network Adapter	Solers	-	Ethernet LAN	Table 9-11
External Keyboard (alphanumeric)	Active Key (AK)	AK-C4110	USB-Port	Table 9-11
Foot Switch	Whanam	FSU3000G	USB-Port	Table 9-11
Gel Warmer	-	-	-	Table 9-11
RFID Log-on reader	-	-	USB Type-C Port	Table 9-11
Isolation Transformer	Noratel	IMED, 300WR 3 rd Edition	-	Table 9-11
UPS (Uninterruptible Power Supply)	Tripp Lite	SMART1200XLHG ³	-	Table 9-11
		SMX1200XLHG ⁴	-	
Power Filter	TNC	-	-	Table 9-11
Wireless Display	BenQ	InstaShow™ WDC10	HDMI and USB-Port	Table 9-11
32" Secondary Patient Monitor (USA and EU)	NEC	MultiSync V323	HDMI / VGA	Table 9-11

² requires Wireless Kit for Color Printer

³ for 100-130V AC countries

⁴ for 220-240V AC countries

3.9 External I/O Connectors

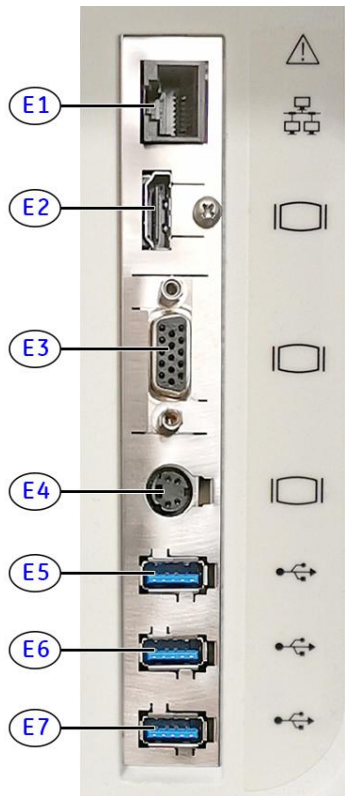


Figure 3-67: External I/O connectors - on rear of system

Item	Connector Name	Table Number	Description
E1	Network (LAN)	Table 3-9	DICOM input/output, twisted pair RJ45 1 Gbit/s
E2	HDMI OUT	Table 3-7	Connector for external monitor
E3	VGA OUT	Table 3-8	Connector for external monitor
E4	S-Video OUT	Table 3-12	S-Video OUT connector, PAL/NTSC (depending on system setup)
E5-E7	USB-A	Table 3-11	3x USB-A 3.0 port

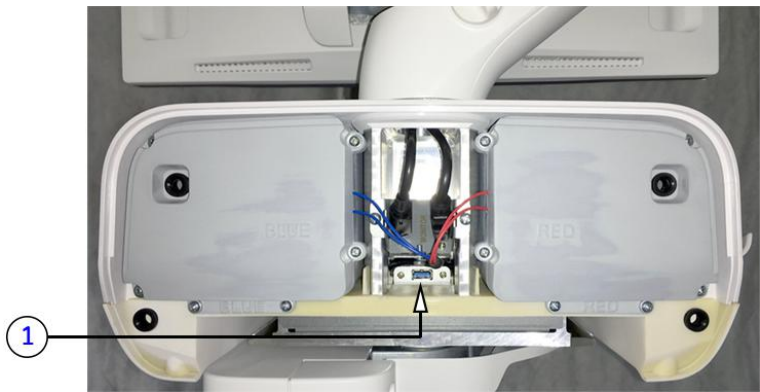


Figure 3-68: External I/O connectors - behind Rear Cover Top

Item	Connector Name	Table Number	Description
3	USB-A	Table 3-11	USB-A 2.0 port intended for optional WLAN Adapter



Figure 3-69: External I/O connectors - back and left/right side of the console

Item	Connector Name	Table Number	Description
1	USB-C	Table 3-10	USB-C 2.0 port intended for optional RFID Log-on reader (Radio-frequency Identification)
2	USB-C	Table 3-10	USB-C 2.0 port intended for optional Respond Probe Holder (automatic probe activation) on the right
3	USB-C	Table 3-10	2x USB-C 3.0 port (back side of the Touch panel) intended for optional ECG module
4	USB-A	Table 3-11	2x USB-A 3.0 port (left side of the Touch panel)
5	Power	-	connector intended for optional Gel Warmer
6	USB-C	Table 3-10	USB-C 2.0 port intended for optional Respond Probe Holder (automatic probe activation) on the left
7	USB-C	Table 3-10	USB-C 2.0 port intended for optional peripheral devices

3.9.1 External I/O Pin Outs

Table 3-7: HDMI OUT connector

Pin No	Signal	Pin No	Signal
1	TDMS Data2+	11	TMDS Clock Shield
2	TDMS Data2 Shield	12	TMDS Clock-
3	TDMS Data2-	13	CEC
4	TDMS Data1+	14	Reserved/HEC Data-
5	TDMS Data1 Shield	15	SCL (Serial Clock for DDC)
6	TMDS Data1-	16	SDA (Serial Data Line for DDC)
7	TMDS Data0+	17	DDC/HEC/CEC Ground
8	TMDS Data0 Shield	18	+5V Power
9	TDMS Data0-	19	Hot Plug Detect/HEC Data+
10	TMDS Clock+		

Table 3-8: VGA OUT connector, Sub-D (15 pin)

Pin No	Output Signal	Description
1	VGA OUT1 R	Red
2	VGA OUT1 G	Green
3	VGA OUT1 B	Blue
4, 9, 11, 12, 15	N/C	N/C
5, 6, 7, 8, 10	GND	GND
13	VGA OUT1 HS	H Sync
14	VGA OUT1 VS	V Sync

Table 3-9: Network connector, RJ45 Modular (8 pin)

Pin No	Output Signal	Description
1	ETHER TD	Ethernet RD +
2	ETHER TD	Ethernet RD -
3	ETHER RD	Ethernet TD +
6	ETHER RD	Ethernet TD -
others	NC	no connection

Table 3-10: USB Type-C connectors

A1	A2	A3	A4	A5	A6	A7	A8	A9	A10	A11	A12
GND	TX1+	TX1-	VBUS	CC1	D+	D-	SBU1	VBUS	RX2-	RX2+	GND
GND	RX1+	RX1-	VBUS	SBU2	D-	D+	CC2	VBUS	TX2-	TX2+	GND
B12	B11	B10	B9	B8	B7	B6	B5	B4	B3	B2	B1

	Cable Ground
	High Speed Data Path (TX for USB 3.1)
	Cable Bus Power
	Configuration Channel
	USB 2.0 Interface
	Secondary Bus
	High Speed Data Path (RX for USB 3.1)

Table 3-11: USB 3.0 connectors

Pin No	Output Signal	Description
1	VBus	+5V Power
2	USB D-	USB 2.0 Data (-)
3	USB D+	USB 2.0 Data (+)
4	GND	Ground for power return
5	StdA_SSRX-	SuperSpeed receiver
6	StdA_SSRX+	SuperSpeed receiver
7	GND_DRAIN	Ground for signal return
8	StdA_SSTX-	SuperSpeed transmitter
9	StdA_SSTX+	SuperSpeed transmitter

Table 3-12: S-Video OUT connector (4 pin)

Pin No	Output Signal	Description
1	SVIDEO OUT/IN YG	Y (Luma) GND
2	SVIDEO OUT/IN CG	C (Chroma) GND
3	SVIDEO OUT/IN Y	Y (Luma) Signal
4	SVIDEO OUT/IN C	C (Chroma) Signal

Table 3-13: Monitor Power connector (16 pin)

Pin No	Description
2, 3, 7, 10, 15	12V
1, 5, 8, 9, 11, 16	GND
6 / 14	USB 1- / USB 1+
4, 12, 13	NC (no connection)

Table 3-14: DVI OUT connector

Pin No	Description	Pin No	Description
1	TDMS data 2-	13	TDMS data 3+
2	TDMS data 2+	14	+5 Volt
3	TDMS data 2, 4 shielding	15	ground for +5 Volt
4	TDMS data 4-	16	Hotplug-Detect
5	TDMS data 4+	17	TDMS data 0-
6	DDC clock	18	TDMS data 0+
7	DDC data	19	TDMS data 0, 5 shielding
8	Analog: V-Sync	20	TDMS data 5-
9	TDMS data 1-	21	TDMS data 5+
10	TDMS data 1+	22	TDMS meter shielding
11	TDMS data 1, 3 shielding	23	TDMS clock +
12	TDMS data 3-	24	TDMS clock -

3.9.2 Video Specification

Video specifications may be needed to be able to connect laser cameras or other devices to the Voluson Expert Series system.

DVI-D/VGA-connector:

- visible resolution ... 1280 x 1024
- screen refresh rate ... 60Hz

S-Video connector:

- Type: separate Video (Y/C)
- Video modes: PAL (50Hz), NTSC (60Hz)

3.9.3 External Cables - Maximum Lengths

Table below shows maximum permitted cable length of external cables, according to IEC60601-1-2.

Table 3-15: maximum cable lengths

Description	Maximum Cable Length	Type
Probe cable	2.5 m	shielded
USB cable (port 2.0)	5 m	shielded; USB2.0 or higher
USB cable (port 3.0)	2m	shielded; USB3.0 or higher
USB cable (type C)	2m	shielded; USB3.1 or higher
LAN cable	80 m	shielded; Cat5e or higher
VGA cable	15 m	shielded
S-Video cable	5 m	shielded
ECG cable	4 m	shielded
Power cable	4 m	unshielded
PE cable	10 m	unshielded

3.10 Available Probes

See [Section 9.13 "Probes" on page 9-36](#), for part numbers to be used when ordering new or replacement service probes.

3.11 Software/Option Configuration

For description refer to:

- [Section 3.7.5 "System Setup" on page 3-50](#)

Note

For further details refer to the *Voluson Expert Series Instructions for Use*.

3.12 Connectivity Setup

The Voluson Expert Series ultrasound system can be connected to various connectivity devices. The following sections describe how to connect the system to a remote archive/work station or a DICOM service, using a TCP/IP connection.

3.12.1 Connectivity Introduction

This section describes communication and connection options between the Voluson Expert Series ultrasound system and other devices in the hospital information system.

The following scenarios are covered:

- stand-alone Voluson Expert Series system; see [Section 3.12.1.3 on page 3-73](#).
- Voluson Expert Series and one or several PC workstations - with Software 4D View installed - within a "Sneaker Net" environment. ("Sneaker Net" means that you use a DVD/CD to move data because no network is available); see [Section 3.12.1.4 on page 3-73](#).
- Voluson Expert Series and DICOM server in a network; see [Section 3.12.1.5 on page 3-73](#).

3.12.1.1 Dataflow Concept

Communication between the Voluson Expert Series ultrasound system and other information providers on the network takes the form of data flows. Each dataflow defines the transfer of patient information from either an input source to the system, or from the system to an output source (see examples in [Section 3.12.1.2 on page 3-72](#)).

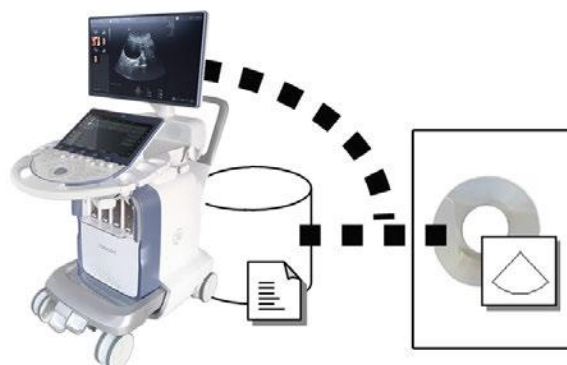
Patient information can include demographic data and images, as well as reports and Measurement and Analysis (M&A) data. A dataflow is a set of pre-configured services. Selecting a dataflow will automatically customize the ultrasound system to work according to the services associated with this dataflow.

By utilizing data flows, the user can configure the Voluson Expert Series ultrasound system to optimally meet the needs of the facility, while keeping the user interface unchanged. Once the dataflow is selected, the actual location of the database is entirely transparent.

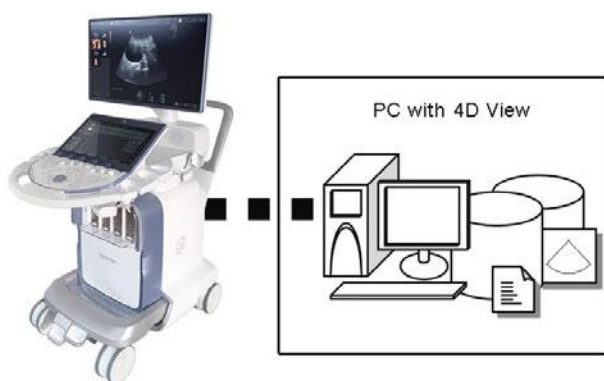
3.12.1.2 Dataflow Examples



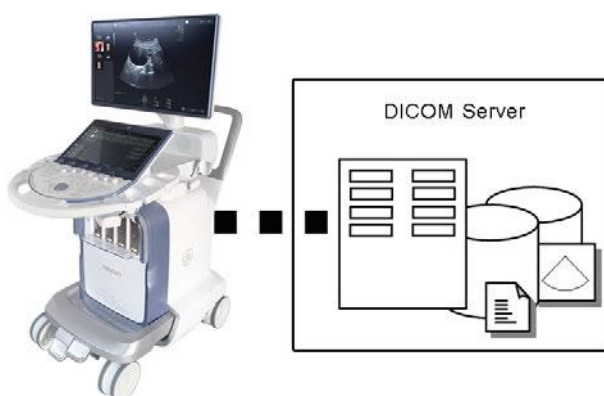
The local database is used for patient archiving. Images are stored to internal hard drive.



The local database is used for patient archiving. Afterwards images are stored to a DVD/CD or external USB device, etc.



A remote database is used for patient archiving. Images are also stored to a remote archive.



Search in the DICOM Modality Worklist, the patient found is copied into local database. The patient information and the examination results are stored to the local database. Images are stored to a DICOM server and to an image network volume on the local hard drive.

3.12.1.3 Stand-alone Voluson Expert Series

If digital images or 3D/4D data sets are stored, they should be saved in the Archive (Image Management System software).

Note *For further details refer to the Voluson Expert Series Instructions for Use.*

Note *To avoid loss of essential data, it is highly recommended to **export/backup patient data** as well as measurements **at least once a month**.*

Physical Connection:

No network connection needed.

3.12.1.4 Voluson Expert Series + PC (with 4D View Software) within a "Sneaker Net"

A PC (one or several with 4D View software installed) is used for review and work on studies acquired on one or more Voluson Expert Series system without being connected in a network.

The images are first stored on the Voluson Expert Series system's hard drive (Archive) and then exported from the system's hard drive to a sneaker device (e.g., DVD/CD), and finally imported from the sneaker device to the "4D View" PC's internal hard drive.

Note *For further details refer to the Voluson Expert Series Instructions for Use.*

Note *To avoid loss of essential data, it is highly recommended to **export/backup patient data** as well as measurements **at least once a month**.*

Physical Connection:

No network connection needed.

3.12.1.5 Connection between Voluson Expert Series and DICOM Server

In this configuration, the Voluson Expert Series is configured to work with a DICOM server in a network environment. Usually, this will be the hospital network. Images are first saved on the local image buffer on the system. At the end of the examination, the images are sent to the DICOM server via a DICOM spooler. This scenario requires that the system is configured to be connected to the DICOM server.

Physical Connection:

You will need one network cable.

1. Connect one end of the cable to the Ethernet connector on the Voluson Expert Series.
2. Connect the other end of the cable to the wall outlet.

Note *If a Peer-to-Peer Network is connected to the hospital's network, you may connect the Voluson Expert Series to the Peer-to-Peer Network.*

Note *For further details refer to the Voluson Expert Series Instructions for Use.*

3.13 Network Configuration

Content in this chapter

<i>3.13.1 TCP/IP Configuration</i>	<i>3-74</i>
<i>3.13.2 WLAN Configuration</i>	<i>3-75</i>
<i>3.13.3 How to Setup E-mail</i>	<i>3-79</i>
<i>3.13.4 How to enter Patient's Email address and Phone number in the PID screen</i>	<i>3-80</i>
<i>3.13.5 Map Network Drive</i>	<i>3-81</i>
<i>3.13.6 RSVP Agent Configuration</i>	<i>3-82</i>

3.13.1 TCP/IP Configuration

Note

Following information must be provided by the customer or hospital engineer before you can start: Station name, AE Title, IP address and Port Number for the Voluson Expert Series. The IP addresses for the default gateway and other routers at the site for ROUTING INFORMATION. Only if necessary (e.g., for Internet access).

1. Select the **Home** button at the Left Toolbar.
2. In the "Home" menu touch the **System Setup** button to invoke the setup desktop on the screen.
3. Select **Connectivity** and then click the **Device Setup** tab.
4. Click the button, read the message and confirm with **Yes**.

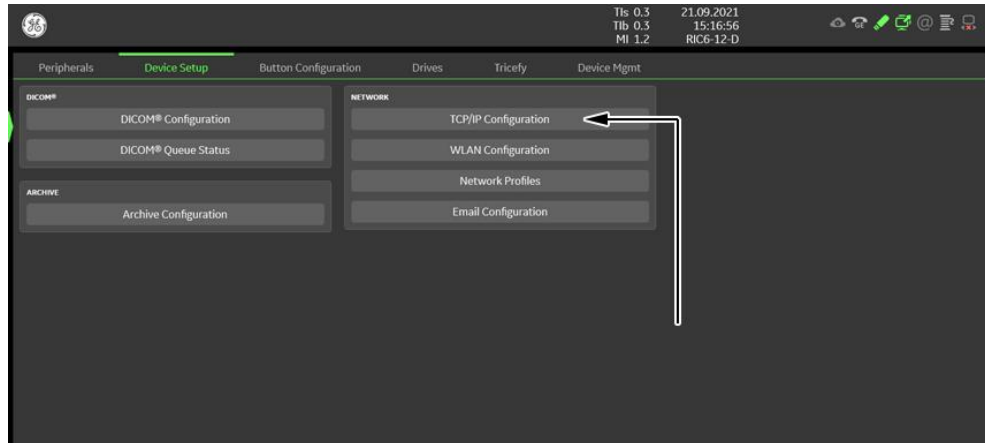


Figure 3-70: Configuration

5. The "Internet Protocol (TCP/IP) Properties" dialog page appears.

Note

This example shows fictional numbers!

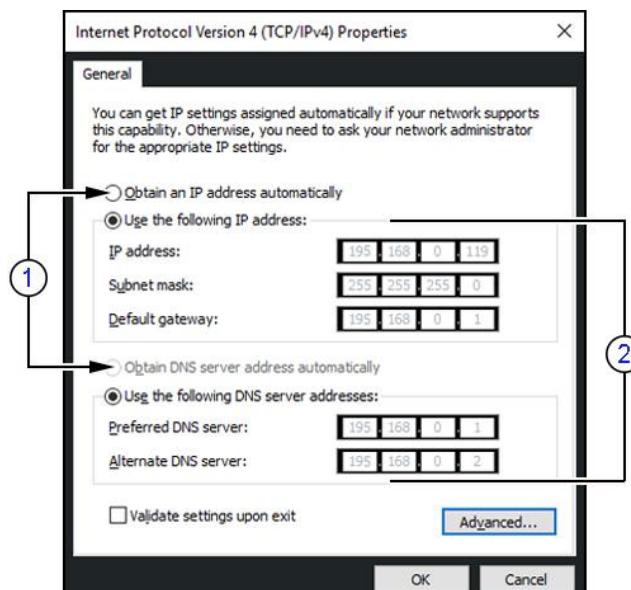


Figure 3-71: Internet Protocol (TCP/IP)

- 1 You can get IP and DNS settings assigned automatically if your network supports this capability.
- 2 If fixed IP address is required, ask your network administrator for the appropriate settings.
Type in:
 - IP address
 - Subnet mask
 - Default gateway
 - DNS server

Note

For further details refer to the Voluson Expert Series Instructions for Use.

3.13.2 WLAN Configuration

Note To configure the Voluson Expert Series system to work with WLAN, the **hospital's network administrator must provide the required information**.



For fast access to the WLAN Configuration screen (see [Figure 3-72 on page 3-75](#)) hover the cursor over the  WLAN symbol at the right top of the display screen and then press **Set** (left or right trackball key). In the displayed window select **Setup**.

Content in this chapter

3.13.2.1 Connecting to the WLAN	3-75
3.13.2.2 WLAN Network using fixed TCP/IP	3-76
3.13.2.3 Disconnecting from WLAN	3-77
3.13.2.4 Restart a WLAN Network	3-77
3.13.2.5 Edit an existing WLAN Network	3-77
3.13.2.6 Add new WLAN Network	3-78
3.13.2.7 Removing a WLAN Network	3-78

3.13.2.1 Connecting to the WLAN

1. Connect the Wireless Network adapter as described in [Section 3.5.7 on page 3-23](#).
2. Select the **Home** button at the Left Toolbar.
3. In the "Home" menu touch the **System Setup** button to invoke the setup desktop on the screen.
4. Select **Connectivity** and then click the **Device Setup** tab.
5. Click the **WLAN Configuration** button.
6. The WLAN Configuration screen with available networks appears.

Note If no networks are available, check the WLAN button (a) which needs to show Off. Wait about one minute for pairing. If still no networks available, click on **Scan** (b).

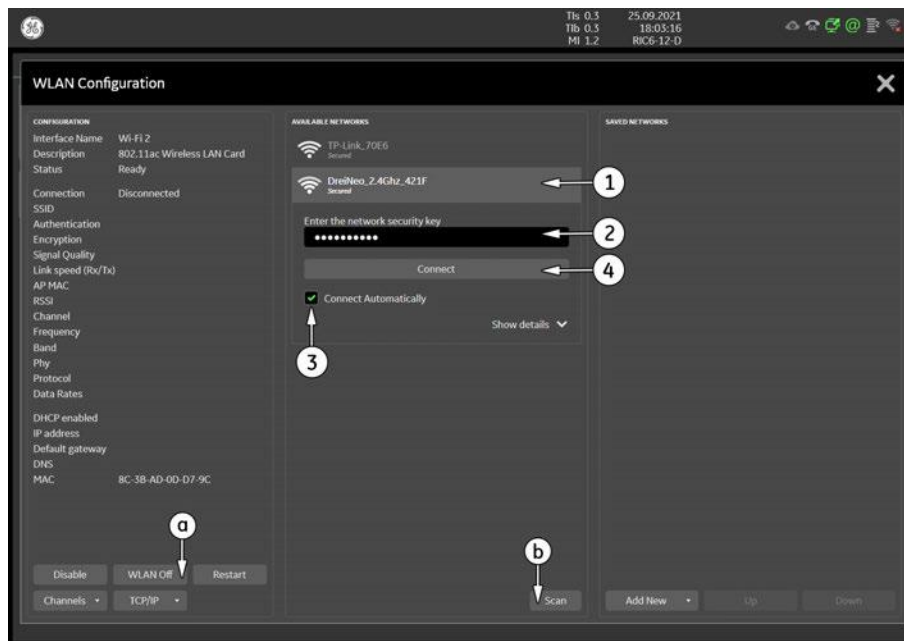


Figure 3-72: Wireless Networks - Connect

7. Highlight the wireless network you want to use (1), **Enter the network security key** (2), check mark "Connect Automatically" (3) and then click **Connect** (4).

Note If WLAN connection fails, edit network properties as described in [Section 3.13.2.5 "Edit an existing WLAN Network" on page 3-77](#).

3.13.2.2 WLAN Network using fixed TCP/IP

Note *If fixed IP address is required, ask your network administrator for appropriate settings.*

1. Select the **Home** button at the Left Toolbar.
2. In the "Home" menu touch the **System Setup** button to invoke the setup desktop on the screen.
3. Select **Connectivity** and then click the **Device Setup** tab.
4. Click the **WLAN Configuration** button.
5. The WLAN Configuration screen with available networks appear.
6. Highlight proper wireless network (1) and then click **TCP/IP** (2).

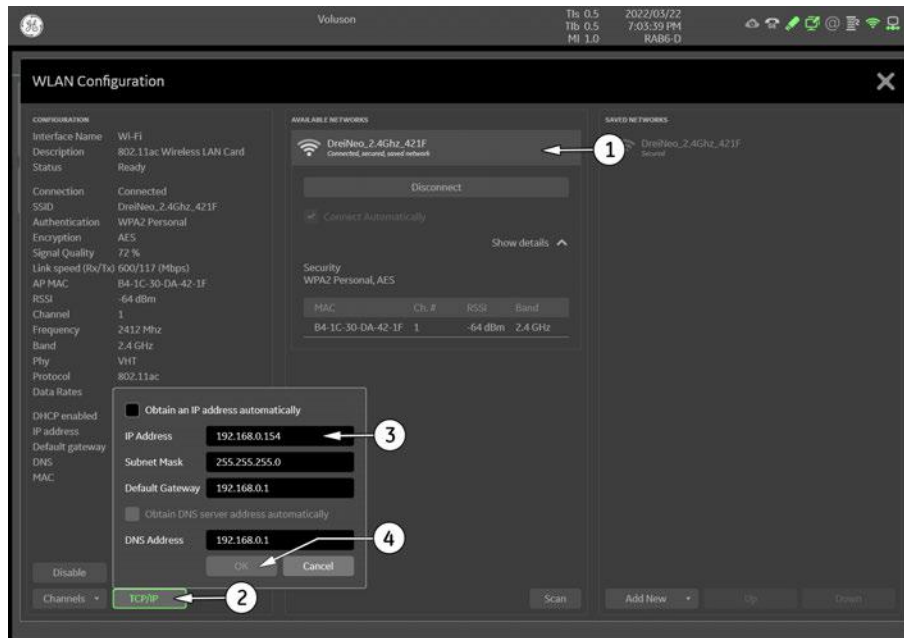


Figure 3-73: Wireless Networks - TCP/IP

7. Type appropriate settings into the displayed dialog window (3).
 - IP Address
 - Subnet Mask
 - Default Gateway
 - DNS Address
8. After you have filled in all the required information, click **OK** (4).

Note *If automatic assingment is desired, check **Obtain an IP address automatically**.*

3.13.2.3 Disconnecting from WLAN

1. Hover the cursor over the  WLAN symbol at the right top of the display screen and then press **Set** (left or right trackball key).
2. Select **Disconnect**.

Note *Disconnecting from WLAN is also possible in the Home - System Setup - Connectivity - Device Setup - WLAN Configuration screen.*

3.13.2.4 Restart a WLAN Network

1. Select the **Home** button at the Left Toolbar.
2. Select **Connectivity** and then click the **Device Setup** tab.
3. Click the **WLAN Configuration** button.
4. The WLAN Configuration screen with available Networks appears.
5. Select network and then click **Restart**.

3.13.2.5 Edit an existing WLAN Network

1. Select the **Home** button at the Left Toolbar.
2. Select **Connectivity** and then click the **Device Setup** tab.
3. Click the **WLAN Configuration** button.
4. The WLAN Configuration screen with available networks appear.
5. Select network to be customized and then click **Edit**.

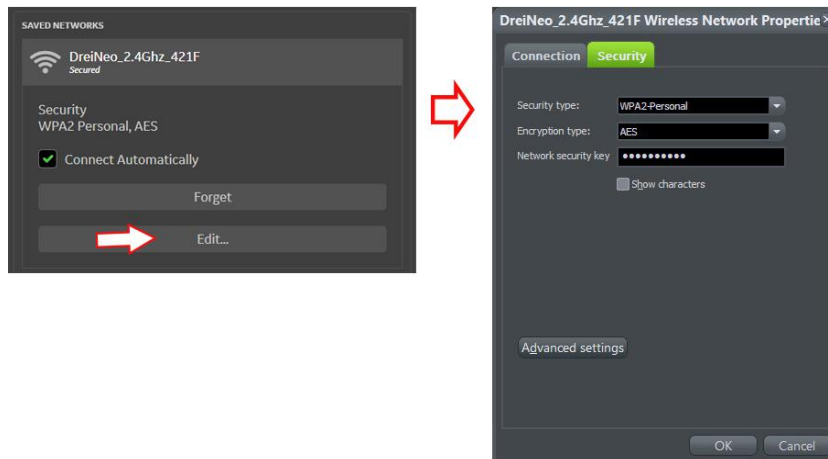


Figure 3-74: Edit Network

6. Customize the following information:
 - **Connection**
 - * Check mark desired connection behavior(s)
 - **Security**
 - * Security type
 - * Encryption type
 - * Network security key
 - **Advances settings**
7. After you have filled in all the required information, click **OK**.

3.13.2.6 Add new WLAN Network

1. Select the **Home** button at the Left Toolbar.
2. Select **Connectivity** and then click the **Device Setup** tab.
3. Click the **WLAN Configuration** button.
4. The WLAN Configuration screen with available networks appear.
5. Select **Add New** at the right bottom of the display screen.

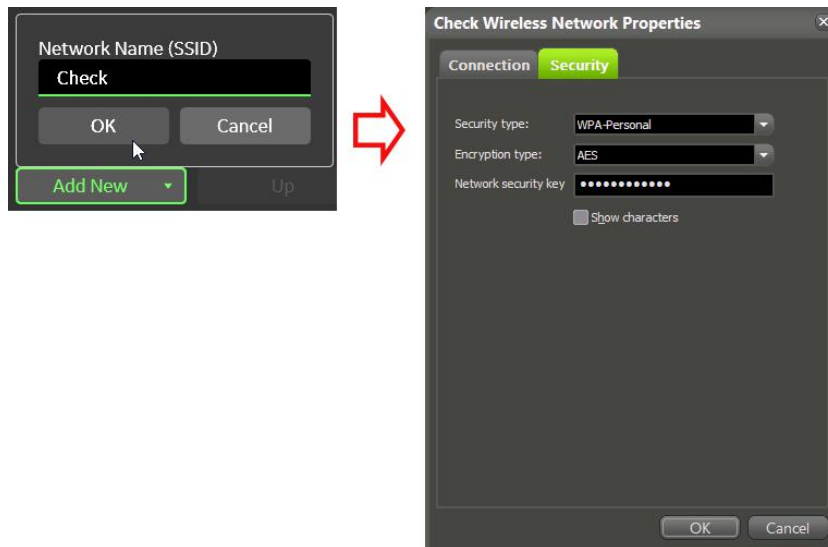


Figure 3-75: Add New Network

6. Enter a **Network Name (SSID)** and then click **OK**.
7. Add the following information to the Wireless Network Properties page:
 - **Connection**
 - * Check mark "Connect even if the network is not broadcasting its name"
 - **Security**
 - * Security type
 - * Encryption type
 - * Network security key
8. After you have filled in all the required information, click **OK**.

3.13.2.7 Removing a WLAN Network

1. Select the **Home** button at the Left Toolbar.
2. Select **Connectivity** and then click the **Device Setup** tab.
3. Click the **WLAN Configuration** button.
4. The WLAN Configuration screen with available Networks appears.
5. Select network to be removed and then click **Forget**.

3.13.3 How to Setup E-mail

If Internet access is available via LAN or Wi-Fi, it is possible to send images/cines via E-Mail to patients or physicians.

Necessary information provided by the E-mail provider (SMTP settings)

To enable E-mail, the SMTP (Simple Mail Transfer Protocol) settings from your provider are needed.

Note *The Voluson Expert Series is only supporting E-mail send; no e-mail receive is possible. To receive E-mails, the same E-mail account needs to be installed on an Office-PC.*

SMTP server name (Outgoing Messages)	e.g., smtp.gmail.com
SMTP port (Outgoing Messages)	e.g., 465
SMTP Connection security (Outgoing Messages)	e.g., TLS

Note *Maybe the information above needs to be searched in the Internet from your e-mail provider and is the same for all e-mail users.*

Email Configuration

1. Select the **Home** button at the Left Toolbar.
2. In the "Home" menu touch the **System Setup** button to invoke the setup desktop on the screen.
3. Select **Connectivity** and then click the **Device Setup** tab.
4. Click the **Email Configuration** button; see [Figure 3-70 on page 3-74](#).

The Email Configuration screen appears.

Figure 3-76: Email Configuration

5. Enter *Your name* and *Email Address* in the Identity group. As an option you can enter a different *Reply to Address* and *Signature Text*.
6. To verify E-mail configuration click on **Send Test Email**. An E-mail is sent to the entered E-mail address followed by a message box where either a success message or an error message is shown.
7. Store your configuration with click on **OK**.
8. Individually enter Patient's Email address and Phone number in the PID screen and adjust Email option as described in [Section 3.13.4 on page 3-80](#).

3.13.4 How to enter Patient's Email address and Phone number in the PID screen

1. Enter the "Patient ID" screen by pressing the **Patient ID** key on the control console.
2. Click the **Contact Data** icon (1).

The Patient's Email address and Phone number window appear.

The screenshot shows the 'Patient ID' screen with a 'Contact Data' dialog box open. The dialog box has a title bar with a close button. Inside, there are fields for 'Patient Name' (Musterfrau Susi), 'Email address' (susi.musterfrau@gmail.com), and 'Phone number' (004969913800000). Below these are 'Email send mode' (Anonymized), 'Send as' (JPG), 'Size' (Original), and 'Quality' (High). There is a checkbox for 'Save Cine SE + ES'. At the bottom are buttons for 'Set as default', 'Cancel', and 'OK'. Numbered callouts 1, 2, and 3 point to the 'Contact Data' icon, the 'Phone number' field, and the 'OK' button respectively.

Figure 3-77: Patient ID screen

3. Enter patient's information and adjust Email Options (2).
4. Store your configuration with click on **OK** (3).

Note

Since the E-mail service provider is maybe not located in the same area as your receptions, you need to add the area code (e.g., +49 or 0049 for Germany) to the used phone numbers in the Patient's E-mail address and Phone number dialog.

Example: local phone number 069913800000 is **+49** 69913800000 or **0049** 69913800000 for Germany

3.13.5 Map Network Drive

1. Select the **Home** button at the Left Toolbar.
2. In the “Home” menu touch the **System Setup** button to invoke the setup desktop on the screen.
3. On the side of the screen select **Connectivity** and then click the **Drives** tab.

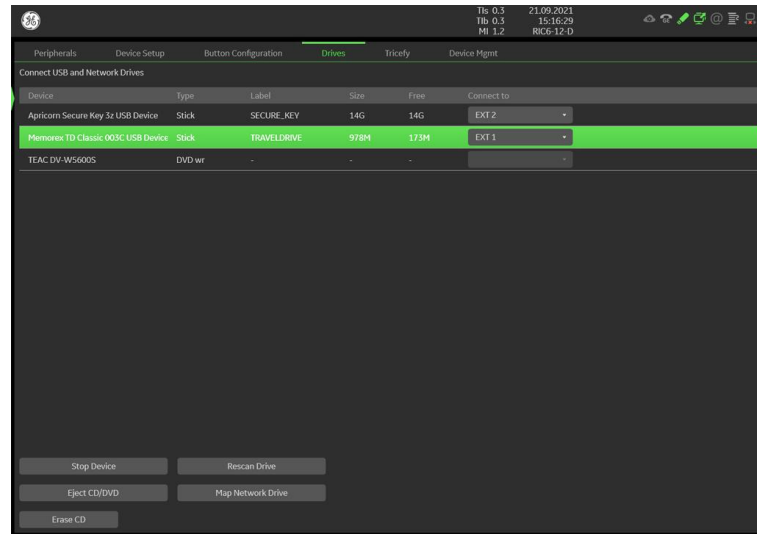


Figure 3-78: System Setup - Connectivity - DRIVES page

4. Click the **Map Network Drive** button to open a dialog where the system can be connected to a shared network drive of another server.

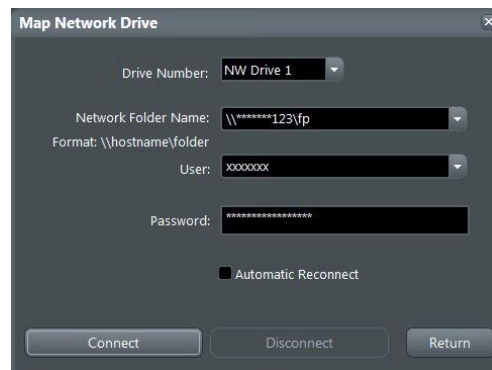


Figure 3-79: Map Network Drive

5. Enter the name of the shared network folder in the „Network Folder Name” field.
6. Supply a valid user name and a password for this folder.

Note *If you check the „Automatic Reconnect” box, the system tries to establish the connection again when starting up. Otherwise, the connection must be re-established manually after a shutdown or reboot.*

7. Select the **Connect** button to establish the connection to the remote system. If successful, the **Disconnect** button becomes active.

Note *The **Map Network Drive** button is also accessible in the “Drive Management” dialog window that appears when selecting the **Eject Media** button at the Right Toolbar.*

Note *If there is an error during the connection, a warning message appears inside the dialog. In this case, please verify the data in the dialog.*

Note *If there already is a connection to the remote server, the **Connect** button is grayed. To change the existing connection, first click on **Disconnect** and then enter the new settings.*



Warning

Please make sure that the server you are connecting to is trustworthy and reliable. For details, contact your local system administrator.

If you backup archive data to this server, all the patients demographic data will be copied to this server!

3.13.6 RSvP Agent Configuration

Prerequisites for RSvP Agent Configuration

If not already available, collect the following information from the hospital network administrator:

1. Proxy Server, if necessary

_____ / _____ / _____ / _____ and Port _____

2. Proxy Authentication, if necessary

User _____ and Password _____



For fast access to the Configuration page move the cursor to the **GE** icon at the right top of the display screen and then press the **upper trackball key**.

1. Enter the Service Desktop and select the **Agent Configuration** tab.

Note

There are different possibilities to access the Service Desktop and its available features; see [Section 5.12.2 "Service Platform - Access and Security"](#) on page 5-35.

The screenshot shows the 'Agent Configuration' page in the Service Desktop. The page has a top navigation bar with 'Home', 'Utilities', 'Options', 'Agent Configuration' (highlighted with a red circle 1), and 'Software Maintenance'. Below the navigation bar, there's a 'Contact Details' dropdown. The main content area displays agent status (Running), registration (Yes), quarantine (No), and CRM verification (Yes). It also shows agent model (CS, ULS, WH, E20), serial number (F60048), CRM No (F60048, circled with a red circle 2), and display name (Voluson Expert, circled with a red circle 3). The 'Advanced Configuration' section includes a 'Server' dropdown menu (circled with a red circle 4) with options: Production US, Production EU, and Others. Below this, there's a 'Flexera Configuration' section with a 'Software Download URL' field. A red box highlights the 'Add Enterprise Configuration' section (circled with a red circle 5), which contains 'Proxy Configuration' (with 'Enable Proxy' checked) and 'Credentials' (with 'Enable Proxy Credentials' unchecked). At the bottom, there are buttons for 'Submit Changes' (circled with a red circle 6), 'Stop Agent', and 'Reset Form', along with a 'Disable Agent' checkbox.

Figure 3-80: Service Desktop -> Agent Configuration

Note

This example shows fictional numbers!

2. The CRM number is pre-populated with the serial number by default. Enter a unique and therefore valid **CRM No**, according to your region.
 3. If desired enter the **Display Name**.
 4. Select the **Enterprise Server** according to your region from the pull-down menu. Other fields in the "Advanced Configuration" section will become pre-populated and should not be modified.
 5. If the customer site requires a Proxy server, check the box and enter **Proxy Configuration** and **Credentials**.
- Note** All information **MUST** be properly entered, otherwise remote control does not work. There is no possibility to detect proxy server information automatically.
6. Click the **Submit Changes** button and then close the page.
 7. Reboot the system.
 8. Reenter the Service Desktop.
 9. In the **Home** page confirm that "Agent Registered" and "Agent CRM Verified" status show **Yes**.

3.14 Connectivity Setup Worksheet

Site System Information																																																																																																
Site:	Floor:	Comments: 																																																																																														
Dept:	Room:																																																																																															
Voluson E_	Type:																																																																																															
REV:																																																																																																
CONTACT INFORMATION <table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <thead> <tr> <th style="text-align: left;">Name</th> <th style="text-align: left;">Title</th> <th style="text-align: left;">Phone</th> <th style="text-align: left;">E-Mail Address</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr><td> </td><td> </td><td> </td><td> </td></tr> <tr><td> </td><td> </td><td> </td><td> </td></tr> <tr><td> </td><td> </td><td> </td><td> </td></tr> <tr><td> </td><td> </td><td> </td><td> </td></tr> </tbody> </table>						Name	Title	Phone	E-Mail Address																																																																																							
Name	Title	Phone	E-Mail Address																																																																																													
TCP/IP Settings System IP Settings Name - AE Title: IP Address: Subnet Mask: Default Gateway: Remote Archive Setup Name - AE Title: IP Address: Subnet Mask: Default Gateway: Server Name: Remote DB User Name:																																																																																																
Services (Destination Devices) <table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <thead> <tr> <th></th> <th style="text-align: left;">Device Type</th> <th style="text-align: left;">Manufacturer</th> <th style="text-align: left;">Name</th> <th style="text-align: left;">IP Address</th> <th style="text-align: left;">Port</th> <th style="text-align: left;">AE Title</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr><td>1</td><td> </td><td> </td><td> </td><td> </td><td> </td><td> </td></tr> <tr><td>2</td><td> </td><td> </td><td> </td><td> </td><td> </td><td> </td></tr> <tr><td>3</td><td> </td><td> </td><td> </td><td> </td><td> </td><td> </td></tr> <tr><td>4</td><td> </td><td> </td><td> </td><td> </td><td> </td><td> </td></tr> <tr><td>5</td><td> </td><td> </td><td> </td><td> </td><td> </td><td> </td></tr> <tr><td>6</td><td> </td><td> </td><td> </td><td> </td><td> </td><td> </td></tr> <tr><td>7</td><td> </td><td> </td><td> </td><td> </td><td> </td><td> </td></tr> <tr><td>8</td><td> </td><td> </td><td> </td><td> </td><td> </td><td> </td></tr> <tr><td>9</td><td> </td><td> </td><td> </td><td> </td><td> </td><td> </td></tr> <tr><td>10</td><td> </td><td> </td><td> </td><td> </td><td> </td><td> </td></tr> <tr><td>11</td><td> </td><td> </td><td> </td><td> </td><td> </td><td> </td></tr> <tr><td>12</td><td> </td><td> </td><td> </td><td> </td><td> </td><td> </td></tr> </tbody> </table>							Device Type	Manufacturer	Name	IP Address	Port	AE Title	1							2							3							4							5							6							7							8							9							10							11							12						
	Device Type	Manufacturer	Name	IP Address	Port	AE Title																																																																																										
1																																																																																																
2																																																																																																
3																																																																																																
4																																																																																																
5																																																																																																
6																																																																																																
7																																																																																																
8																																																																																																
9																																																																																																
10																																																																																																
11																																																																																																
12																																																																																																

Figure 3-81: Site System Information

Voluson E_		Local Port		IP Address	
Host Name					
AE Title				Net Mask	

ROUTING INFORMATION		Destination IP Addresses	GATEWAY IP Addresses
			Default
ROUTER1			
ROUTER2			
ROUTER3			

DICOM APPLICATION INFORMATION				
NAME	MAKE/REVISION	AE TITLE	IP ADDRESSES	PORT
Store 1				
Store 2				
Store 3D_1				
Store 3D_2				
Print				
Worklist				
Structured Reporting				
Storage Commit				
MPPS				

Figure 3-82: Worksheet for DICOM Network Information

3.15 Paperwork

Note During and after installation, the documentation (i.e., Instructions for Use, Installation Manual, ...) for the peripherals must be kept as part of the original system documentation. This will ensure that all relevant safety and user information is available during the operation and service of the complete system.

3.15.1 Product Locator Installation Card

Note The provided Product Locator Installation Card may not be the same as shown in the Figure below.

		GE Medical Systems Product Locator File P.O. Box 414 Milwaukee, WI 53201-0414		GEMS-E Product Locator Administration BP 34 78533 Buc Cedex, FRANCE		Yokogawa Medical Systems Ltd. GEMSA Service Administration 4-7-127 Asahigaoka Hino-shi Tokyo 191, JAPAN	
DESCRIPTION		FDA	MODEL		REV	SERIAL	
SHIPMENT		OCP		BS	ORD		
		DISTRICT		CUSTOMER NO.		DATE (MO-DA-YR)	
		DESTINATION NAME AND ADDRESS					
		ZIP CODE					
		GE Medical Systems Product Locator File P.O. Box 414 Milwaukee, WI 53201-0414		GEMS-E Product Locator Administration BP 34 78533 Buc Cedex, FRANCE		Yokogawa Medical Systems Ltd. GEMSA Service Administration 4-7-127 Asahigaoka Hino-shi Tokyo 191, JAPAN	
DESCRIPTION		FDA	MODEL		REV	SERIAL	
SYSTEM I.D.		OCP		BS	ORD		EMPLOYEE NO.
		DISTRICT		ROOM		DATE (MO-DA-YR)	
INSTALLATION		CUSTOMER NO.					
		DESTINATION NAME AND ADDRESS					
		ZIP CODE					

Figure 3-83: Product Locator Installation Card

3.15.2 Instructions for Use

Check that the correct Manual(s) for the system and software revision, is included with the installation. Specific language versions of the Voluson Expert Series Instructions for Use may also be available. Check with your GE Sales Representative for availability.

This page was intentionally left blank.

Chapter 4

Functional Checks

This chapter provides procedures for quickly checking major functions of Voluson Expert Series system diagnostics by using the built-in service software and power supply adjustments.

Content in this chapter

4.1 Required Equipment -----	4-2
4.2 General Procedure -----	4-2
4.3 Functional Checks -----	4-7
4.4 Backup and Restore System Configuration and Image Archive -----	4-10
4.5 Software Configuration Checks -----	4-20
4.6 Peripheral Checks -----	4-21
4.7 Mechanical Function Checks -----	4-22
4.8 Site Log -----	4-23

Note *Most of the information pertaining to this Functional Checks chapter is found in the Voluson Expert Series Instructions for Use; see: [Section 9.12 "System Manuals"](#) on page 9-36.*

4.1 Required Equipment

- An empty (blank) DVD/CD+R/RW and/or external USB device (stick or hard disk drive).
- At least one probe; see [Section 9.13 "Probes" on page 9-36](#) for an overview. Usually, you should check all the probes used on the system.

4.2 General Procedure



Caution: The Voluson Expert Series requires all covers!

Do not operate this system unless all board covers and frame panels are securely in place, to ensure safe operation, optimal system performance and cooling. When covers are removed, EMC and EMI compliance might be compromised.

For service procedures where the operation of the system is necessary with board covers or frame panels removed, ensure that there are no EMI sensitive devices in the vicinity of the system. If in doubt, relocate the system to a different environment where no EMI sensitive devices are in the vicinity.



Lockout/Tagout Requirements (For USA only).

Follow OSHA Lockout/Tagout requirements by ensuring you are in total control of the Power Cable on the system.

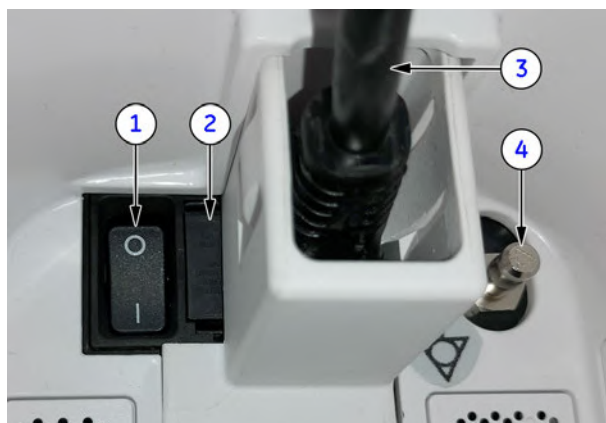
Content in this chapter

4.2.1 Power On / Boot Up	4-3
4.2.2 Power Off / Shutdown	4-4
4.2.3 System Features	4-5

4.2.1 Power On / Boot Up

Note *After turning off a system, wait at least 10 seconds before turning it on again. The system may not be able to boot if power is recycled too quickly.*

1. If not already done, connect the mains power cable to the back of the system and screw on the pull-out protection with the 2 screws.
2. Connect the mains power cable to a hospital grade power outlet with the proper rated voltage. Never use an adapter that would defeat the safety ground.
3. Switch ON the circuit breaker at the rear of the system.



- 1 circuit breaker
- 2 fuses (2x T8A H/250V)
- 3 mains power cable incl. pull-out protection
- 4 equipotential pin

Figure 4-1: Circuit Breaker at rear of system

Note *When AC power is applied to the system, the **ON/OFF** standby button on the control console illuminates amber, indicating that the system (including the BackEnd Processor) is in standby mode.*

4. Press the **ON/OFF** standby button (see: [Figure 4-2](#)) on the control console for ~3 seconds.



Figure 4-2: ON/OFF standby button

Note *The power switch of any attached printer(s) needs to be in ON position before starting the system. However, be aware some auxiliary equipment may switch itself to standby mode (e.g., Color video printer) and must therefore be switched on separately.*

As soon as the software has been loaded, the system enters 2D-Mode with the probe and application that were used before the system shutdown. Total time used for start-up is about 2 minutes.

4.2.2 Power Off / Shutdown

Note After turning off a system, wait at least 10 seconds before turning it on again. The system may not be able to boot if power is recycled too quickly.

1. If not already in read mode, freeze the image.
2. Press the **ON/OFF** Standby button on the control console. Following dialog appears.

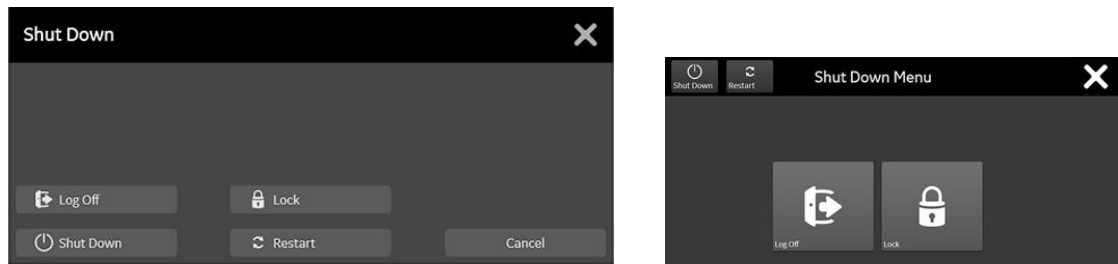


Figure 4-3: Shutdown dialog (monitor and touch, examples)

3. Select **Shutdown**. The system performs an automatic full shutdown sequence.
4. Switch OFF the circuit breaker at the rear of the system.

Note A full shutdown is also performed when pressing the **ON/OFF** standby button on the control console twice.

Note Usually auxiliary equipment need not to be switched ON/OFF separately.

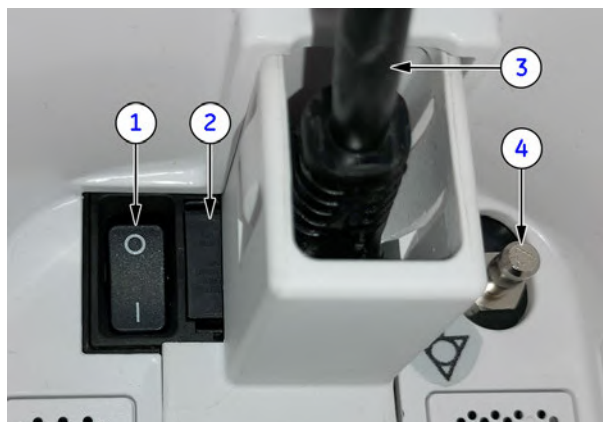


Warning

Disconnection of the mains power cable from AC mains is necessary!

5. After complete power down, unplug the mains power cable from the AC wall outlet socket.

Note Do not disconnect the mains power cable from the systems plug unless it is absolutely required for specific replacement procedures, **or** if it is for any reason not possible to disconnect it from the AC wall outlet socket.



- 1 circuit breaker
- 2 fuses (2x T8A H/250V)
- 3 mains power cable incl. pull-out protection
- 4 equipotential pin

Figure 4-4: Circuit Breaker at rear of system

6. Press on the brakes to block the caster wheels.
7. Disconnect probes. (Turn the probe locking handle counterclockwise and then pull the connector straight out of the probe port.)



Caution

Do not disconnect a probe while running (Live Scan "Write" mode)! A software error may occur. In this case switch the system OFF (perform a reset).

4.2.3 System Features

Content in this chapter

4.2.3.1 Control Console	4-5
4.2.3.2 Touch Panel	4-6

4.2.3.1 Control Console



Figure 4-5: Control Console Tour

1	Touch Panel screen	8	button for control console rotation
2	Touch Panel rotary/push/toggle controls	9	ON/OFF Standby power button
3	Mode keys on/off (push), Gain (rotate) X,Y,Z rotary controls in 3D/4D Volume Mode	10	Zoom/Depth and Angle/Focus rotary/push/toggle controls
4	Customer programmable keys	11	Remote control P-keys (programmable)
5	Voluson naming plate	12	Freeze / Run key
6	buttons for control console height adjustment	13	Trackball and Trackball keys
7	Probe Illumination on/off		

4.2.3.2 Touch Panel

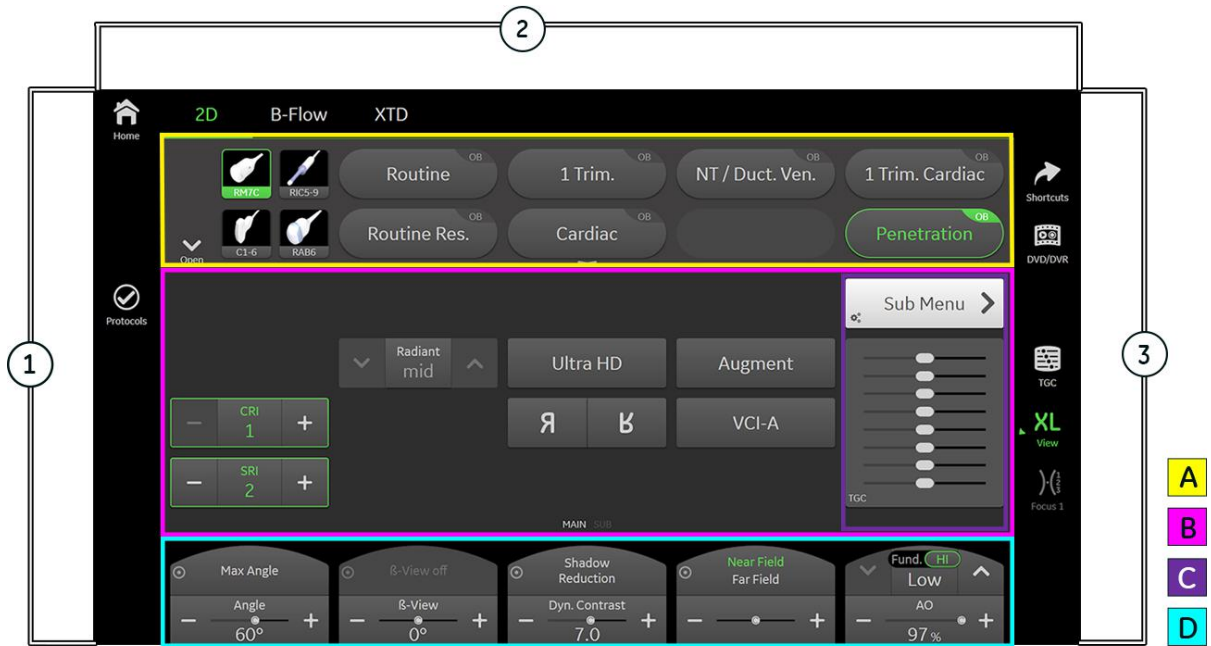


Figure 4-6: Touch Panel - Main Menu

- 1 Left Toolbar - Soft buttons such as **Home**, **Protocols**, etc.
 - 2 Tab Area - additional Operating Modes
 - 3 Right Toolbar - further functions and options supported by the selected Mode
- A Shows all presets for the active probe and the selected application; the active one is highlighted.
- B Further functions / options supported by the selected Mode
- C **Sub Menu** and TGC Sliders
- D Settings which can be adjusted by the combination rotary/push/flip controls adjacent to the Touch Panel.
- The functionality of these controls changes, depending upon the currently displayed menu.

Note

Different menus are displayed depending on which Touch Panel Menu and which Mode is selected.

4.3 Functional Checks

For basic functional checks of different modes, measurements, calculations etc. refer to the Voluson Expert Series Instructions for Use.



It might be possible that some probes, options or features are NOT available

- in some countries.
- at the time of release of this Service Manual.

Note *Some software may be considered standard depending upon system configuration. If any Modes or Options are not part of the system configuration, the check can be omitted.*

Note *Different menus are displayed depending on which Touch Panel Menu and which Mode is selected.*

Note *Some function keys only appear on the Touch Panel if they are available for the selected probe.*

4.3.1 Patient Archive (Image Management)

The Voluson Expert Series provides a Patient/Image Management System that allows fast and extremely easy patient, exam and image management.

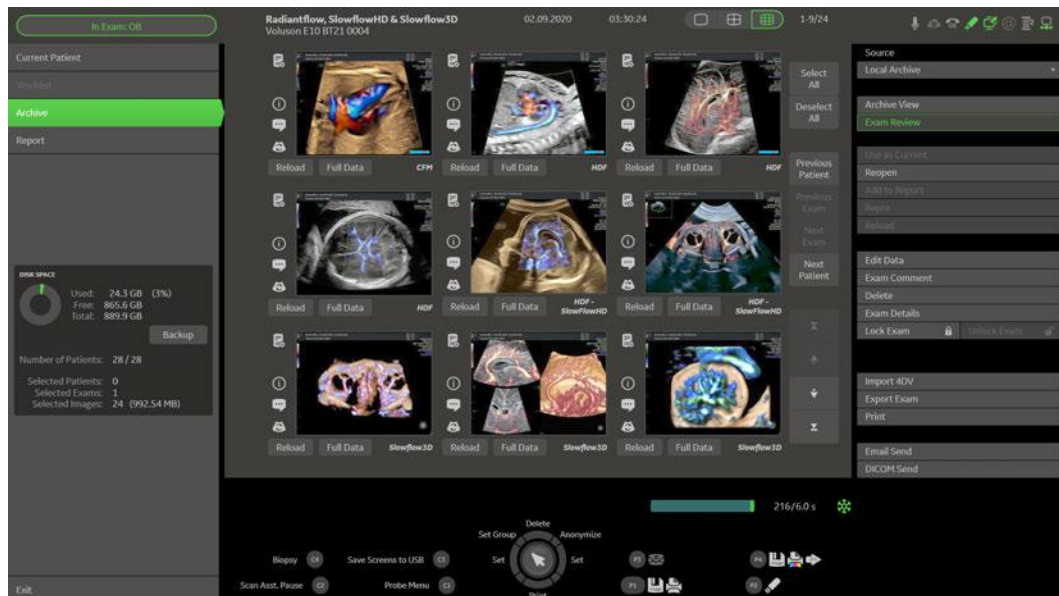


Archive View (image above)

The patient archive database is used for searching a particular exam and/or patient. Via the buttons on the right, it is possible to send images via Email or over the DICOM network, print exams/images, export exams/images, import exams/images, etc.

Exam Review (image below)

Exam Review allows you to view all exams of a particular patient. Additionally it is possible to view image properties, input comments and voice annotations, etc.



Note

For further details refer to the Voluson Expert Series Instructions for Use.

Note

Images can be backed up and restored by means of the **Image Archive** function in the System Setup. Operation see [Section 4.4.4 on page 4-17](#).

4.3.2 Erasing DVD/CD

1. Select the **Home** button at the Left Toolbar.
2. In the “Home” menu touch the **System Setup** button to invoke the setup desktop on the screen.
3. Select **Connectivity** and then click the **Drives** tab.

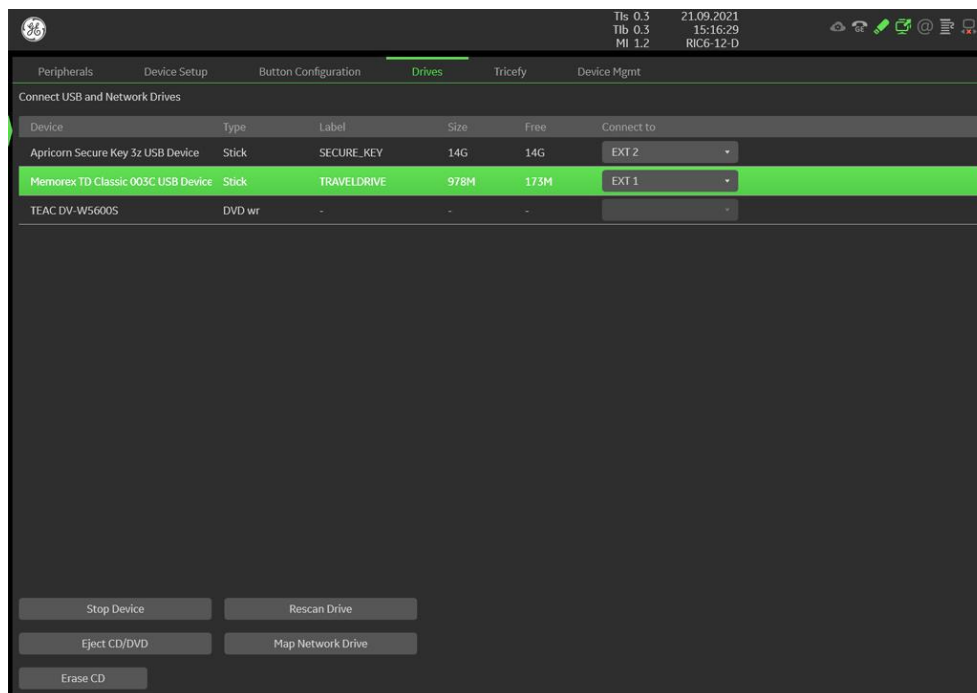


Figure 4-7: System Setup - Connectivity - DRIVES page

4. Click the **Erase CD** button to displays the “Erase DVD/CD” window.

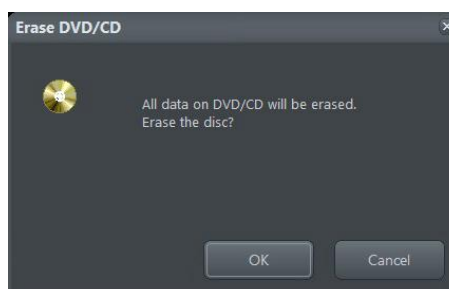


Figure 4-8: Erase DVD/CD Window

5. Click the **OK** button to start the process.
6. When erasing is finished, select **Exit** to return to scan mode.

4.4 Backup and Restore System Configuration and Image Archive

Content in this chapter

4.4.1 Save System Configuration Backup -----	4-11
4.4.2 Load System Configuration Backup -----	4-13
4.4.3 Delete System Configuration Backup -----	4-16
4.4.4 Archiving Images -----	4-17

Note

It is highly recommended to backup the System Configuration (Section 4.4.1 on page 4-11) and the Image Archive (Section 4.4.4 on page 4-17) once a week.

1. Select the **Home** button at the Left Toolbar.
2. In the "Home" menu touch the **System Setup** button to invoke the setup desktop on the screen.
3. Select **Backup** and then click the **System Configuration** tab.

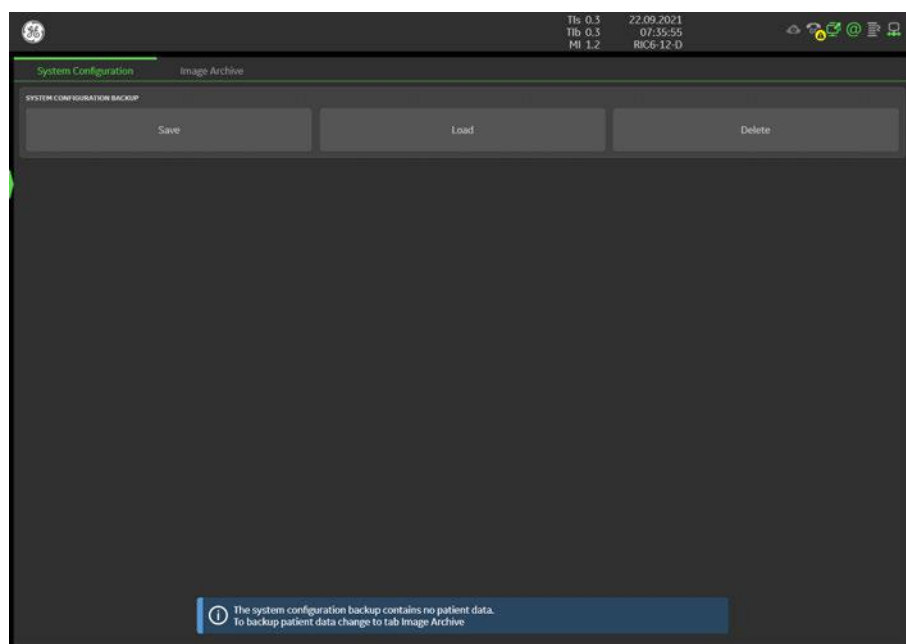


Figure 4-9: System Setup - Backup - SYSTEM CONFIGURATION page

The System Configuration page is subdivided into:

- "Save System Configuration Backup" on page 4-11
- "Load System Configuration Backup" on page 4-13
- "Delete System Configuration Backup" on page 4-16

A "System Configuration Backup" (hereinafter also shortly named "Configuration Backup") can be saved to the following destinations:

- D: partition of internal hard disk
- DVD/CD+R/RW
- Mapped Network Drive, see: [Section 3.13.5 on page 3-81](#).
- External USB-Drive connected to the system (e.g., USB-Stick or external hard disk drive)
- Cloud⁵ (optional)
- Upload for Fleet⁶ (optional)

⁵ Backup is stored in the cloud. This backup can only be loaded on the Voluson Expert Series system on which it was created.

⁶ Backup is stored in the cloud and provided for fleet management. This backup can be distributed to other Voluson Expert Series systems.

4.4.1 Save System Configuration Backup

Note *It is recommended to backup System Configuration data before upgrading the software and/or image settings (presets). This ensures that if settings need to be reloaded, will be the same ones the customer was using prior to service.*

A backup of the System Configuration always contains the following data:

IMAGING

- **2D Presets** 2D user presets
 - **2D Probe settings** Applications and presets for all available probes
- **3D/4D Presets** 3D/4D user presets
 - **Acquisition** 3D applications, acquisition type and presets for all available 3D/4D probes
 - **Render** 3D/4D render applications, usage, types, groups and presets
- **Gray Curves** Gray Maps
- **Flow Profiles**
- **Application Settings** Application and probe factory settings

CONFIGURATION

- **Custom**
 - **System Settings** General "Setup" settings such as language, time/date format, video output, archive configuration, probe respond, color and lighting, etc.
 - **Annotations** Bodymark initial position, annotation text and touchpanel layout for all applications
 - **Scan Assistant**
 - * Scan Assistant Lists
 - * Scan Assistant Settings
 - **Measure & Report Configuration** User specific measure setup settings
 - * Measurements → Measure settings and touchpanel layout configuration
 - * Reports → Measure report configuration
 - **Biopsy Lines** Biopsy line positions and angles
 - **Touch Panel Layout** User interface softkey positions on touchpanel
- **Connectivity**
 - **Network**
 - * LAN → Network settings: IP address, LAN, network drives, network profiles, data streaming
 - * WLAN → Network settings: WLAN
 - * Email → Email configuration
 - **DICOM**
 - * DICOM Settings → DICOM configuration e.g., DICOM servers, AE Title, Station Name etc.
 - * DICOM TLS certificates
 - **Peripherals and Button Configuration**
 - * Peripheral Settings → Peripherals and printer configuration
 - * Button Configuration → P-button and C-button configuration
 - **Trice** Uplink configuration
 - **AVURI Device Management** Cloud-based device and user management across multiple locations
- **Service**
 - **Service Platform** Service Platform settings
 - **Options** Software feature option permanent and demo key
 - **Security** User authentication data such as configuration, user names and groups, LDAP configuration, etc. Password required

Operation

1. Select the **Home** button at the Left Toolbar.
2. In the “Home” menu touch the **System Setup** button to invoke the setup desktop on the screen.
3. Select **Backup** and then click the **System Configuration** tab.
4. Click the **Save** button.
5. Choose the destination (1).

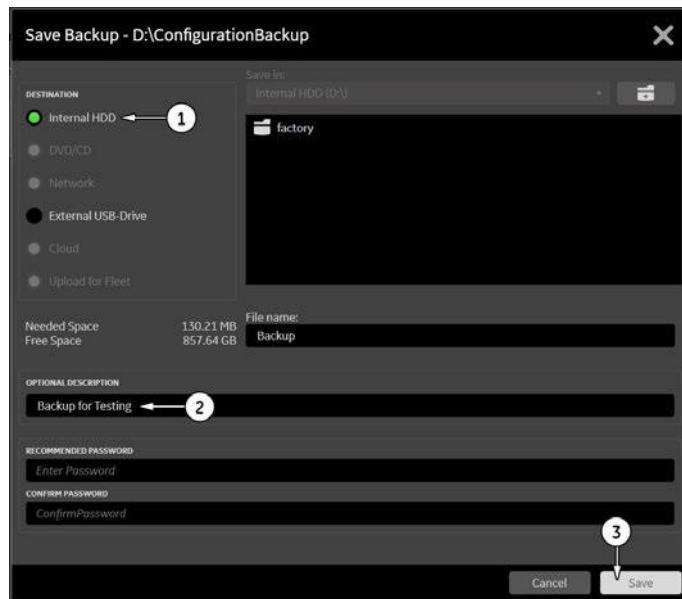


Figure 4-10: Configuration Backup - Save

6. Enter optional description of the Backup (2).

Note

Image data will not be backed up! To backup the Image Archive, refer to [Section 4.4.4 on page 4-17](#).

7. Click the **Save** button (3).

8. To start the backup process click **Yes**.

After copying the data, the Voluson Expert Series reboots and the application starts again.

When the “Configuration Backup” is saved on a network drive it may be desirable to move the data (e.g., for backup or maintenance). To map a network drive see [Section 3.13.5 on page 3-81](#).

4.4.2 Load System Configuration Backup



Caution

It is recommended to backup data before an upgrade; see [Section 4.4.1 on page 4-11](#).

The "Configuration Backup" loading procedure replaces (overwrites) **ALL** existing data (except Application Settings adapted for the used system software version) on the local hard drive of the Voluson Expert Series system!

Note

It is neither required nor advisable to reload a previously stored "Configuration Backup" after a software upgrade that was performed by means of the SWI from Media button!

Note

There are circumstances where it is not possible to load (restore) all the data. The following rules specify these restrictions:

1. Generally, **only** restoring data from an older to a newer software version is possible. Loading a backup into a system that has a software version with a lower major number than the system the backup was created on, is prohibited.
2. Options can **only** be restored on the same Voluson Expert Series system with the same major software **and** the same Ext. version.
3. When loading a backup into a system with a software version that has a higher major number, the following items will not be restored:
 - Options
 - State of the Service Platform
4. The **user is only** allowed to restore data to a different system if and only if the software version on this system is the same as in the backup.
5. The **user is not** allowed to restore the following items to a different system:
 - Options
 - State of the Service Platform
 - DICOM TLS Certificates
 - Trice
 - AVURI Device Management

Note

If following items are selected for restoring, a warning message will be displayed.

- Measure & Report Configuration
- Biopsy Lines
- Connectivity (Network settings and DICOM configuration)

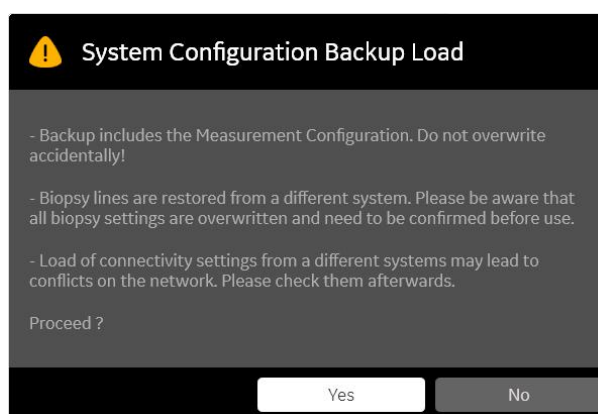


Figure 4-11: warning message (example)

Operation

1. Select the **Home** button at the Left Toolbar.
2. In the "Home" menu touch the **System Setup** button to invoke the setup desktop on the screen.
3. Select **Backup** and then click the **System Configuration** tab.
4. Click the **Load** button.
5. Choose the destination (1).

Note

If it is desired to load backup from media Internal HDD, click the "factory folder" icon first and then select the backup to be restored.

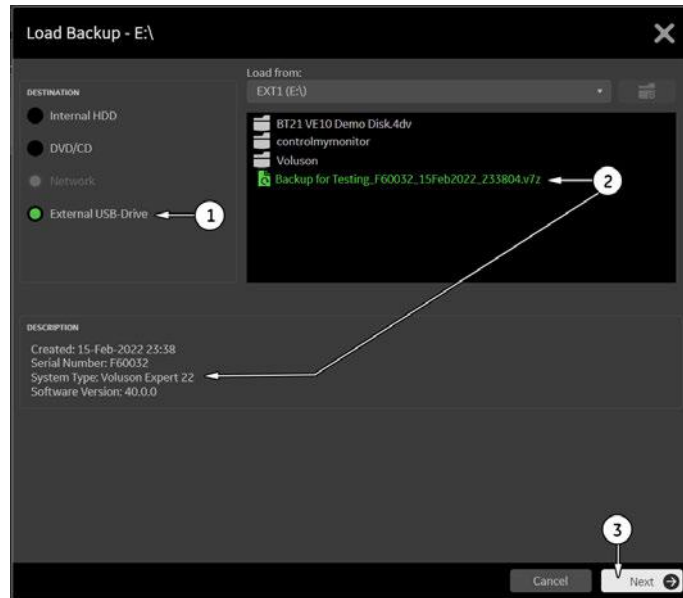


Figure 4-12: System Configuration Load

6. Click on the backup to be restored (2). Additional information is displayed.
7. Select the **Next** button (3).

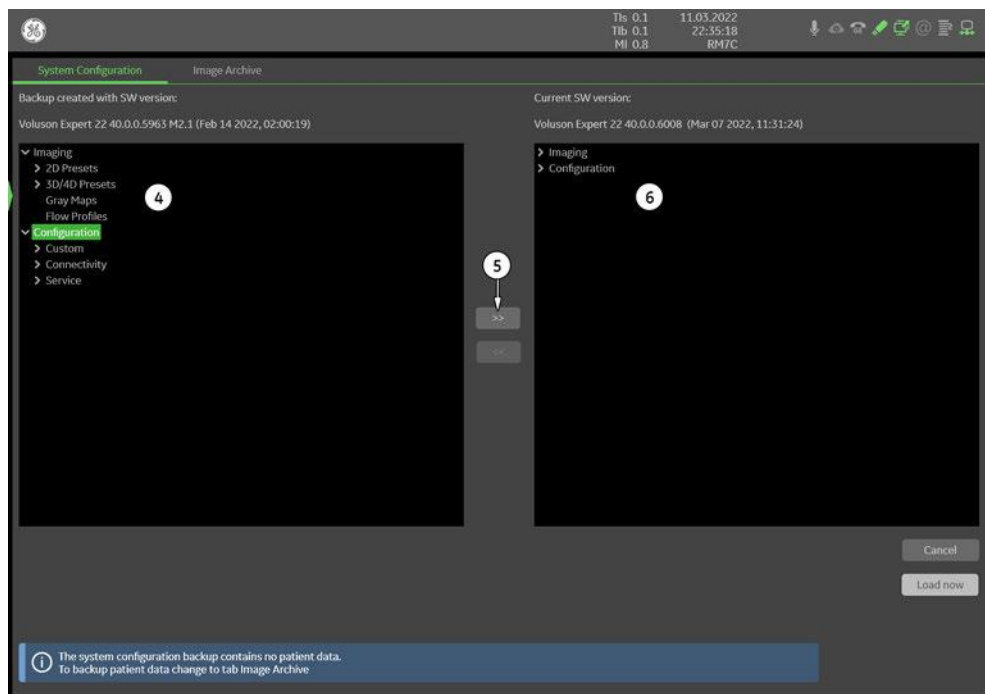


Figure 4-13: select items to be loaded

- Settings and data that are allowed for restore are listed in the left "Backup Data" field (4). For detailed description of available items refer to [Section 4.4.1 "Save System Configuration Backup" on page 4-11](#).
8. Select all the items to be loaded. Therefore, choose items and click the [**>>**] button (5) to copy items into the right "Load Data" field (6).
- For example: All **Imaging** settings and all **Configuration** settings will be loaded, see [Figure 4-13 above](#).

9. **ONLY** when it is desired to exclude some items from loading:

- Click the [>] sign next to an item (7) to open the content tree.
- Return selected item (8) from the "Load Data" field to "Backup Data" field select the [<] button (9).

For example: **Security** settings will be excluded from loading, see [Figure 4-14 below](#).

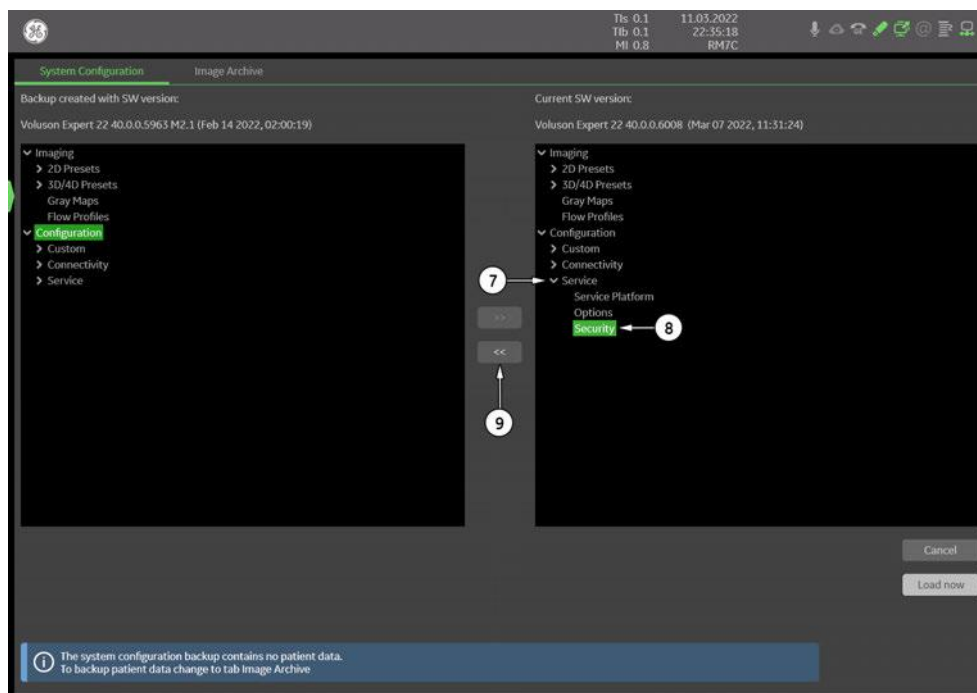


Figure 4-14: return selected item

10. Confirm your selection and then click the **Load now** button.

Note When the Configuration Backup contains a configured system administrator and "Security" is selected for reload, the system administrator password need to be entered.

Note A warning message is displayed, when items are selected that might overwrite user's settings or when special observation is needed.

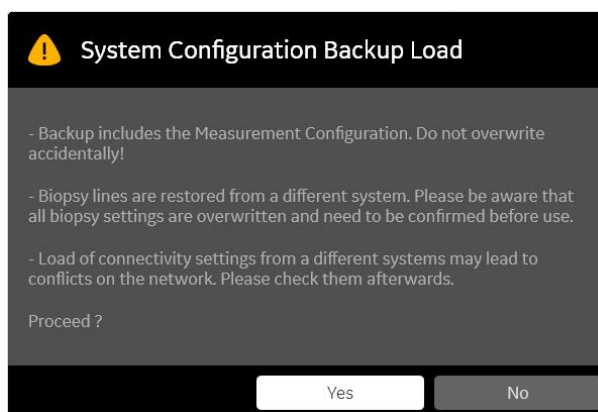


Figure 4-15: warning message (example)

11. Click **Yes** to start, or **No** to cancel the procedure.

After restoring the data, the Voluson Expert Series reboots and the application starts again.

4.4.3 Delete System Configuration Backup

1. Select the **Home** button at the Left Toolbar.
2. In the "Home" menu touch the **System Setup** button to invoke the setup desktop on the screen.
3. Select **Backup** and then click the **System Configuration** tab.
4. Click the **Delete** button.
5. Choose the destination (1).

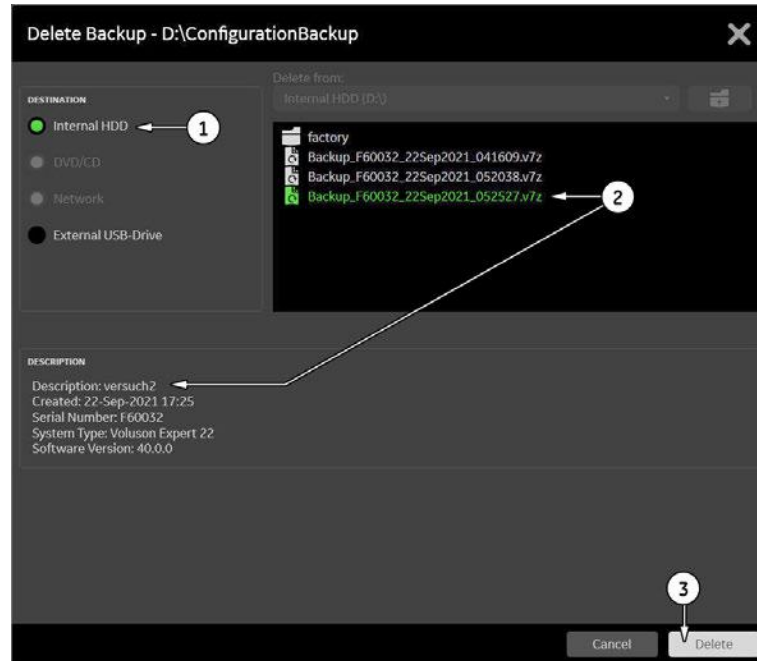


Figure 4-16: Configuration Backup - Delete

6. Click on the backup to be deleted (2). Additional information is displayed.
7. Select the **Delete** button (3).



Caution

There is **no "Undo"** function for this action!!!

4.4.4 Archiving Images

Note *It is highly recommended to backup the System Configuration (Section 4.4.1 on page 4-11) and the Image Archive (Section 4.4.4 on page 4-17) once a week.*

4.4.4.1 Save Image Archive

Note *A backup of the Image Archive always contains the Patient Archive (database containing patient demographic data and measurements) + **images** of the selected exams.*

1. Select the **Home** button at the Left Toolbar.
2. In the “Home” menu touch the **System Setup** button to invoke the setup desktop on the screen.
3. Select **Backup** and then click the **Image Archive** tab.

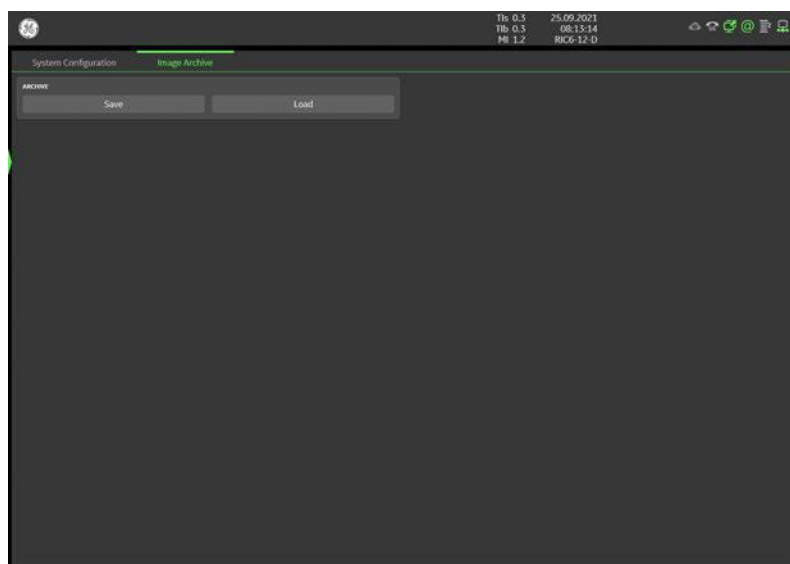


Figure 4-17: System Setup - Backup - IMAGE ARCHIVE page

4. Click the **Save** button (2).

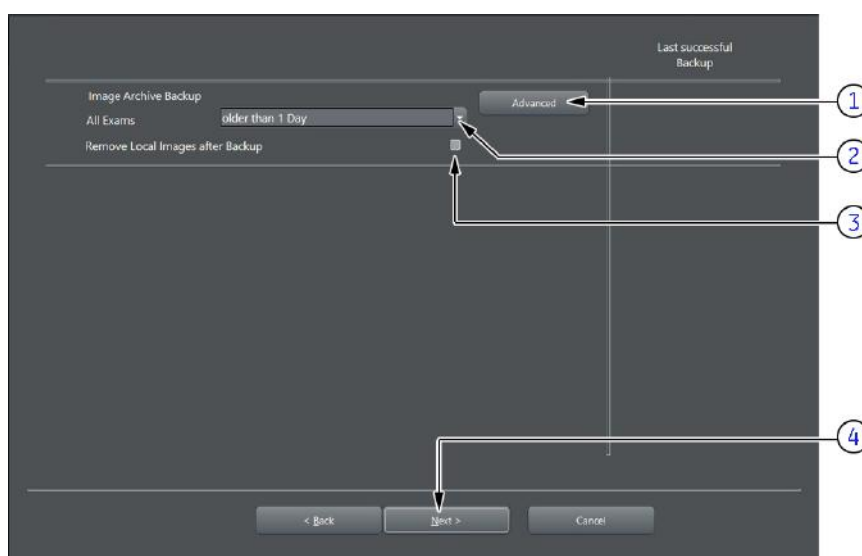


Figure 4-18: Image Archive Save - preparations

5. Choose archiving span time from the pull-down menu (2).

Note *If for example “All images older than” **1 Day** is chosen (see: Figure 4-18 on page 4-17), images of the current day will not be archived! However, if you click the [Advanced] button you can put this right.*

6. If desired, check mark “Remove Local Images after Backup” (3).
7. Click the **Advanced** button (1) if it is desired to adapt archive data.

8. Select the **Next** button (4).



Figure 4-19: Image Archive Save - choose destination

9. Choose the destination (5).
 10. Enter the description of the backup (6).

Note

Voluson Expert Series presets, configurations and image settings will not be backed up! To backup the System Configuration see [Section 4.4.1 on page 4-11](#).

11. Select the **Next** button (7).
 12. To start the backup process click **Yes**.

4.4.4.2 Load Image Archive

1. Select the **Home** button at the Left Toolbar.
2. In the “Home” menu touch the **System Setup** button to invoke the setup desktop on the screen.
3. Select **Backup** and then click the **Image Archive** tab.
4. Click the **Load** button.

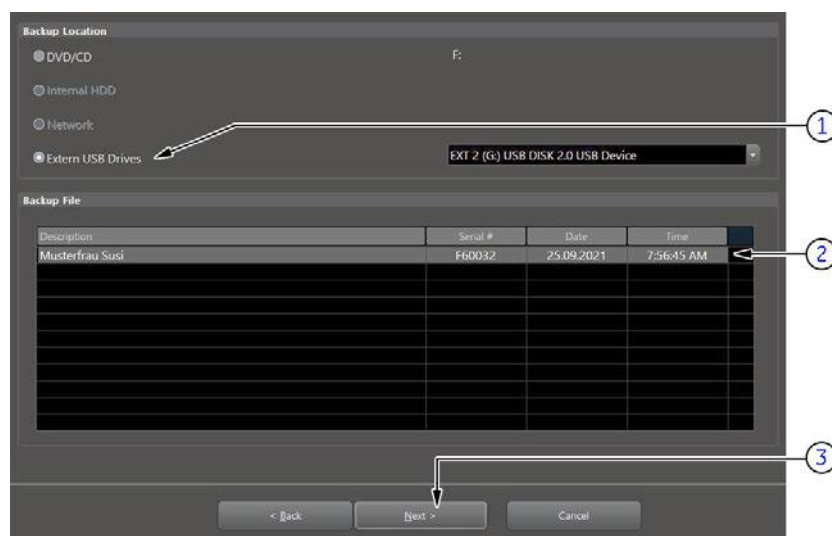


Figure 4-20: Image Archive Load - choose destination

5. Choose the destination (1).
6. Click on the backup to be restored (2). Additional information is displayed in the table.
7. Select the **Next** button (3). The following window will be displayed.

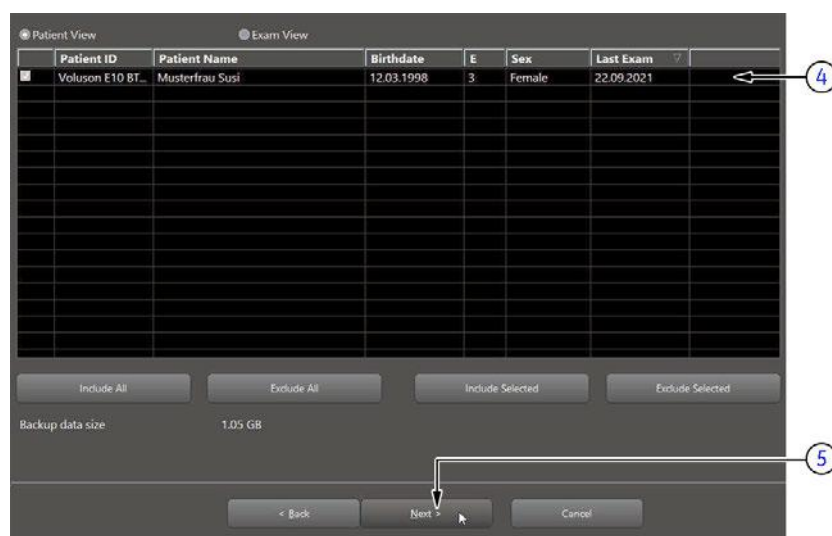


Figure 4-21: select image archive data to be restored

8. Select (check mark) the image archive data to be restored to the Voluson Expert Series system (4).
9. Select the **Next** button (5).
10. Select **Yes** to start, or **No** to cancel the restore procedure.

4.5 Software Configuration Checks

4.5.1 System Setup

1. Select the **Home** button at the Left Toolbar.
2. In the "Home" menu touch the **System Setup** button to invoke the setup desktop on the screen.
3. Select the desired major group.

Each major group contains different pages to check.

Note *Almost all **settings** have to be assigned as desired and required by the customer. After completion, return the equipment to the customer and ensure acceptance.*

Note *For further details refer to the Voluson Expert Series Instructions for Use.*

Settings

Step	Page + Task	Expected Result(s)
1	General: Check Date and Time setting	Date and Time are correct
2	General: Check that Clinic Name is correct	Clinic Name (location) is correct
3	General: Check Language settings	desired System Language is displayed

Assign all (further) settings as desired and required by the customer.

Administration

Step	Page + Task	Expected Result(s)
1	Options: Check that all options are set up correct	D = Demo , I = Inactive , P = Permanent

Connectivity

Step	Page + Task	Expected Result(s)
1	Peripherals: Check the Video Norm standard as described in Section 3.7.5.6 on page 3-53 .	setting assigned as required for the country
2	Device Setup: Check DICOM, Archive and Network configuration nodes (e.g., TCP/IP, WLAN, EMAIL, etc.)	settings assigned as desired and required by the customer

Assign all (further) settings as desired and required by the customer.

Backup

not applicable

Imaging Presets

Assign all (further) settings as desired and required by the customer.

Biopsy

not applicable

Measure

Assign all (further) settings as desired and required by the customer.

4.6 Peripheral Checks

Check that peripherals work as described below:

Table 4-1: Peripheral Checks

Step	Page + Task	Expected Result(s)
1	Press the Freeze key.	Stop image acquisition.
2	Press the remote key (P1-P4 or C1-C4), which is assigned to the BW printer.	The image displayed on the screen is printed on the Black & White printer.
3	Press the remote key (P1-P4 or C1-C4), which is assigned to the color printer.	The image displayed on the screen is printed on the Color printer.
4	Press the remote key (P1-P4 or C1-C4), which is assigned to recorder control.	Recording starts/stops.

Verify basic operations of further auxiliary devices.

4.6.1 ECG Check Out

Connect the ECG module and check:

Table 4-2: Peripheral Checks

Step	Page + Task	Expected Result(s)
1	Select the Home button at the Left Toolbar and then touch the ECG button to display the "ECG" menu.	It will display a curve along the bottom edge of the image sector.

4.7 Mechanical Function Checks

4.7.1 Control Console Positioning

The control console can be rotated, translated and adjusted in height (**electronically** only).

Note

For further details refer to [Section 5.10.3 on page 5-33](#) and/or [Section 6.3 on page 6-4](#).

4.7.2 Brakes and Direction (Swivel) Locks

Check the brakes and swivel locks function as described below.



Caution

The braking mechanism of the pedals connects the front pedals with the rear pedals. If the pedals are operated on either side (front or rear), the pedals can also move on the opposite side (rear or front). Especially during service operation, where covers are removed and the mechanics of the braking gear is unprotected, keep away fingers, hand, ... from the mechanics of the braking gear.

Instruct other persons that are in the vicinity of the ultrasound console while service-tasks with removed covers are performed not to operate the brake pedals.

The brake mechanism activation is supported by a gas-spring. Pay attention to additional force that can act on the brake pedals due to the force provided by the gas-spring.

Table 4-3: Brakes and Direction (Swivel) Lock

Step	Task		Expected Result(s)
	pedals front	pedals rear	
	not applicable		swivel lock of rear casters engaged
			brakes and swivel lock released
			brakes and swivel lock engaged (=full lock)
	not applicable		Press that pedal to change/ release locking state.

4.8 Site Log

Table 4-4: Voluson Expert Series - Site Log (Paper Documentation)

[illegible]

This page was intentionally left blank.

Chapter 5

Components and Functions (Theory)

This chapter explains Voluson Expert Series system concepts, component arrangement, and subsystem function. It also describes power distribution and optional peripherals.

Content in this chapter

5.1 General Information - - - - -	5-2
5.2 FrontEnd Processor - - - - -	5-19
5.3 BackEnd Processor - - - - -	5-21
5.4 Internal I/O - - - - -	5-23
5.5 Control Console (User Interface) - - - - -	5-25
5.6 Monitor - - - - -	5-26
5.7 External I/O - - - - -	5-27
5.8 Peripherals and/or optional Equipment - - - - -	5-28
5.9 Power Distribution - - - - -	5-31
5.10 Mechanical Descriptions - - - - -	5-32
5.11 Air Flow Control - - - - -	5-34
5.12 Service Platform - - - - -	5-35
5.13 Service Desktop - - - - -	5-36
5.14 Service Page - - - - -	5-37
5.15 Boot Screen Functions - - - - -	5-40

5.1 General Information

Voluson Expert Series is a digital beamforming curved-, linear- and phased array ultrasound imaging system. It has provisions for analog input sources like ECG and Phono.

Content in this chapter

5.1.1 Description of Operating Modes ----- 5-6

5.1.2 Description of Software Options ----- 5-9

5.1.3 Data Location ----- 5-18

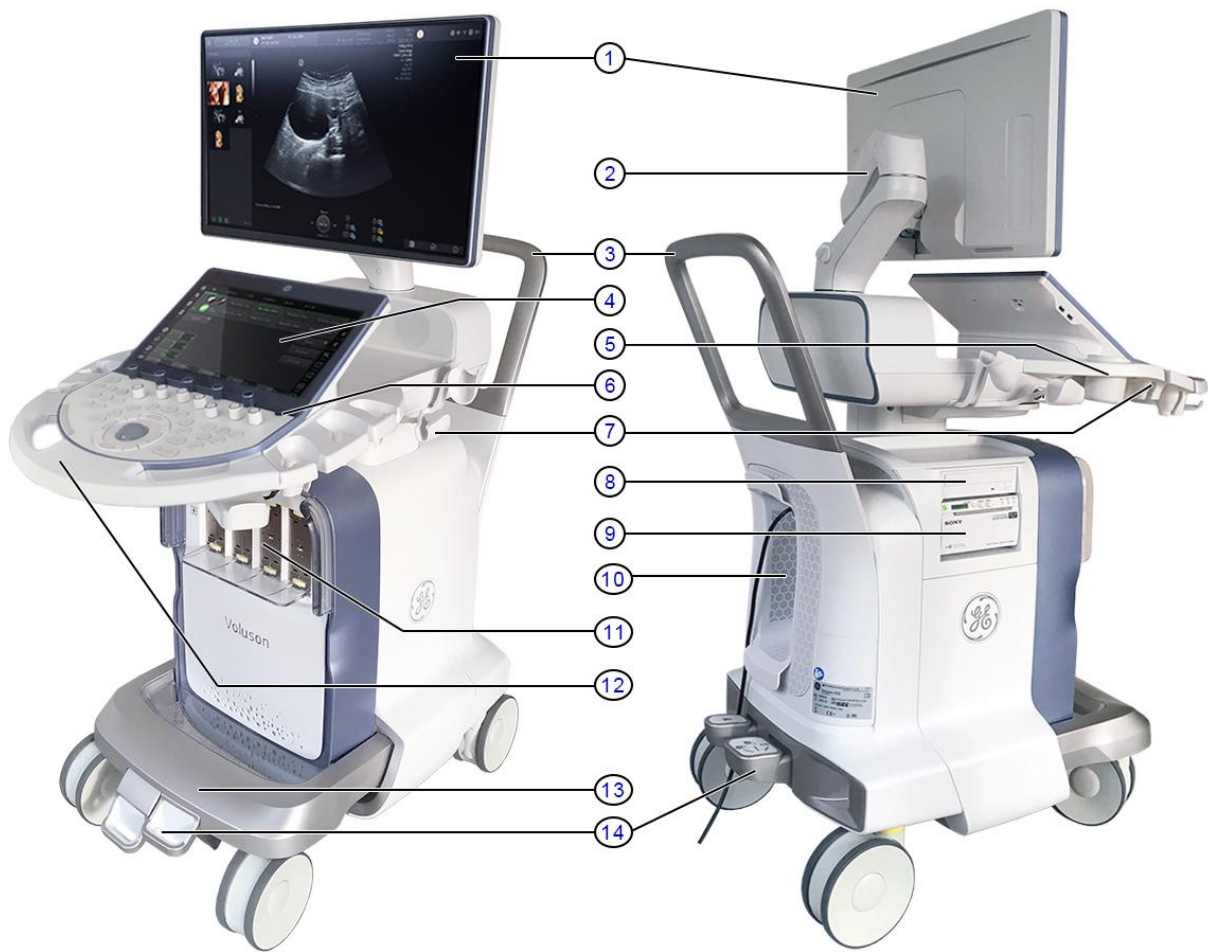


Figure 5-1: Voluson Expert Series - Major Components

1	23.8" Widescreen Monitor	8	DVD+(R)W drive
2	Monitor Arm (fully adjustable)	9	BW video printer
3	Rear Handle	10	External I/O connectors and Mains Power switch
4	Touch Panel display	11	Probe connectors
5	Gel cup or Gel warmer	12	Front Handle incl. Control Console movement buttons
6	ON/OFF Standby button	13	Footrest
7	Probe holder	14	Brake and swivel locks for caster wheels

The system can be used for:

- 2D Mode Imaging and additional Operating Modes (B-Flow, XTD-View, Contrast Imaging, etc.)
- Color Doppler Imaging (CFM, PD, TD and HD-Flow)
- M Mode + MCFM Imaging
- Doppler (PW, CW)
- 3D Mode and Real Time 4D Imaging
- Different combinations of the above modes

Among other significant features of the Voluson Expert Series ultrasound system are the following:

- Integrated FrontEnd (uses advanced ASIC and FGPA technologies)
- Open connectivity using USB ports
- Bluetooth - wireless connectivity
- high-resolution 23.8" LCD Flat Panel Monitor, LED display with DVI Interface
- Low profile, backlit Keyboard (optional)

Voluson Expert Series has a digital beam forming system (incorporated in the FrontEnd) which can handle up to 256 element probes by use of multiplexing.

Signal flow from the Probe Connector Panel to the FrontEnd (FE) Electronics, to the BackEnd Processor (BEP), and finally it is displayed on the Monitor and Peripherals.

Voluson Expert Series internal electronics are divided into three:

- FrontEnd (FE)
- BackEnd Processor (BEP)
- Power Supply Unit

Interconnecting signals from FrontEnd, BackEnd, keyboard, monitor, and power distribution sub-systems are routed internally.

Major System Components

- FrontEnd processor: [Section 5.2 on page 5-19](#)
- BackEnd processor: [Section 5.3 on page 5-21](#)
- Control Console (User interface); System I/O with hard keys, Touch Panel and EL-Display: [Section 5.5 on page 5-25](#)
- Monitor: [Section 5.6 on page 5-26](#)
- External I/O: [Section 5.7 on page 5-27](#)
- Peripherals: [Section 5.8 on page 5-28](#)
- Power supply and Isolation transformer for the peripherals, [Section 5.9 on page 5-31](#)
- System mechanical chassis: trolley to keep all major components, [Section 5.10 on page 5-32](#)

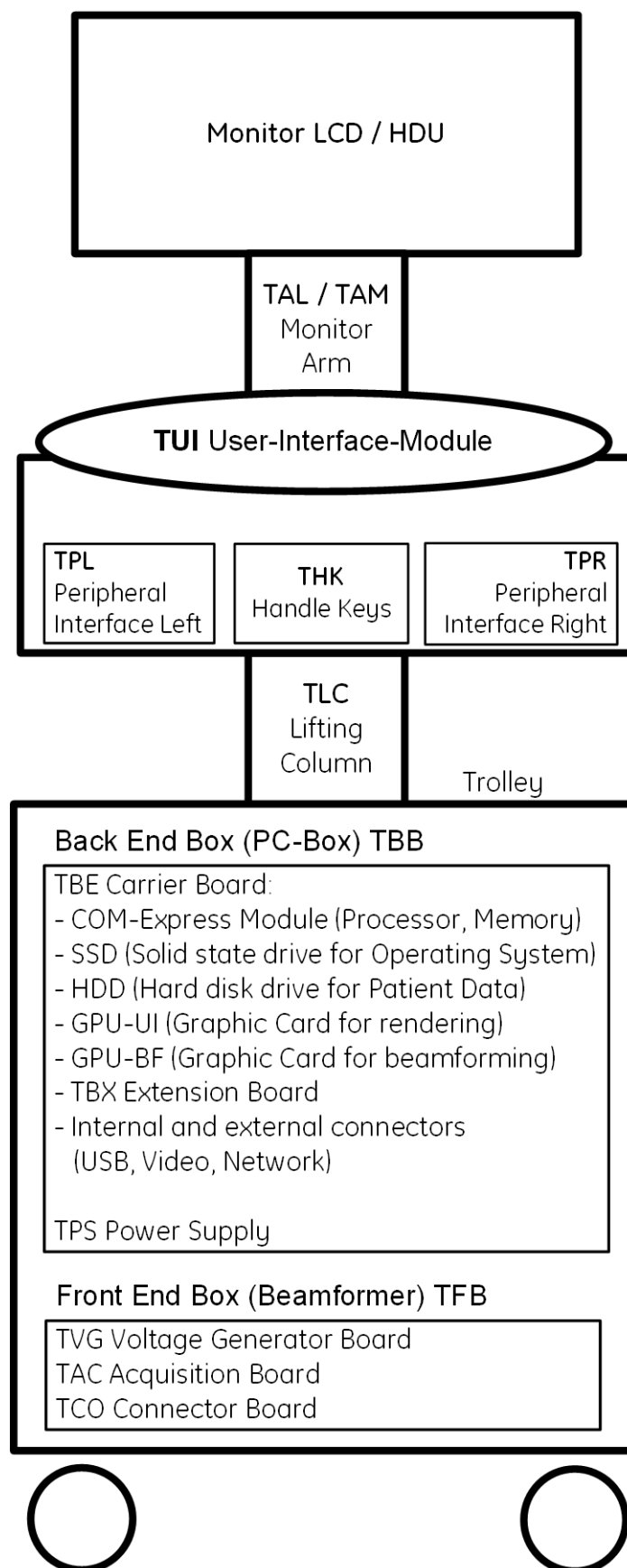


Figure 5-2: Basic Block diagram of Voluson Expert Series

The Voluson Expert Series used digital beamforming technology which provides high resolution and high penetration performance. It is a general purpose, mobile, software controlled diagnostic ultrasound system. Its function is to acquire ultrasound data and to display the data of different modes gives the operator the ability to measure anatomical structures and offers analysis packages that provide information that is used to make a diagnosis by competent health care professionals.

The Calculation and Report function supports following application packages:

- Abdominal (ABD)
- Obstetrical and Fetal Echo (OB)
- Gynecological (GYN)
- Small Parts and Breast (SM P)
- Vascular (VAS)
- Pediatrics (PED)
- Transrectal (TR)
- Cardiology (CARD)
- Cephalic (CEPH)
- Musculoskeletal (MSK)

The Voluson Expert Series supports a variety of linear-, curved-, phased array and pencil CW probes for various clinical applications.

Medical application fields include:

- Obstetrics
- Gynecology and Fertility
- Radiology
- Internal Medicine
- Neurology
- Cardiology
- Oncology
- Urology
- Orthopedics
- Pediatrics

The system is designed for follow-up expansion.

In addition to the initial operational settings for each probe preprogrammed in the system, user-customized parameter settings for each probe may be inserted by the operator and stored for recall as needed via the system control console. System configuration is stored on the hard drive and all necessary software is loaded from the hard drive on power up.

Biopsy guidelines are provided on screen to assist in the collection of tissue samples, using biopsy guide adapters offered as an optional accessory.

The system provides the ability to perform remote viewing of images without compression, via DICOM 3.0 compatible output. Management of patient history is possible by image-filing function. High-resolution images are provided by utilizing a technology called digital dynamic receive focusing.

For more detailed explanations of functions and controls refer to the Voluson Expert Series "Instructions for Use" manual.

5.1.1 Description of Operating Modes

5.1.1.1 B-Mode or 2D-Mode

B-Mode or 2D-mode is a two-dimensional image of the amplitude of the echo signal. It is used for location and measurement of anatomical structures and for spatial orientation during operation of other modes. In 2D-mode, a two-dimensional cross-section of a three-dimensional soft tissue structure such as the heart is displayed in real time. Ultrasound echoes of different intensities are mapped to different gray scale or color values in the display. The outline of the 2D cross-section may be a rectangle, parallelogram, sector or 360-degree circle, depending on the transducer used. 2D-mode can be used in combination with any other mode.

5.1.1.1.1 Coded Harmonic Imaging (HI)

In Harmonic Imaging, acoustic aberrations due to tissue are minimized by receiving and processing the second harmonic signal that is generated within the insonified tissue. Voluson Expert Series high performance HI provides superb detail resolution and penetration, outstanding contrast resolution, excellent acoustic clutter rejection and an easy to operate user interface. Coded Harmonics enhances near field resolution for improved small parts imaging as well as far field penetration. It diminishes low frequency amplitude noise and improves imaging technically difficult patients. It may be especially beneficial when imaging isoechoic lesions in shallow-depth anatomy in the breast, liver and hard-to-visualize fetal anatomy. Coded Harmonics may improve the B-Mode image quality without introducing a contrast agent.

5.1.1.1.2 XTD-View

XTD-View (Extended View) provides the ability to construct and view a static 2D image which is wider than the field of view of a given probe. This feature allows viewing and measurement of anatomy that is larger than what would fit in a single image. XTD-View constructs the extended image from individual image frames as the operator slides the probe along the surface of the skin in direction of the scan plane. Examples include scanning of vascular structures and connective tissues in the arms and legs.

5.1.1.1.3 B-Flow

5.1.1.1.4 Coded Contrast Imaging (optional)

For details see: [Section 5.1.2.7 "Coded Contrast Imaging" on page 5-11.](#)

5.1.1.1.5 Elastography (optional)

For details see: [Section 5.1.2.8 "Elastography" on page 5-12.](#)

5.1.1.2 M-Mode

In M-mode, soft tissue structure is presented as scrolling display, with depth on the Y-axis and time on the X-axis. It is used primarily for cardiac measurements such as valve timing on septal wall thickness when accurate timing information is required. M-mode is also known as T-M mode or time-motion mode. Ultrasound echoes of different intensities are mapped to different gray scale values in the display. M-mode displays time motion information of the ultrasound data derived from a stationary beam. Depth is arranged along the vertical axis with time along the horizontal axis. M-mode is normally used in conjunction with a 2D image for spatial reference. The 2D image has a graphical line (M-line) superimposed on the 2D image indicating where the M-mode beam is located.

5.1.1.2.1 MCFM Mode (M Mode + Color Flow Mode)

Color Flow Mode and Color M Mode are Doppler modes intended to add color-coded qualitative information concerning the relative velocity and direction of fluid motion within the 2D mode or M mode image. Color Flow overlays color on the M mode trace using velocity and variance color maps. The Color Flow wedge overlays the 2D mode image and M mode timeline.

5.1.1.3 Color Doppler Modes

Color Doppler is used to detect motion presented as a two-dimensional display. There are following applications of this technique:

- Color Flow Mode (C) - used to visualize blood flow velocity and direction
- Power Doppler (PD) - used to visualize the spatial distribution of blood
- Bi-Directional Angio (HD-Flow) - used to visualize flow direction with spatial resolution and low artifact visibility
- Tissue Doppler (TD) - used to visualize tissue motion direction and velocity

5.1.1.3.1 Color Flow Mode

A real-time two-dimensional cross-section image of blood flow is displayed. The 2D cross-section is presented as a full color display, with various colors being used to represent blood flow (velocity, variance, power and/or direction). Often, to provide spatial orientation, the full color blood flow cross-section is overlaid on top of the grayscale cross-section of soft tissue structure (2D echo). For each pixel in the overlay, the decision of whether to display color (Doppler), gray scale (echo) information or a blended combination is based on the relative strength of return echoes from the soft tissue structures and from the red blood cells. Blood velocity is the primary parameter used to determine the display colors, but power and variance may also be used. A high pass filter (wall filter) is used to remove the signals from stationary or slowly moving structures. Tissue motion is discriminated from blood flow by assuming that blood is moving faster than the surrounding tissue, although additional parameters may also be used to enhance the discrimination. Color flow can be used in combination with 2D and Spectral Doppler modes as well as with 3D mode.

5.1.1.3.2 Power Doppler

A real-time two-dimensional cross-section of blood flow is displayed. The 2D cross-section is presented as a full color display, with various colors being used to represent the power in blood flow echoes. Often, to provide spatial orientation, the full color blood flow cross-section is overlaid on top of the gray scale cross-section of soft tissue structure (2D echo). For each pixel in the overlay, the decision of whether to display color (Doppler power), gray scale (echo) information or a blended combination is based on the relative strength of return echoes from the soft-tissue structures and from the red blood cells. A high pass filter (wall filter) is used to remove the signals from stationary or slowly moving structures. Tissue motion is discriminated from blood flow by assuming that blood is moving faster than the surrounding tissue, although additional parameters may also be used to enhance the discrimination. The power in the remaining signal after wall filtering is then averaged over time (persistence) to present a steady state image of blood flow distribution. Power Doppler can be used in combination with 2D and Spectral Doppler modes as well as with 3D mode.

5.1.1.3.3 Bi-Directional Angio (HD-Flow Mode)

Directional Power Doppler is a Power Doppler mode incorporating the flow direction (much like Color Doppler) into the displayed image. The focus of the settings for Directional Power Doppler is for high spatial resolution and low artifact visibility, allowing vessels to be seen with less blooming and finer detail.

5.1.1.3.4 Tissue Doppler

The Tissue Color Doppler Imaging is used for color encoded evaluation of heart movements. The TD image provides information about tissue motion direction and velocity.

5.1.1.4 Pulsed (PW) Doppler

PW Doppler processing is one of two spectral Doppler modalities, the other being CW Doppler. In spectral Doppler, blood flow is presented as a scrolling display, with flow velocity on the Y-axis and time on the X-axis. The presence of spectral broadening indicates turbulent flow, while the absence of spectral broadening indicates laminar flow. PW Doppler provides real time spectral analysis of pulsed Doppler signals. This information describes the Doppler shifted signal from the moving reflectors in the sample volume. PW Doppler can be used alone but is normally used in conjunction with a 2D image with an M-line and sample volume marker superimposed on the 2-D image indicating the position of the Doppler sample volume. The sample volume size and location are specified by the operator. Sample volume can be overlaid by a flow direction cursor which is aligned, by the operator, with the direction of flow in the vessel, thus determining the Doppler angle. This allows the spectral display to be calibrated in flow velocity (m/sec.) as well as frequency (Hz). PW Doppler also provides the capability of performing spectral analysis at a selectable depth and sample volume size. PW Doppler can be used in combination with 2D and Color Flow modes.

5.1.1.5 3D Imaging

The Voluson Expert Series Ultrasound System will be used to acquire multiple, sequential 2D images which can be combined to reconstruct a three-dimensional image. These 3D images are useful in visualizing three-dimensional structures, and in understanding the spatial or temporal relationships between the images in the 2D sequence. The 3D image is presented using standard visualization techniques, such as surface or volume rendering.

5.1.1.6 3D Data Collection and Reconstruction

2D gray scale images including Color Flow or Power Doppler information may be reconstructed. The acquisition of volume data sets is performed by sweeping 2D-scans with special transducers (called 3D-transducers) designed for the 2D-scans and the 3D-sweep.

2D ultrasound imaging modes are used to view two dimensional cross-sections of parts of the body. For example, in 2D gray scale imaging, a two-dimensional cross-section of a three-dimensional soft-tissue structure such as the heart is displayed in real time. Typically, the user of an ultrasound machine manipulates the position and orientation of this 2D cross-section in real time during an ultrasound exam.

By changing the position of the cross-section, a variety of views of the underlying structure are obtained, and these views can be used to understand a three-dimensional structure in the body.

To complete survey a three-dimensional structure in the body, it is necessary to collect 2D images which span a volume containing the structure. One way is to sweep the imaging cross-section by translating it in a direction perpendicular to the cross-section. Another example method is to rotate the cross section about a line contained in the cross section. The Voluson Expert Series Ultrasound System uses the automated so called C-Scan for the motion perpendicular to automated B-scan. Once a representative set of 2D cross-sections are obtained, standard reconstruction techniques can be used to construct other 2D cross-sections, or to view the collection of the cross-sections as a 3D image.

5.1.1.7 3D Image Presentation

Several techniques can be used to aid the human observer in understanding the resulting 2D image as a representation of a three-dimensional object. One is to rotate the volume of data and present the resulting sequence of 2D projections to the observer. The changing direction of observation helps the observer to separate the features in the volume according to their distance from the observer.

5.1.1.8 3D Rendering

The 3D (volume) rendering is a calculation process to visualize certain 3D-structures of a scanned volume by means of a 2D-image. The gray value for each pixel of the 2D-image is calculated from the voxels along the corresponding projection path (analyzing beam) through the volume. The render (calculation) algorithm, surface or transparent mode, determines how 3D-structures are visualized.

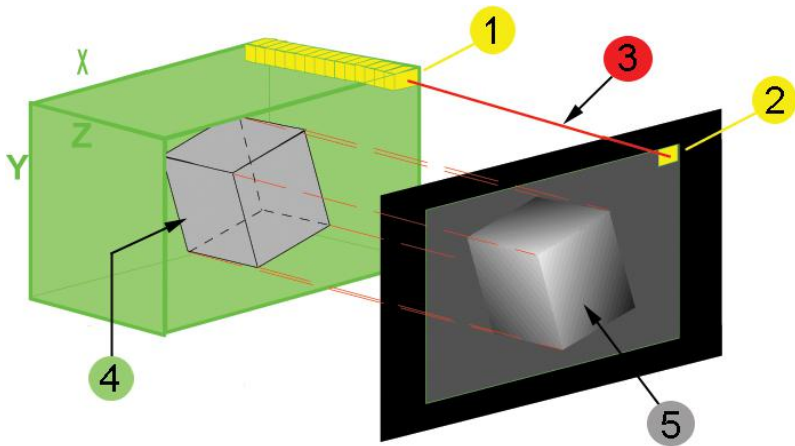


Figure 5-3: Principle: Volume Rendering

1	Voxel	3	Projection Way	5	2D - Display
2	Pixel	4	Volume - Block		

5.1.2 Description of Software Options

To activate the (purchasable) software options:

1. Select the **Home** button at the Left Toolbar.
2. In the "Home" menu touch the **System Setup** button to invoke the setup desktop on the screen.
3. Select **Administration** and then click the **Options** tab.



It might be possible that some probes, options or features are NOT available

- in some countries.
- at the time of release of this Service Manual.

Table 5-1: Software Options at

HCat #	Software Option	Description	Expert 22
-	Advanced 4D (incl. Real time 4D, RT-4D Biopsy, VCI "Basic" and TUI)	<i>"Advanced 4D"</i>	S
-	HD/live Silhouette	<i>"HDlive Silhouette"</i>	S
-	HD/live Studio	<i>"HDlive Studio"</i>	S
-	VOCAL II	<i>"VOCAL II - Virtual Organ Computer-aided Analysis"</i>	S
H48681FP	Advanced VCI (VCI OmniView)	<i>"Advanced VCI"</i>	2
H48681FT	Contrast Imaging	<i>"Coded Contrast Imaging"</i>	X
H48681FX	SonoAVC	<i>"SonoAVC - Sono Automated Volume Count"</i>	1
H48681FY	SonoVCAD labor	<i>"SonoVCAD labor"</i>	1
-	Anatomical M-Mode	<i>"Anatomical M-Mode (AMM)"</i>	S
H48681GD	Advanced STIC (incl. Basic STIC, STIC M-Mode and STIC flow) + SonoVCAD heart	<i>"Advanced STIC (Spatio-Temporal Image Correlation)"</i>	2
H48681GB	Elastography (incl. Elastography Analysis)	<i>"Elastography"</i>	X
H48711CY	V-SRI	<i>"V-SRI Advanced - Speckle Reduction Imaging"</i>	3
-	SonoCNS	<i>"SonoCNS"</i>	R
-	Slowflow	<i>"Slowflow"</i>	R
-	Radiantflow	<i>"Radiantflow"</i>	S
-	IETA	<i>"IETA (Internal Endometrial Tumor Analysis)"</i>	R
-	IDEA	<i>"IDEA (International Deep Endometriosis Analysis)"</i>	R
H48701WN	fetalHQ	<i>"fetalHQ"</i>	X
H48711PT	fetalHQ2	<i>"fetalHQ"</i>	X
H48711EE	Shearwave Elastography	<i>"Shearwave Elastography"</i>	R
H48711NZ	SonoLyst	<i>"SonoLyst"</i>	X
H48711PA	SonoPelvicFloor	<i>"SonoPelvicFloor"</i>	X
HVOL1DM	AVURI subscription for 1 year	<i>"AVURI Device Management"</i>	R
HVOL2DM	AVURI subscription for 3 years	<i>"AVURI Device Management"</i>	R
H48711NW ED	Voluson Expert SW eDelivery	<i>"eDelivery (Software Download)"</i>	R
H48691YA	e4D Advanced Features (eM6C incl. eSTIC)	<i>"e4D Advanced Features"</i>	X
H48691NZ	CW-Doppler	<i>"CW - Continuous Wave Doppler"</i>	X
-	DVD and USB Recorder	<i>"DVD and USB Recorder"</i>	S
H48711KH	Voluson Remote Updates	<i>"Voluson Remote Updates"</i>	X

HCat #	Software Option	Description	Expert 22
H48701WM	Advanced Security Features (incl. Disk Encryption and Whitelisting)	<i>"Advanced Security Features"</i>	X
H48691KG	RLS Option	Russian Language Support	X
-	IOTA LR2	<i>"IOTA (International Ovarian Tumor Analysis)"</i>	R
-	IOTA Simple Rules	<i>"IOTA (International Ovarian Tumor Analysis)"</i>	R
-	IOTA ADNEX	<i>"IOTA (International Ovarian Tumor Analysis)"</i>	R
S48711KA	Service Advanced	Service Advanced Access	X

Legend:

X Optional Feature (separately purchasable)

- not available

S Standard Feature, S* can be used in 3D-Mode, but for 4D-Modes "Advanced 4D" has to be active as well

1 this 3D/4D option can be used in 3D-Mode, but for 4D-Modes "Advanced 4D" has to be active as well

2 this 4D option is **only available if "Advanced" 4D is active** as well

3 only with probe RIC5-9-D, RIC6-12-D

R restricted, not yet released in all countries. Contact Sales & Marketing in your region for information on availability.

5.1.2.1 Advanced 4D

5.1.2.1.1 Real Time 4D

Real Time 4D mode is obtained through continuous volume acquisition and parallel calculation of 3D rendered images. In Real Time 4D mode the volume acquisition box is at the same time the render box. All information in the volume box is used for the render process. In Real Time 4D mode a "frame rate" of up to 40 volumes/second is possible. By freezing the acquired volumes, size can be adjusted, manipulated manually as known from the Voluson 3D Mode.

5.1.2.1.2 Real Time 4D Biopsy

For minimal invasive procedures like biopsies, ultrasound is a widely used method to visualize and guide the needle during puncture. The advantage in comparison with other imaging methods is the real-time display, quick availability and easy access to any desired region of the patient. 4D biopsy allows for real time control of the biopsy needle in 3D multi-planar display during the puncture. The user is able to see the region of interest in three perpendicular planes (longitudinal, transversal and frontal section) and can guide the biopsy needle accurately into the center of the lesion.

5.1.2.1.3 VCI - Volume Contrast Imaging

Volume Contrast Imaging utilizes 4D transducers to automatically scan multiple adjacent slices and delivers a real-time display of the ROI. This image results from a special rendering mode consisting of texture and transparency information. VCI improves the contrast resolution and therefore facilitates finding of diffuse lesions in organs. VCI has more information (from multiple slices) and is of advantage in gaining contrast due to improved signal/noise ratio.

Static VCI is a part of the VCI option, which allow to apply the contrast enhancing VCI method to 3D data sets after the acquisition.

5.1.2.1.4 T.U.I. - Tomographic Ultrasound Imaging

TUI is a new visualization mode for 3D and 4D data sets. The data is presented as slices through the data set which are parallel to each other. An overview image, which is orthogonal to the parallel slices, shows which parts of the volume are displayed in the parallel planes. This method of visualization is consistent with the way other medical systems such as CT or MRI, present the data to the user. The distance between the different planes can be adjusted to the requirements of the given data set. In addition it is possible to set the number of planes. The planes and the overview image can also be printed to a DICOM printer, for easier comparison of the ultrasound data with CT and/or MRI data.

5.1.2.2 HD//ive

Most current surface reconstructions use an illumination frontal to the rendered object. This can cause the image to look flat. HD//ive Rendering uses an illumination source that can be positioned by the user around the rendered 3D object on a spherical surface. By highlighting structures from the side, the three-dimensional impression is improved considerably.

5.1.2.3 HD//ive Silhouette

HD//ive Silhouette is an enhancement of the currently available "*HDlive*" Surface Rendering feature. The position of the virtual light source may be altered to get a natural display with an optimized depth impression.

To improve the impression even more, ***Silhouette*** (emphasizes the contours of surface structures), ***Light Brightness*** (adjusts the brightness of the light source) and ***Shadow Softness*** (varies the shadow softness/contrast) can be adapted.

5.1.2.4 HD//ive Studio

HD//ive Studio offers three independent light sources with three different light types (directional, point, spot) and contains a special render function to visualize the amniotic fluid. The "Light Menu" enables the user to switch the different light sources on/off, to select light types, change positions of the light sources and to define and use complete sets of adjustments with preset buttons.

The light source positions are indicated with the help of a graphical icon situated in the right lower corner of the rendered 3D or 4D image.

5.1.2.5 VOCAL II - Virtual Organ Computer-aided Analysis

Diagnosis and therapy of cancer is one of the most important issues in medical care. The VOCAL II - Imaging program allows completely new possibilities in cancer diagnosis, therapy planning and follow-up therapy control.

VOCAL II offers additional functions:

- Manual or Semi-automatic Contour detection of structures (such as tumor lesion, cyst, prostate, etc.) and subsequent volume calculation. The accuracy of the process can be visually controlled by the examiner in multi-planar display.
- Construction of a virtual shell around the contour of the lesion. The wall thickness of the shell can be defined. The shell can be imagined as a layer of tissue around the lesion, where the tumor vascularization takes place.
- Automatic calculation of the vascularization within the shell by 3D color histogram by comparing the number of color voxels to the number of grayscale voxels.

5.1.2.6 Advanced VCI

5.1.2.6.1 VCI Omni View - Volume Contrast Imaging (any plane)

More flexibility with Any Plane, VCI plane is freely selectable. Any shape can be drawn. Volumes from older BT's can be loaded and edited with VCI Omni View without any limitations.

- Volumes can be edited in all other Visualization Modes.
- Dual Format is now also possible in Render Mode and Sectional Planes Mode.
- VCI slice thickness can be set to zero.

5.1.2.7 Coded Contrast Imaging

Injected contrast agents re-emit incident acoustic energy at a harmonic frequency much more efficiently than the surrounding tissue. Blood containing the contrast agent stands out brightly against a dark background of normal tissue. Possible clinical uses are to detect and characterize tumors of the liver, kidney and pancreas and to enhance flow signals in the determination of stenosis or thrombus.

5.1.2.8 Elastography

Elastography refers to the measurement of elastic properties of tissues, based on the well-established principle that malignant tissue is harder than benign tissue.

Elastography shows the spatial distribution of tissue elasticity properties in a region of interest by estimating the strain before and after tissue distortion caused by external or internal forces. The strain estimation is filtered and scaled to provide a smooth presentation when displayed.

During scanning in the elastography mode, the examiner manually slightly compresses the tissue using the ultrasound probe. A strain correlation (strain is the deformation of the tissue by compression) is continuously performed for visual perception on the monitor.

5.1.2.8.1 Elastography Analysis

A selectable sequence of Elastography images are analyzed within a ROI (range of interest). The Strain % or the Elasticity Index is displayed as curves over the time.

The mean value of the Strain % is measured within 1 or more ROI's and Ratios are calculated. "Generic Elasto" measurements are located in the generic measurement menu and are only available if "Elastography" is activated.

5.1.2.9 SonoVCAD *heart* - Comp. Assisted Heart Diagnosis

VCAD is a technology that automatically generates a number of views of the fetal heart to make diagnosis easier. At this time it can help to find the right and left outflow tract of the heart and the fetal stomach.

5.1.2.10 SonoAVC - Sono Automated Volume Count

This feature can automatically detect low echogenic objects (e.g., follicles) in a volume of an organ (e.g., ovary) and analyze their shape and volume. From the calculated volume an average diameter can be calculated. It also lists the objects according to their size.

- Each object can be calculated automatically.
- A description name can be defined for each object up to 10 descriptions. With the "Add to Report" button all values of the measured objects can be sent to the worksheet. Also the description name will be sent.
- The description name can be edited in the worksheet.
- If the number button is activated, all objects are assigned a number inside the displayed object according to the measurement index.
- Group function: All objects will be added to one volume. The color of all objects will be changed to red and the measurement will show only one result.

5.1.2.11 SonoVCAD *labor*

Allows the user to measure fetal progression during the second stage of labor – fetal head progression, rotation and direction. Visual evidence and objective data of the labor process are provided.

All SonoVCAD *labor* measurements (Head direction, Midline Angle, Progression Distance, Progression Angle and associated acquisition time) are automatically added to the worksheet as soon as they are performed. Only one measurement result is available for each measurement type. If the measurement is repeated, the old result is replaced by the new result.

If a volume is deleted, the according measurements are not deleted from the worksheet.

SonoVCAD *labor* measurement data can be transferred via DICOM SR.

5.1.2.12 Anatomical M-Mode (AMM)

Anatomical M-Mode displays a distance/time plot from a cursor line, which can be defined freely. The M-Mode display changes according to the motion of the M cursor. In the Dual format, two defined distances can be displayed at the same time.

AMM is available in grayscale and color modes (CF, HD Flow, TD)

- simultaneous Display of 2 M-Mode Cursors in 2D Mode
- each Cursor is freely rotatable
- can be done after Freeze and on reloaded Cine

5.1.2.13 Advanced STIC (Spatio-Temporal Image Correlation)

5.1.2.13.1 STIC "Basic" (Spatio-Temporal Image Correlation)

With this acquisition method the fetal heart or an artery can be visualized in 4D. It is not a Real Time 4D technique, but a post processed 3D acquisition.

In order to archive a good result, try to adjust the size of the volume box and the sweep angle to be as small as possible. The longer the acquisition time, the better the spatial resolution will be. A good STIC / STIC +color data set shows a regular and synchronous pumping of the fetal heart or of an artery.

The user must be sure that there is minimal movement of the participating persons (e.g., mother and fetus), and that the probe is held absolutely still throughout the acquisition period. Movement will cause a failure of the acquisition. The acquired images are post processed to calculate a 4D Volume Cine sequence. Please make sure that the borders of the fetal heart or the artery are smooth and there are no sudden discontinuities. If the user (trained operator) clearly recognizes a disturbance during the acquisition period, the acquisition has to be cancelled.

- STIC - Fetal Cardio is only available on RAB & RIC probes in the OB/GYN application.
- STIC - Vascular is only available on the RSP probe in the Peripheral Vascular application.

5.1.2.13.2 STIC M-Mode

Creates a M-spectrum from a STIC acquisition (capture of a full fetal heart cycle in real-time saved as a volume for later analysis). After activating STIC M-Mode the STIC cine is running and the STIC M-spectrum will be shown. In STIC-M all M-Measurements are possible. Furthermore the M-cursor is available as a freeform line type.

- can be done in A, B or C Plane and can be done postprocessing
- possibility to perform measurements for evaluation of ventricle contraction
- possibility to easily detect End Systole and End Diastole for ventricular measurements

5.1.2.13.3 STIC flow

Clinical application and advantage:

The STIC function, that is generally used to display high flow velocities at the heart, is now used to represent slow flow (tumor blood circulation) of vessels over the time. One of the objectives is, to display ovarian tumors (which are frequently found in GYN applications), to observe them over the time and consequently visualize them in 4D and/or evaluate them via histogram.

Function:

Similar to STIC Cardio-acquisitions, a volume sweep is made of the lesion. Afterwards the computer displays the heart rate and vessels in multiplanar view and/or visualizes it in 4D

5.1.2.14 SRI Advanced - Speckle Reduction Imaging

A type of image noise or interference is generally considered undesirable and can obscure the quality or interpretation of B-mode images. Although somewhat associated with the underlying echogenicity of tissue scatters, image speckle characteristics such as brightness, density or size have no apparent value in determining tissue structure or related properties. The elimination of or significant reduction in speckle improves the quality or diagnostic potential of the image. The method applied in the subject modification utilizes a nonlinear diffusion filtering technique that permits effective speckle reduction in real time. The speckle reduction filter is available to the user in all B-mode imaging, independent of the used probe.

5.1.2.15 V-SRI Advanced - Speckle Reduction Imaging

V-SRI is an enhancement of the existing SRI algorithms and improves specially the C-plane image. This new algorithm (from Context Vision) is used in the A-, B-, C-planes and rendered images instead of the conventional SRI.

Note *The "V-SRI" option is only available at systems with probe RM6C, RIC5-9-D and RIC6-12-D.*

5.1.2.16 SonoCNS

SonoCNS is a method to examine the fetal Central Nervous System (CNS) based on acquired 3D/4D ultrasound volumes. The tool provides the user with a view of the TV (Transventricular), TC (Transcerebellar), TT (Transthalamic) and MS (Mid-sagittal) plane. The required volume can be newly acquired, re-loaded from the archive, or extracted from a 4D cine.

5.1.2.17 Slowflow

In blood flow detection a typical issue is the corruption of the data with low-frequency tissue motion (clutter). Thus, in traditional Color- and Power Doppler technologies, the low-frequency components are suppressed by the Wall-Motion-Filter (WMF). The suppression of the low-frequency tissue components also causes a suppression of low-frequency flow components. To overcome this issue, a feasible separation between tissue motion and blood flow has to be applied. SlowFlow is able to suppress the low-frequency clutter motion while preserving the flow information.

Note *Slowflow is probe dependent.*

5.1.2.18 Radiantflow

Radiantflow enhances sensitivity and improves artifact suppression to show better vessel separation & 3D like effect in Color Mode.



Radiantflow is a display method which uses the amplitude of the Color flow signal. Note that this may alter the appearance of the Ultrasound information displayed. For diagnostic purposes, this must be taken into account, or the Region of Interest must be checked without Radiantflow.

Note *Radiantflow is probe and application dependent.*

5.1.2.19 IETA (Internal Endometrial Tumor Analysis)

IETA Worksheet for application GYN. Two IETA models are available.

5.1.2.20 IDEA (International Deep Endometriosis Analysis)

The IDEA (International Deep Endometriosis Analysis group) statement worksheet for application GYN may be used to describe the sonographic features of the different phenotypes of endometriosis and in particular for deep infiltrating endometriosis (DIE).

5.1.2.21 *fetaHQ*

fetaHQ is a post processing tool from TOMTEC™ embedded in the software.

5.1.2.22 Shearwave Elastography

Shearwave Elastography on the Voluson Expert Series system is an ultrasound imaging mode in which shear waves are generated in-vivo acoustically via the imaging ultrasound transducer. The motion of the shear waves is then tracked using ultrasound to determine their velocity of propagation, which is a quantifiable indicator of the mechanical properties of the tissue through which it traveled.



Do not use Shear Elasto in case of pregnancy.

Note *Shear Elasto is probe and application dependent.*

5.1.2.23 SonoLyst

SonoLyst uses AI technology to analyze images in real time via plane recognition.

5.1.2.24 SonoPelvicFloor

The SonoPelvicFloor tool is a guided tool for Pelvic Floor examination.

It provides the user with the coronal plane of the pelvic floor to recognize malformations or other anatomical variants and relevant measurements on the MHD plane.

5.1.2.25 AVURI Device Management

AVURI Device Management is a cloud-based preset and backup management solution which allows users to store, view, restore and push Voluson Expert Series system-related configurations to the GE Healthcare secure cloud and back to the system.

It includes an optional one- or three-year subscription and may be renewed after expiration.

5.1.2.26 eDelivery (Software Download)

Software Extension releases are made available to end users who are entitled for eDelivery and installation by purchasing this option. The "Software Download" icon (↓ green arrow at right top of the screen) pops-up whenever a new "Software Update Package" is available.

End users can then download the SW package using their browser and start the automated installation whenever desired.

Note *A proper connection between the Voluson Expert Series system and the SW download server is required.*

5.1.2.27 e4D Advanced Features

After entering an encrypted Software Option string (password) it is possible to use the electronic 4D Matrix-Probe eM6C with all the advanced features such as Bi-Plane Mode and eSTIC.

Note *The "e4D Advances Features" option is only available at Voluson Expert 22 systems.*

5.1.2.27.1 eSTIC

The intended use and workflow of the eSTIC acquisition mode is the same as the standard STIC mode but with the advantage of a faster acquisition time.

5.1.2.28 CW - Continuous Wave Doppler

CW Doppler mode provides real time spectral analysis of CW Doppler signals. This information describes the Doppler shifted signal from the moving reflectors in the CW Doppler beam. CW Doppler can be referenced through a small pencil probe or phased array scan head, but it can also be used in conjunction with a 2D image which has an M-line superimposed on the 2D image indicating the position of the Doppler sample volume. For through-the-beamformer CW, this beam is steerable by the operator, and is done by adjusting the location of the M-line. The CW Doppler beam, or M-mode line, can be steered allowing interrogation along an operator-selected line within the image.

5.1.2.29 DVD and USB Recorder

After entering an encrypted Software Option string (password) it is possible to record Ultrasound data on DVD or an USB device. Videos are created in .mp4 file format.

5.1.2.30 Voluson Remote Updates

By means of the optional "Voluson Remote Updates" feature vital updates (e.g., patches) can be remotely downloaded and installed to Voluson Expert Series systems.

Note *A proper connection between the Voluson Expert Series system and the update server is required.*

5.1.2.31 Disk Encryption

Disk Encryption enables an encryption to secure all Patient Data, Patient Images and corresponding measurements. A password, an USB storage device with unlock key, or the recovery key is required to unlock the device during the boot-up process.

Note *Any data stored on internal HDDs D:\ partition is encrypted by using BitLocker configured with AES 256-bits key length.*



Caution

Without the Encryption Password, the Recovery Key or USB device with unlock key it will not be possible to access the Ultrasound device including emergency mode, scanning, patient information, images, or local archive. GE has no access to this information or the ability to undo encryption in the event that the Encryption Password and Recovery Key are lost. The security and safety of the Encryption Password and Recovery Key is solely the user's responsibility.

Note *A Voluson Expert Series system without the option but with encrypted disk is unlockable.*

Note *Disk Encryption is part of the "Advanced Security Features" option.*

5.1.2.32 Advanced Security Features

The "Advanced Security Features" option consists of two vulnerability protection features:

- *"Disk Encryption" on page 5-16*
- *"Whitelisting" on page 5-16*

5.1.2.32.1 Whitelisting

Whitelisting prevents the Voluson Expert Series system from installing unwanted software. It monitors all applications/services if they are known and accepted (white-listed). Any application/service that is not known on the system creates an error message on the screen.

Note *"Whitelisting" is part of the "Advanced Security Features" option.*

5.1.2.33 IOTA (International Ovarian Tumor Analysis)



Caution

An IOTA model (LR2, Simple Rules or ADNEX) should not be used without an independent clinical evaluation and is not intended to be a screening test or to determine whether a patient should proceed to surgery. Incorrect use of an IOTA model carries the risk of unnecessary testing, surgery, and/or delayed diagnosis.

Note

IOTA states that use outside of the intended population can overestimate risk. Users are expected to study the literature and reach their own professional conclusions regarding the clinical utility of the tool. The model cannot replace experience in ultrasonography and cannot compensate for poor quality ultrasound equipment.

If more than one IOTA option (i.e., IOTA LR2, IOTA Simple Rules, IOTA ADNEX) is available, it is possible to configure the measure setup which worksheet is displayed.

General Electric is passing on this IOTA worksheets (LR2, Simple Rules or ADNEX) for your convenience based on published literature of one group but makes no representation of its effectiveness in your practice. This calculation is not to be used as the primary driver in diagnostic decision making on the probability of malignancy. It is secondary information for a physician to use based on recent literature.

IOTA LR2

The IOTA (International Ovarian Tumor Analysis) LR2 Worksheet contains an ovary measurement tool for women with adnexal tumors that have been selected to undergo surgery. The LR2 model is based on published literature and has been tested only on the stated population. The literature states that the LR2 model can help to estimate the probability of an adnexal mass of being malignant. The IOTA group has evaluated other ways including an LR1 model in addition to the LR2 model.

The IOTA mathematical logistic regression model, LR2 is stated in literature as described in the Advanced Reference Manual - Chapter IOTA.

IOTA Simple Rules

Simple rules algorithm for ovarian tumor risk evaluation in addition to already cleared LR2 model.

The IOTA Simple Rules Worksheet contains a preoperative classification system for ovarian tumors consisting of five features typical for benign tumors (B-features) and five features typical for malignant tumors (M-features).



Caution

User of IOTA Simple Rules should have specific experience on how to use the program and be familiar with the IOTA terminology. Relevant information on the use of IOTA Simple Rules is available at www.iotagroup.org.

The IOTA Simple Rules model is stated in literature as described in the Advanced Reference Manual.

IOTA ADNEX

The IOTA ADNEX model can be used by medical doctors to diagnose ovarian cancer in women who have at least one persistent adnexal (ovarian, para-ovarian, and tubal) tumor and are considered to require surgery. The IOTA ADNEX model estimates the probability that an adnexal tumor is benign, borderline, stage I cancer, stage II-IV cancer, or secondary metastatic cancer (i.e. metastasis of non-adnexal cancer to the ovary).



Caution

Users of IOTA ADNEX should have specific experience on how to use the program and be familiar with the IOTA terminology. Relevant information on the use of IOTA ADNEX is available at www.iotagroup.org/sites/default/files/Van_Calster_BMJ_2014_ADNEX.pdf.

The IOTA ADNEX model is stated in literature as described in the Advanced Reference Manual.

5.1.2.34 CW - Continuous Wave Doppler

CW Doppler mode provides real time spectral analysis of CW Doppler signals. This information describes the Doppler shifted signal from the moving reflectors in the CW Doppler beam. CW Doppler can be referenced through a small pencil probe or phased array scan head, but it can also be used in conjunction with a 2D image which has an M-line superimposed on the 2D image indicating the position of the Doppler sample volume. For through-the-beamformer CW, this beam is steerable by the operator, and is done by adjusting the location of the M-line. The CW Doppler beam, or M-mode line, can be steered allowing interrogation along an operator-selected line within the image.

5.1.3 Data Location

The Voluson Expert Series Hard disk is divided into 4 partitions:

C: System partition:

- Operating System (Windows)10 including all Windows settings (IP-address, Network Name, etc.)
- US-Application Software (UISAPP)
- Global Service Platform Software
- Software Options

D: User partition:

- User Presets (Backup) database
- Images (Archive), Patient-ID's and Reports database
- Service database
- System settings database

R: Rescue partition:

- Factory Images of C: Partition for System recovery after HDD (Windows) crash
- Printer Drivers

LINUX partition: (not visible in Windows)

- Linux operating system for rescue functionality

5.2 FrontEnd Processor

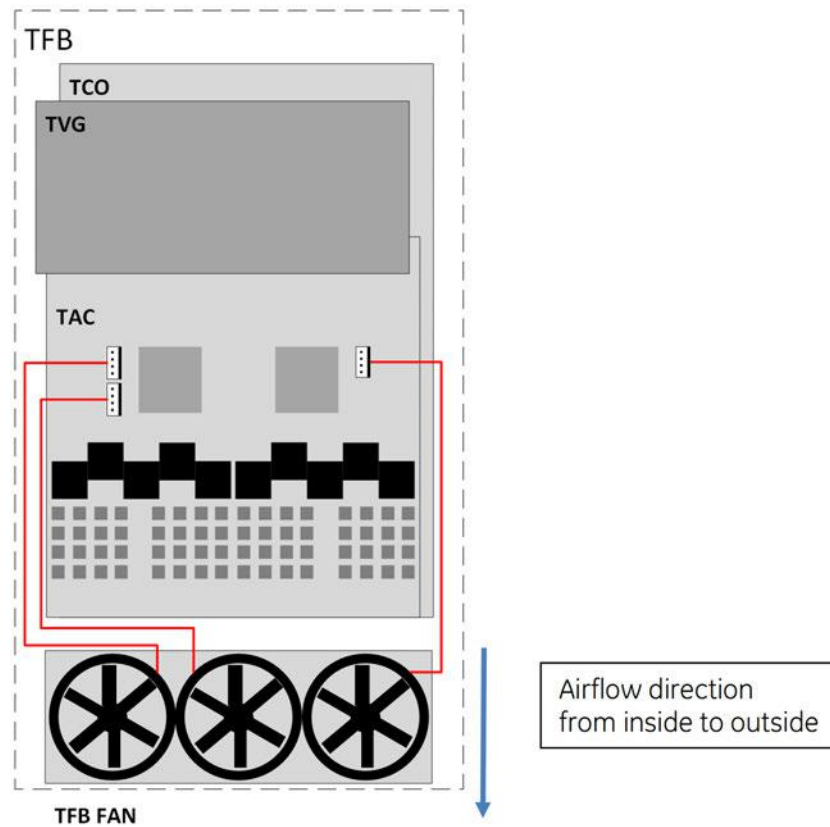


Figure 5-4: FrontEnd - Block diagram

Content in this chapter

<i>5.2.1 TCO - Connector Board</i>	<i>5-20</i>
<i>5.2.2 TAC - Acquisition Board</i>	<i>5-20</i>
<i>5.2.3 TVG - Voltage Generator Board</i>	<i>5-20</i>

5.2.1 TCO - Connector Board

Switches the Probe Connectors and recognizes Probes

- 4 Probe Connectors 408pin
- Probe Select Relays
- Probe Recognition

5.2.2 TAC - Acquisition Board

The FrontEnd Acquisition Board supports Tx/Rx for 192/256 channels.

5.2.2.1 TAC Board - Interface Tasks

1. DMA logic
2. Beamformer Interface
3. TAC Control Interface
4. TAC FPGA Control Interface

5.2.2.2 TAC Board - Processing Tasks

1. Ultrasound Data Pre-Processing
2. System Control
3. Motor Control

5.2.3 TVG - Voltage Generator Board

The voltage generator board generates the ultrasound system specific voltages.

5.3 BackEnd Processor

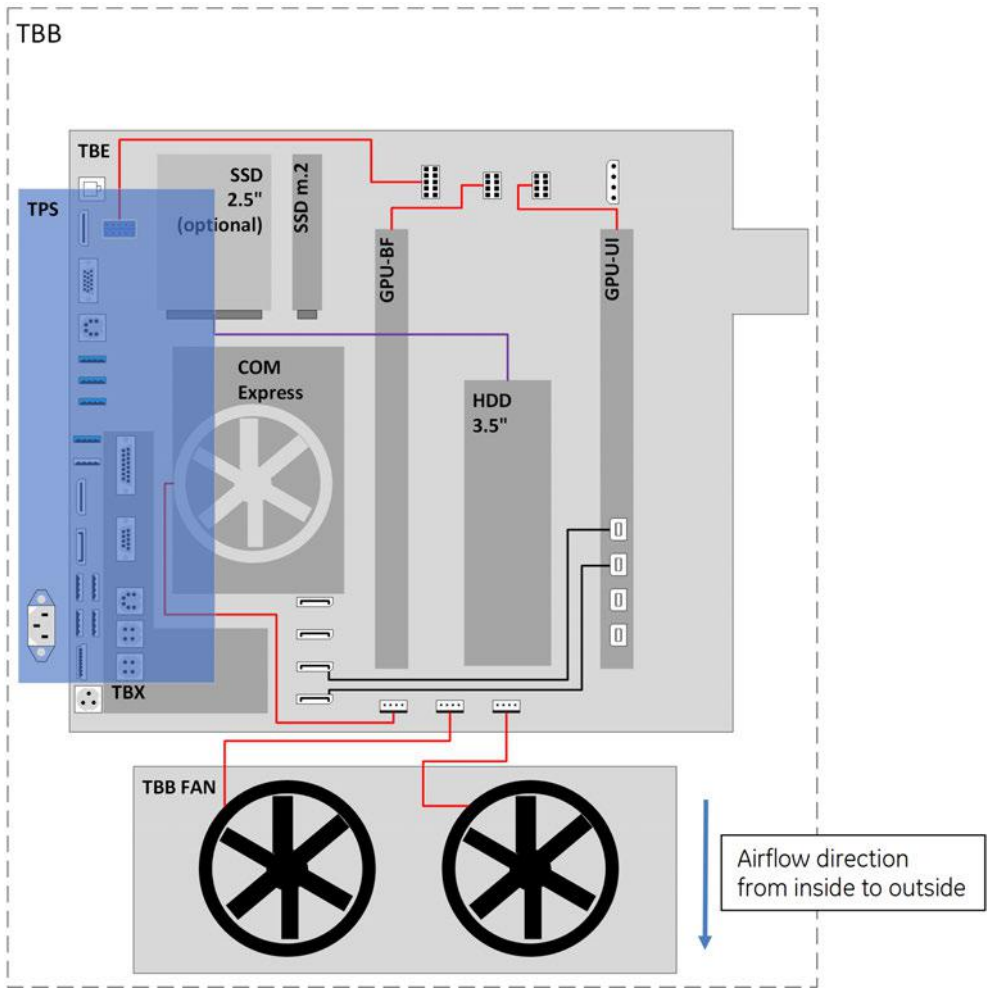


Figure 5-5: BackEnd - Block diagram

Content in this chapter

5.3.1 TBE - Backend Carrier Board (Base Board) -	5-22
5.3.2 TBX - Extension Board -	5-22
5.3.3 COM Express Module -	5-22
5.3.4 Hard Disk Drive (HDD) -	5-22
5.3.5 M.2 Solid-State Drive (M.2 SSD) -	5-22
5.3.6 Graphic Card -	5-22

5.3.1 TBE - Backend Carrier Board (Base Board)

Built in or external Components:

- COM-Express (Computer on Module with CPU, Memory, Audio and USB-Root Hub)
- Graphic cards (GPU-BF and GPU-UI)
- PCIe Switch
- M.2 SSD for operation system
- HDD for patient data
- Audio-Amplifier
- Video splitter and scaler
- MCU for monitoring and bootup sequence

Cores Major Tasks:

- System Control
- Connections to User Interface, Frontend, Peripherals and external connectivity

5.3.2 TBX - Extension Board

Built in or external Components:

- Electronic switch and fuse for User Interface (TUI)
- Electronic switch and fuse for Lift (TLC)
- Electronic switch and fuse for Peripherals such as Printer and Trolley Lighting Unit (TLU)

Cores Major Tasks:

- Power distribution and monitoring

5.3.3 COM Express Module

Built in or external Components:

- LAN
- USB 2.0
- USB 3.0
- CPU: 2.5GHz (max. 4.2GHz)
- Memory (2x 8GB)
- Active cooling

Cores Major Tasks:

- System Control

5.3.4 Hard Disk Drive (HDD)

The Hard Disk is the main storage device of the Voluson Expert Series system for patient data.

For further details see [Section 5.1.3 "Data Location" on page 5-18](#)

5.3.5 M.2 Solid-State Drive (M.2 SSD)

The M.2. SSD (120/128GB) is the storage for the operating system of the Voluson Expert Series system.

5.3.6 Graphic Card

The Voluson E-Series system has two Graphic Cards installed. Their scope of application is different.

Graphic Card GPU-BF

Provides processing capacity to perform software-beamforming.

Graphic Card GPU-UI

Renders 2D, 3D and 4D images as well as the complete user interface for all displays (Touchscreen, Main Monitor and external outputs).

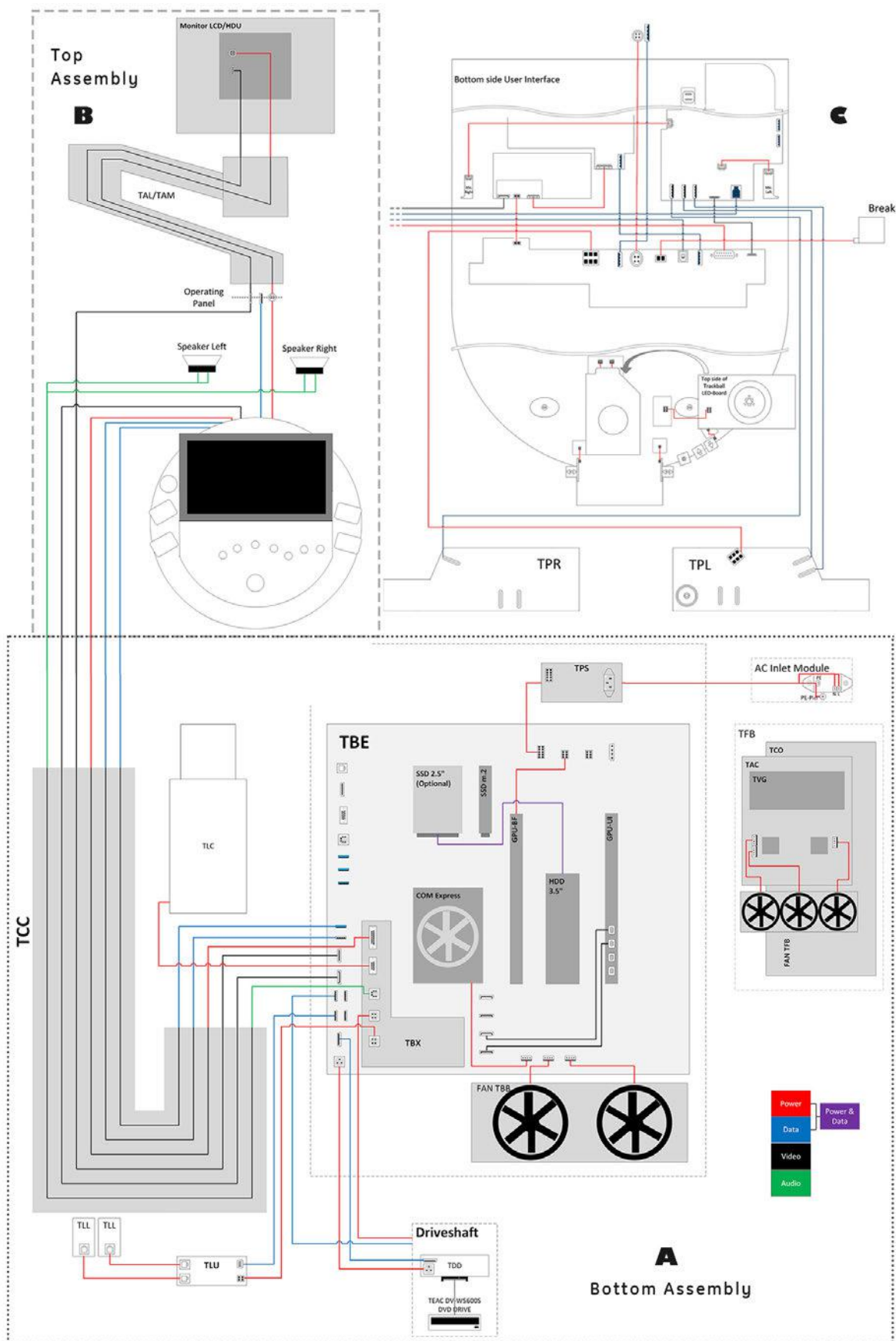
5.4 Internal I/O

Note *The “Mainboard type” can be read out in the System Setup - Administration - SYSTEM INFO page (see Figure 7-1 on page 7-3).*

Content in this chapter

<i>5.4.1 Internal I/O Voluson Expert Series EC400</i>	<i>----- 5-24</i>
---	-------------------

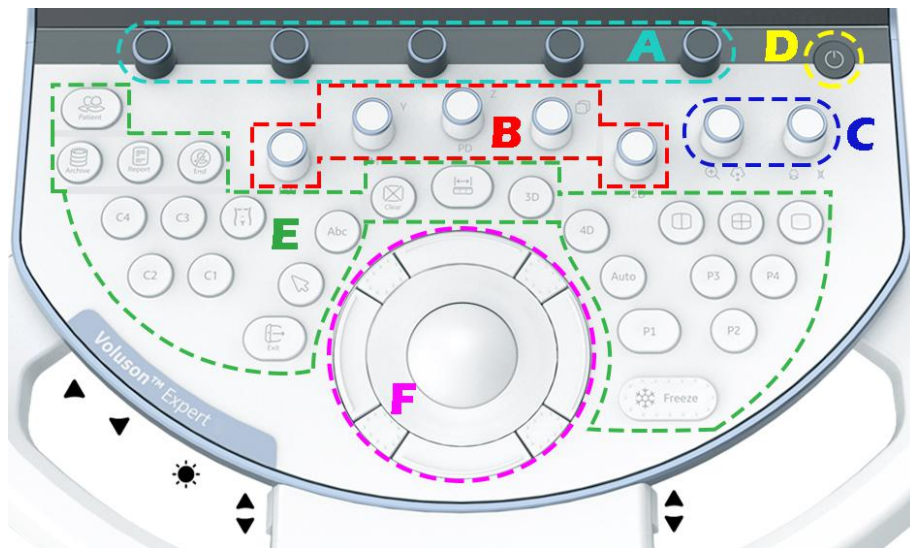
5.4.1 Internal I/O Voluson Expert Series EC400



5.5 Control Console (User Interface)

The Voluson Expert Series control console (User Interface) consists of the following electronic sub-assemblies and/or functional components:

- TUI-Touch-Display Unit:
 - The Full HD Display (1920 x 1080 pixels / ratio 16:9) connects to the Backend Carrier Board TBE with a DisplayPort connector.
 - 15.6" capacitive multi-touch screen
 - There are 2 Microphones, one on each side of the TUI-Touch-Display-Unit.
 - 3.0 Hub (USB 3.0 PCB-module)
 - * 2 user-accessible USB 3.0 Type C connector ports on the back side of the TUI-Display-Unit
 - * 2 user-accessible USB 3.0 Type A connector ports on the left
- Front Panel Unit:
 - **Power On/Off** button to boot up / shut down the Voluson Expert Series system.
 - Extended Keyboard (Mainboard) with a 7 port USB 2.0 Hub and an Extended Keyboard Controller coordinating encoders, joycoders, function keys, backlights
 - Interface for external Handle-Key (THK) modules recognized by the Extended Keyboard Controller
 - * **Lift Up:** one key to lift the console (height adjustment); This function is supported as soon as the system is connected to a power supply.
 - * **Lift Down:** one keys to move down the console (height adjustment); This function is supported as soon as the system is connected to a power supply.
 - * **Probe Connector Illumination:** activates two LED-arrays that illuminate the area around the probe connectors; This function is only supported when the system is running.
 - * **Magnetic Brake:** two keys for forward/backward/rotational mobility (horizontal adjustment); This function is supported as soon as the system is connected to a power supply.
 - USB Trackball with dedicated buttons to emulate standard three button mouse function
 - A trackball ring for an easy extraction of the trackball e.g. in case of cleaning
 - optionally with a trackball illumination PCBA and a GE Logo
 - Connector Subboard



A	Joycoder (rotary/push/toggle) without backlight	D	Power ON/OFF Standby button
B	Encoder (rotary/push) with backlight	E	Function keys
C	Joycoder (rotary/push/toggle) with backlight	F	Trackball + Trackball buttons

5.5.1 Peripheral Interface Left/Right (TPL/TPR)

These Boards are intended to provide connections for optional peripheral devices.

5.5.1.1 TPL - Peripherals Interface Left

This board provides connectors for optional peripheral devices on the left side of the console.

5.5.1.2 TPR - Peripherals Interface Right

This board provides connectors for optional peripheral devices on the right side of the console.

5.6 Monitor

5.7 External I/O

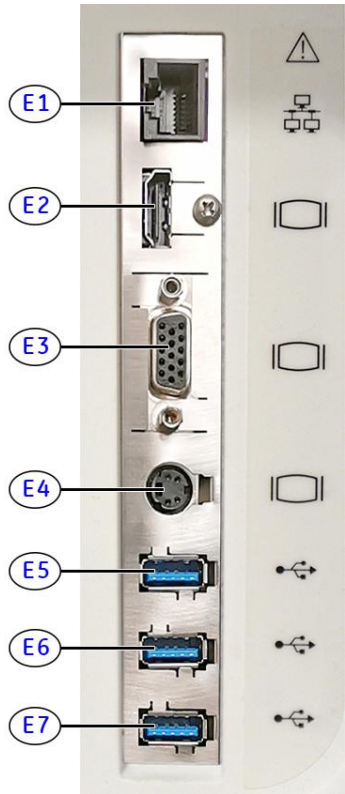


Figure 5-6: External I/O connectors - on rear of system

Item	Connector Name	Description
E1	Network	DICOM input/output, twisted pair RJ-45 1 Gbit/s
E2	HDMI OUT	Connector for external monitor
E3	VGA OUT	Connector for external monitor
E4	S-Video OUT	S-Video OUT connector, PAL/NTSC (depending on system setup)
E5-E7	USB-A	3x USB-A 3.0 port

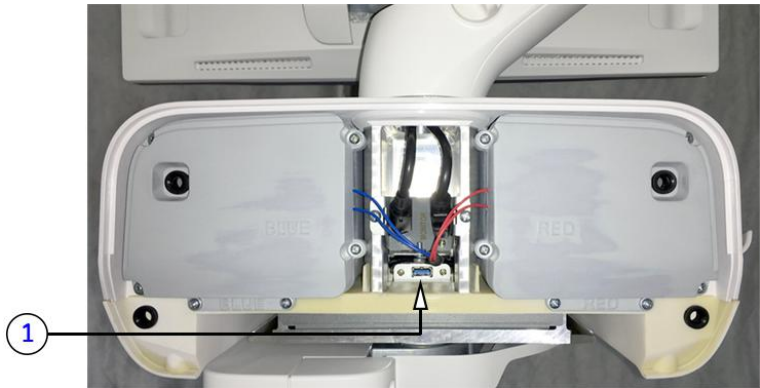


Figure 5-7: External I/O connectors - behind Rear Cover Top

Item	Connector Name	Description
1	USB-A	USB-A 2.0 port intended for optional WLAN Adapter



Figure 5-8: External I/O connectors - back and left/right side of the console

Item	Connector Name	Description
1	USB-C	USB-C 2.0 port intended for optional RFID Log-on reader (Radio-frequency Identification)
2	USB-C	USB-C 2.0 port intended for optional Respond Probe Holder (automatic probe activation) on the right
3	USB-C	2x USB-C 3.0 port (back side of the Touch panel) intended for optional ECG module
4	USB-A	2x USB-A 3.0 port (left side of the Touch panel)
5	Power	connector intended for optional Gel Warmer
6	USB-C	USB-C 2.0 port intended for optional Respond Probe Holder (automatic probe activation) on the left
7	USB-C	USB-C 2.0 port intended for optional peripheral devices

Note For further description of I/O connectors refer to [Section 3.9 "External I/O Connectors" on page 3-66](#).

5.8 Peripherals and/or optional Equipment

Note Some peripheral devices (hardware options) may not be available and/or approved in all countries. Please contact Sales & Marketing in your region for information on availability.

Content in this chapter

5.8.1 Printers	5-29
5.8.2 Wireless Print Kit for the Color Printer	5-29
5.8.3 DVD Drive	5-29
5.8.4 Foot Switch	5-30
5.8.5 ECG Module	5-30
5.8.6 Gel Warmer	5-30
5.8.7 Respond Probe Holder	5-30
5.8.8 RFID Log-on	5-30
5.8.9 Wireless Network (WLAN) Adapter	5-30
5.8.10 Wireless Display Kit for the External Patient Monitor	5-30
5.8.11 Digital Expert	5-30
5.8.12 Magnetic Network Adapter	5-30

5.8.1 Printers

Black & White Digital Printer

The B&W Digital Printer receives image data via the USB port. The print command is controlled by the keys **P1-P4** or **C1-C4** on the Voluson Expert Series control console (depending on system configuration).

Color Digital Printer

The Color Digital Printer requires the optional wireless kit to receive image data using Wi-Fi signal connection. The print command is controlled by the keys **P1-P4** or **C1-C4** on the Voluson Expert Series control console (depending on system configuration).

Network Color Laser Printer

The Network Color Laser Printer is used to print out reports and exams, but in some cases also ultrasound images. The printer can either be connected directly to the Voluson Expert Series system, to work within the network environment (usually the hospital network) or it can be connected via Wi-Fi Direct (communication without requiring a central wireless access point).

5.8.2 Wireless Print Kit for the Color Printer

The Wireless Printer Kit is an accessory for Sony medical color printers, comprising a Wireless Print Transmitter and Wireless Print Receiver. It replaces a conventional wired USB connection between printer and system, enabling the printer to be installed in a location separate from the Voluson Expert Series ultrasound system.

There's no need for installing extra software: transmitter and receiver are paired automatically over distances of up to 10m.

5.8.3 DVD Drive



Caution

Laser radiation: Avoid exposure to the beam Class 3B laser product.

Class 3B laser radiation: When open avoid exposure to the beam.

DVD Drive

The DVD Drive (Writer) is used to backup images and reports. In addition, it is used as the main source of software upgrades and other service utility operations. It is controlled by the BEP via USB port.

DVD and USB Recorder

The DVD and USB Recorder function enables video recording to DVD media or USB devices.

Format and Quality setting for USB/DVD recording, see [Section 3.7.5.9 on page 3-54](#).

Media supported for data burning	Media supported for video recording
• DVD+R • DVD-R • DVD-RW • DVD+RW • CD-R • CD-RW	• DVD+R • DVD-R • DVD-RW • DVD+RW • all Dual Layer formats • USB stick or external USB HDD drive (FAT32 or NTFS system)

Note *A minimum writing speed of 2 MByte/sec is required to ensure stable video recording on USB devices. Lower writing speed can result in audio and/or video drop outs. The use of USB3.0 devices is recommended.*

5.8.4 Foot Switch

The Foot Switch is used for comfortable system control when no hand is free. To adjust function of the Foot Switch (Left/Middle/Right) see [Section 3.7.5.8 on page 3-54](#).

5.8.5 ECG Module

The ECG module is used for acquiring an ECG signal to be displayed with the ultrasound image. This optional peripheral serve for gaining an ECG signal to mark the systolic and end diastolic moments in M-Mode and Doppler evaluations.

The ECG-preamplifier must not be used for ECG diagnostics. It is not intended for use as a cardiac monitor and must not be used for an intra-operative application on the heart.

5.8.6 Gel Warmer

The optional Gel Warmer rapidly and uniformly warms ultrasonic gel to body temperature, for enhanced patient comfort.

5.8.7 Respond Probe Holder

The Respond Probe Holder set for automatic activation/deactivation uses motion sensors for detecting when a probe is removed from/put into its assigned holder and is consequently generating a response signal for activating/deactivating the probe.

5.8.8 RFID Log-on

The RFID log-on reader is mainly used for contactless and password free access to the Voluson Expert Series system. It transfers the smart card UID (which is used as a password) as soon as a registered user holds his card against the reader.

Advantages

- Automatic user login. This is how errors are avoided when entering username and password.
- Easy login even under unfavorable conditions; for example, when the user is wearing gloves.

5.8.9 Wireless Network (WLAN) Adapter

The Voluson Expert Series supports a Wireless Network USB Adapter based on industry standards to provide easy-to-use and compatible high-speed wireless connectivity. For details regarding type and installation, see [Section 3.5.7 "Connecting the Wireless Network Adapter" on page 3-23](#).

The Wireless Network (WLAN) USB Adapter provides a mobile network connection to the local area network.

5.8.10 Wireless Display Kit for the External Patient Monitor

The Wireless Display Kit is an easy-to-use presentation device allowing cable-free connection between the Voluson Expert Series ultrasound system and an External Patient Monitor.

The kit comes with one receiving device (Host) and transmitting device (Button). Simply plug and play with no need for installing extra software or drivers.

5.8.11 Digital Expert

Digital Expert offers users of Voluson Expert Series ultrasound systems the ability to collaborate with remote experts by audio, video, chat and screen-share. Via a mobile tablet next to your console, Digital Expert connects you face-to-face to a live clinical applications trainer.

5.8.12 Magnetic Network Adapter

The optional Magnetic Network Adapter is a simple, fast and self-magnetic plug solution for Ethernet network connections. Due to its break-away connector function it features protection against improper pull out of the network cable or other damage to the **LAN** RJ45 connector.

5.9 Power Distribution

5.9.1 TPS - Power Supply

The TPS's main task is to supply the various internal subsystems with AC power and to galvanically isolate the system from the on-site Mains Power System. An inrush current limiter, an overvoltage protection as well as an overtemperature protection is implemented.



Caution

The „CAUTION - Dangerous electric voltage“ symbol on the TPS (power supply) indicates that there is a residual voltage >60V DC present on internal components of the TPS (like the transformer, capacitor and so on). During a time of approx. 1 minute the voltage decreases to values <60V DC, which is judged safe to touch. After an even longer time, the voltage decreases further to even lower voltage values.

5.9.1.1 Input Voltage Range

input voltage range: 100V to 240V AC; 50/60Hz

5.9.1.2 Auxiliary Output Voltage

Auxiliary output voltage is 12V DC.

The 12V DC supply voltage for built-in peripherals is generated in the TPS- Power Supply.

5.9.1.3 TPS Specifications

Input voltage:	100V to 240V AC @ 50Hz/60Hz
Input frequency:	47Hz to 63Hz
Output voltage:	12.350V DC
Output voltage tolerance:	±2%
Inrush current:	≤40A peak
Max. cont. output power:	600W
Capacitive load:	10mF

5.10 Mechanical Descriptions

5.10.1 Physical Dimensions



Figure 5-9: Physical Dimensions

* adjustable maximum height (electrical lifting column and monitor arm at highest position)

5.10.2 Monitor

The Voluson Expert Series system has a free adjustable Flat Panel Monitor in relation to the user interface.

- tilt: + 30° / - 75°
- rotate: +/- 90°

5.10.3 Control Console Positioning

The control console can be rotated, translated and adjusted in height.

- height adjustment: 30 cm (11.8 inch)
- translation adjustment: 20 cm (7.9 inch)
- rotation adjustment: +/- 40°



Figure 5-10: adjustable control console

5.10.3.1 Rotation/Translation of the Control Console



Press the **Brake** button inside of the handlebar opening to rotate/translate the console to the desired position. Press the **Brake** button again in order to secure the console against uncontrolled movement.

5.10.3.2 Height Adjustment (Elevation) of the Control Console



Height adjustment is done with the **Lift DOWN / Lift UP** button on the Front Handle. As long as a button is pressed, the control console can be lifted / lowered.



Caution

Make sure that nothing would be jammed while moving!

5.11 Air Flow Control

Through the filter grid on the back of the system (Main Air Inlet), air flow into the Voluson Expert Series system.

- Air holes in the TBE Backend Box allow the air to pass through. The 2 fans inside the TBE Backend Box suck in the air (along its internal components and the PC- Motherboard) and emit the warm air to the bottom right side.
- Air pass the Lifting-Column on the right and left side. The 3 fans inside the TCO Frontend Box suck in the air and spread it through the beamformer. The fans emit the warm air to the bottom left side.

The warm air exits the system through the bottom openings onto the right and left side (Main Air Outlet).

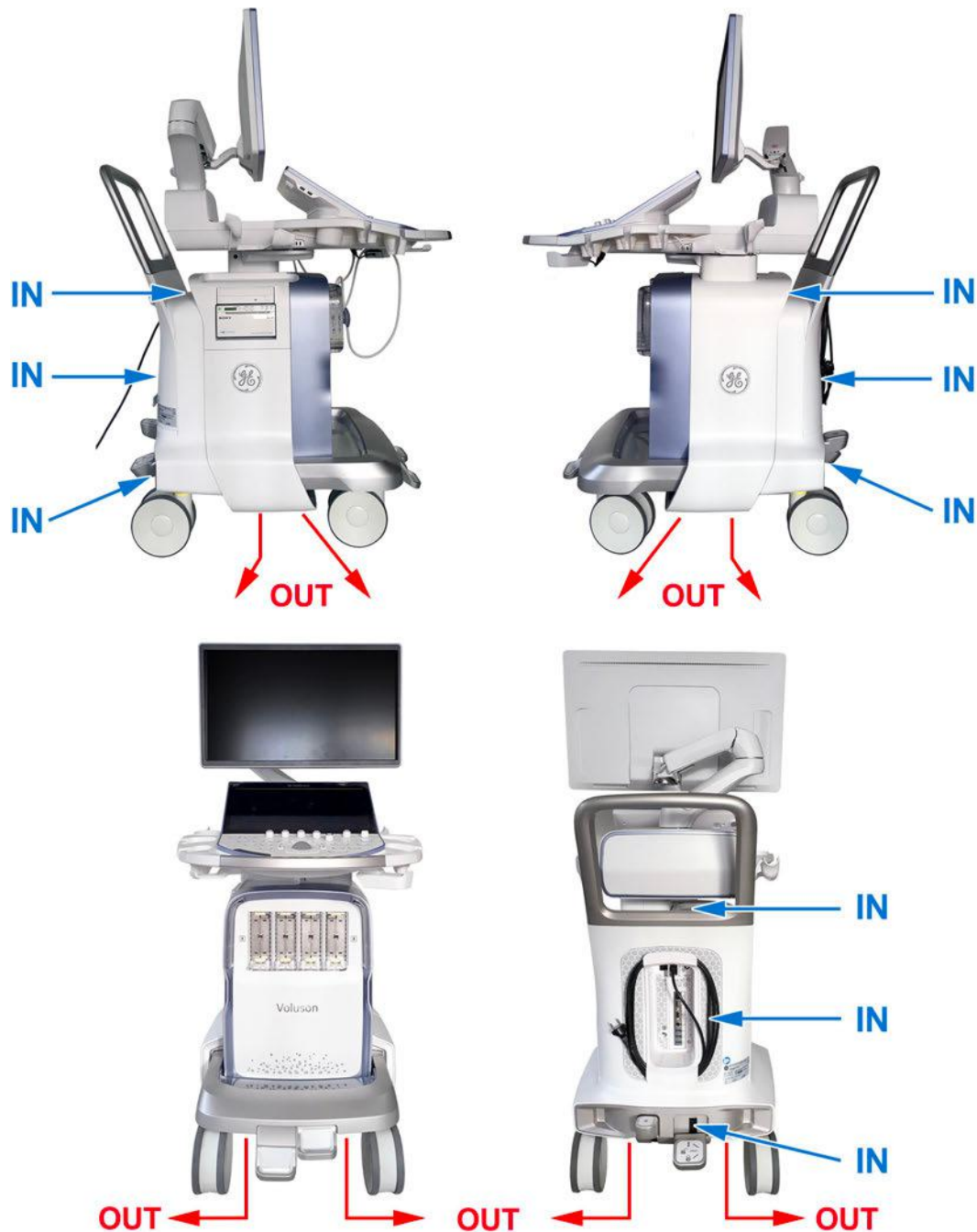


Figure 5-11: Main Air Inlet/Outlet at Voluson Expert Series

5.12 Service Platform

5.12.1 Introduction

InSite is the connectivity to the Voluson Expert Series system that allows GE to deliver remote diagnostics capability. InSite is your direct link with a GE Online Service Engineer or Applications Support Engineer, or a Request for Service via the InSite link (**GE** icon) at the right top of the display screen.

The **GE** icon in the status bar changes symbol and color depending on ongoing activity; see [Table 7-2 on page 7-12](#).

5.12.2 Service Platform - Access and Security

The Service Platform has different access and security user levels. Each user is only granted access to the tools that are authorized for their use.

There are different possibilities to access the Service Desktop and its available features:

- **"Local Access"**: via System Setup - Administration - **Service** page
- **"Remote Access"**: This offers GE technicians the possibility to view the entire customer's desktop and operation system.

5.12.2.1 Local Access

1. If not already in read mode, **Freeze** the image.
2. Select the **Home** button at the Left Toolbar.
3. In the "Home" menu touch the **System Setup** button to invoke the setup desktop on the screen.
4. Select **Administration** and then click the **Service** tab.
5. Enter the password « she » and click the **Accept** button to display the Service Tools page.
6. Click the **Service Desktop** button.

The Service Desktop is started and the **Home** page - containing basic System Information - appears. The navigation bar at the top of the screen allows to select different tools.

For more detailed information see [Section 7.6 "Service Desktop" on page 7-13](#).

5.12.2.2 Remote Access

Note

Remote access is ONLY possible if the Service Platform is properly configured (either by the user or a GE technician at site). Operation see [Section 3.13.6 "RSvP Agent Configuration" on page 3-82](#).

This allows GE technicians to view the entire customer's desktop and operation system. Using VCO (Virtual Console Observation) a service technician or the OLC (OnLine Center) can access and modify all settings and programs or run diagnostics on the customer's Voluson Expert Series system.

Remote access to the Voluson Expert Series system requires permission and customer input before a GE service technician or OLC can access the customer's system remotely.

Disruptive Mode can be selected by the customer directly on the Voluson Expert Series (see [Section 7.5.2 on page 7-12](#)), or requested remotely by the service technician or OLC.

5.13 Service Desktop

The **Service Desktop** is an interface that provides access to system information, status and diagnostics. The Service Desktop has different content or views depending on the access level.

- Class A - is the standard (basic) view
- Class C - is the view enabled by the option "Service Advanced"

There are different possibilities to access the Service Desktop and its available features:

- **"Local Access"**: via System Setup - Administration - **Service** page
- **"Remote Access"**: This offers GE technicians the possibility to view the entire customer's desktop and operation system.

As soon as the Service Desktop is started, the Service Desktop **Home** Page appears.

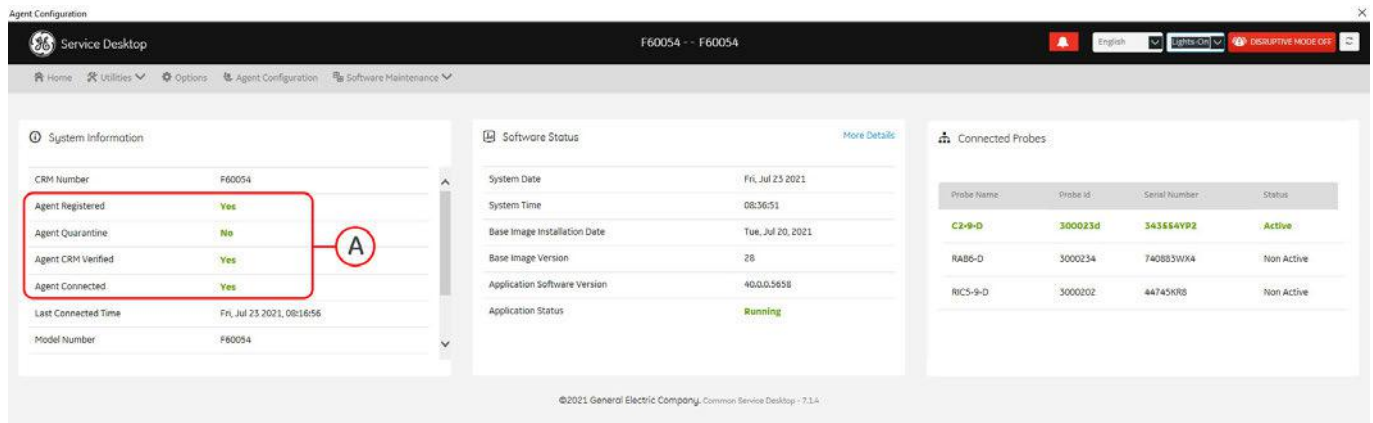


Figure 5-12: Service Desktop - Home

The navigation bar at the top of the screen allows to select from different tools for troubleshooting/adjustment. For detailed description see [Section 7.6 "Service Desktop" on page 7-13](#).

5.14 Service Page

5.14.1 Introduction

The Service Page contains specific software/hardware test modules, system setup, update, etc. for Voluson Expert Series systems only.

5.14.2 Service Page - Access and Security

The service page has different access and security user levels. Each user is only granted access to the tools that are authorized for their use.

5.14.3 Service Page Login

1. Select the **Home** button at the Left Toolbar.
2. In the “Home” menu touch the **System Setup** button to invoke the setup desktop on the screen.
3. Select **Administration** and then click the **Service** tab.
4. Enter the password « she » and click the **Accept** button to display the Service Tools page.

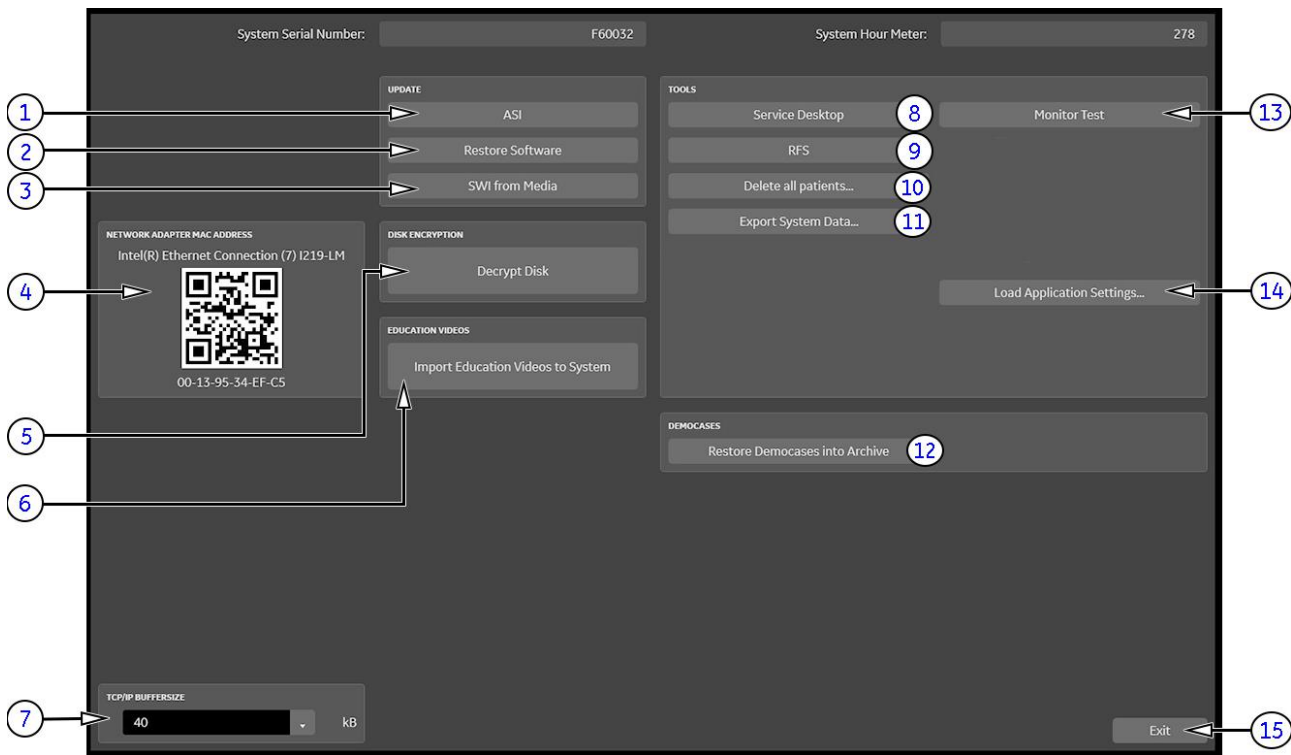


Figure 5-13: Service Tools page

1	Additional Software Installation	6	Import Education Video to System	11	Export System Data
2	Restore Software	7	TCP/IP Buffersize	12	Restore Democases into Archive
3	SWI from Media	8	Service Desktop	13	Monitor Test
4	MAC Address QR-Code	9	Request for Service	14	Load Application Settings
5	Decrypt Disk	10	Delete all Patients	15	Exit

5.14.3.1 Additional Software Installation (ASI)

Click the **ASI** button to install additional software. The Software parts to be installed depend on the contents of the System DVD that is used.

5.14.3.2 SWI from Media

By means of the **SWI from Media** button, the Systems C:\ image is partly or completely updated. The System Software parts to be upgraded depend on contents of the used Media.

Note During "SWI from Media" the used system configuration will be stored on R:\. If required, the previously used system configuration (before SWI from Media was performed) can be restored by activating the "Rollback" function. Operation see: [Section 5.15.4 on page 5-41](#).

5.14.3.3 Restore Software

1. Click the **Restore software** button to perform an automatic restore of the system software from the hard disk.

The installation procedure starts with saving and recording the settings present on the system (silent "Configuration Backup" and "Rollback"). During the software restore the system will restart several times.

2. **Disconnect any unessential external USB media devices** as this might interfere with the recovery/ installation procedure. Please keep printers, LAN cable and Wi-Fi in case of usage active and connected.

Note **DO NOT** disconnect the Disk Drive Module (DVD drive).

Note If a Network Color Laser Printer (e.g., HP LaserJet M454) was installed before the upgrade, it might be required to reinstall/readjust this printer as described in [Section 3.6.3 on page 3-32](#). The printer driver is available on the internal hard disk (R:\system\periph\HP_Laserjet_400).

Note Existing User Programs, 3D/4D Programs and Auto Text remain unaffected! Therefore it is not necessary to perform any readout preparations.

5.14.3.4 Decrypt Disk

Note Security of patient data on the system will be reduced when encryption is turned off. Decryption will take a considerable amount of time (one to several hours).

5.14.3.5 Import Education Videos to System

Click the **Import Education Video to System** button to import tutorial videos (*.mp4) from external source to the internal HDD (D:\Education).

5.14.3.6 TCP/IP Buffersize

The TCP/IP Buffersize selects the amount of buffer memory used for DICOM transfers (both directions).

5.14.3.7 Service Desktop

Each user is only granted access to the tools that are authorized for their use.

5.14.3.8 Request for Service (RFS)

Fill out the "Request For Service" form and then send the problem description to GE Service/Application representatives. Operation see [Section 7.2 "Request for Service \(RFS\)" on page 7-6](#).

5.14.3.9 Delete all Patients

1. Click the **Delete all Patients...** button.

Following WARNING message appears on the screen.

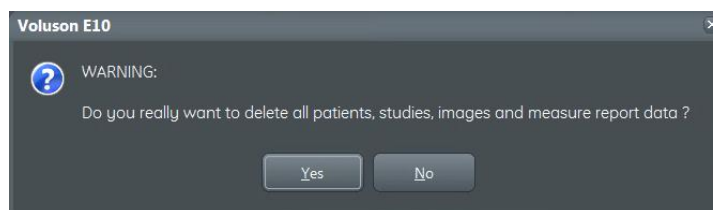


Figure 5-14: Warning message



Warning

If you select the **YES** button, all patients data, studies, images and measure report data will be deleted permanently from the hard disk and **cannot be recovered!**

5.14.3.10 Export System Data

Select the **Export System Data** button in the “Service Tools” page to save Configuration Backup of the system state. This includes dump-files and text files, the full Service Database information about probes, boards, Software, Options and the Event Log File. Operation see [Section 7.4.2.2 on page 7-10](#).

5.14.3.11 Keyboard Layout

To change the keyboard layout to different languages. Operation see: [Section 6.4 "Modification of Keyboard Layout" on page 6-5](#).

5.14.3.12 Monitor Test

Select the **Monitor Test** button to perform color calibration. Operation see: [Section 6.2.2 "Monitor Test" on page 6-3](#).

5.14.3.13 Restore Democases into Archive

The democases (stored on the rescue partition of the HDD) are added to the internal archive.

5.14.3.14 Load Application Settings

If the Tune version of the Application presets does not match the Application Software version, it is probably that there are adverse effects on image quality (e.g., after reloading an old “Configuration Backup”).

1. Click **Load Application Settings** on the “Service Tools” page (see [Figure 5-13 on page 5-37](#)).
2. Choose the media and then click **Load**.

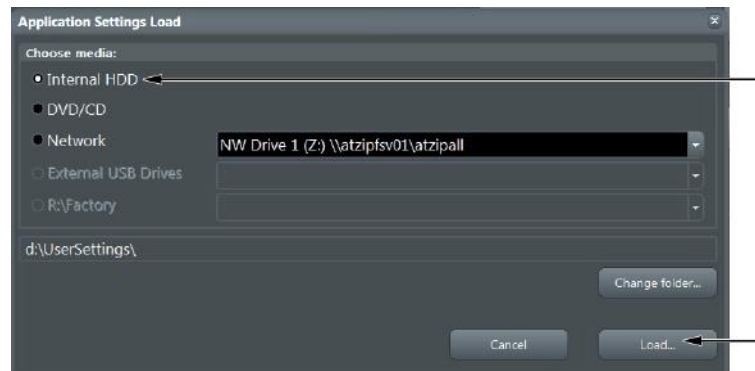


Figure 5-15: Application Settings Load

3. Select the desired file and then click **OK**.

Load procedure starts immediately including a reboot of the system.

Note

If the ID of the Application Setting is not valid for the currently installed Application Software version, a warning message appears during boot up sequence.

4. If warning message is displayed, confirm it with **OK** and then load appropriate Application Settings (perform loading procedure as described in steps above).

5.15 Boot Screen Functions

Following LINUX supported functions are available as soon as the “Boot Screen” appears.

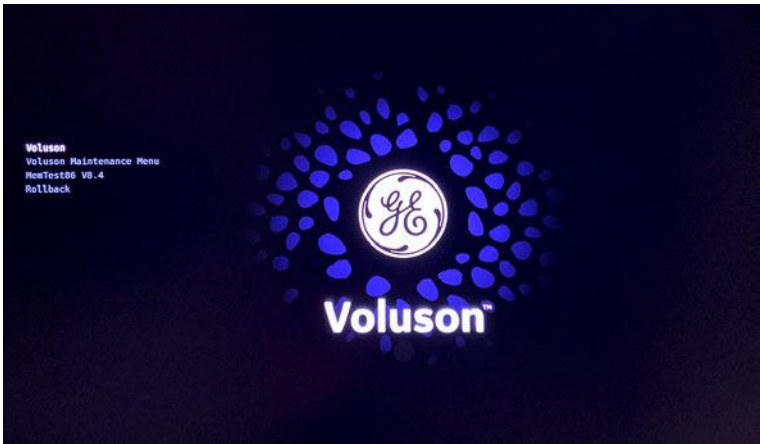


Figure 5-16: Boot screen

Content in this chapter

5.15.1 Voluson	5-40
5.15.2 Voluson Maintenance Menu	5-40
5.15.3 Memtest (Memory Check)	5-41
5.15.4 Rollback	5-41



As soon as the Boot screen appears, flip the rightmost "toggle-flip" **Joycoder** on the control console to stop the boot-up countdown. Flip the **Joycoder** to proper function and then press on **Freeze**.

5.15.1 Voluson

The System will boot-up in windows. The Ultrasound Application is started.
For details see [Section 3.4.2.1 "During a normal boot, you may observe" on page 3-10](#).

5.15.2 Voluson Maintenance Menu

This function **MUST NOT** be used by the customer!

5.15.3 Memtest (Memory Check)

1. Turn system OFF and then back ON.
2. Flip the **Joycoder** again until the **MemTest** item is highlighted and then press **Freeze**.

The PC Memory Test starts automatically and takes about 2.5 hours. If there are errors, they will be listed.

```

PassMark MemTest86 V8.4 Free Intel Core i5-8400H @ 2.50GHz
Cik/Temp : 25.14 MHz / 62C | Pass 66% #####
L1 Cache : 64K 134.35 GB/s | Test 8 [Random number sequence]
L2 Cache : 256K 58.74 GB/s | Address : 0x7DD7C000 - 0x7DF1C000
L3 Cache : 8192K 32.63 GB/s |
Memory : 15.9G 15.53 GB/s |
RAM Info : PC4-21300 DDR4 2666MHz / 19-19-19-43 / Transcend Information TS1
-----
CPU: 01234567 | CPUs Found: 8
State: /DHDHDHD | CPUs Started: 4 CPUs Active: 4
-----
Time: 0:04: Test complete, press any key to display summary errors: 0
Releasing memory - this may take some time
>Test Complete

(ESC)/(c)onfiguration

```

Figure 5-17: Memory check screen

Note After one cycle (~ 2.5 hours) the memory check starts again. If you don't interrupt the memory test, it will perform never ending cycles of memory checks. To interrupt the test, press the **Esc** key. If the **Esc** key does not work, please press the **ON/OFF** standby button.

Note If after one cycle (about 2.5 hours), no error messages are listed, it can be assumed that the BackEnd Processor including power supply is working properly.

5.15.4 Rollback

This function offers the possibility to simply restore the previously used system configuration (rollback), which was stored on R:\ during "SWI from Media" or installing a "Software Update Package" (= eDelivery).

1. Turn system OFF and then back ON.
2. As soon as the Boot screen appears, flip the rightmost "toggle-flip" **Joycoder** on the control console to stop the boot-up countdown.
3. Flip the **Joycoder** until the **Rollback** item is highlighted and then press **Freeze**.
4. When the following WARNING message appears, select **OK** by using the Trackball and then press the **left Trackball** key.

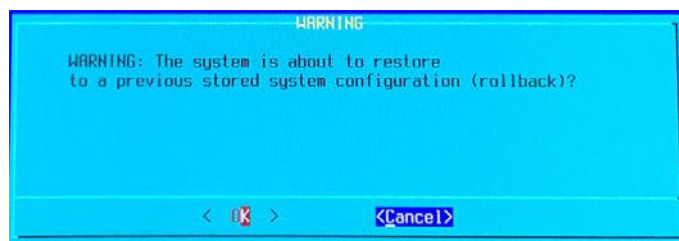


Figure 5-18: Warning message

After performing a "Rollback" the system reboots. The Ultrasound Application is started and finally the 2D screen is displayed on the monitor.

This page was intentionally left blank.

Chapter 6

Alignment and Calibration

This chapter describes how to test and adjust the mechanical capabilities of a system that may be out of specification. Although some tests may be optional they should only be performed by qualified personnel.

Content in this chapter

6.1 Regulatory - - - - -	6-2
6.2 Monitor Adjustment - - - - -	6-2
6.3 Control Console Positioning - - - - -	6-4
6.4 Modification of Keyboard Layout - - - - -	6-5

6.1 Regulatory

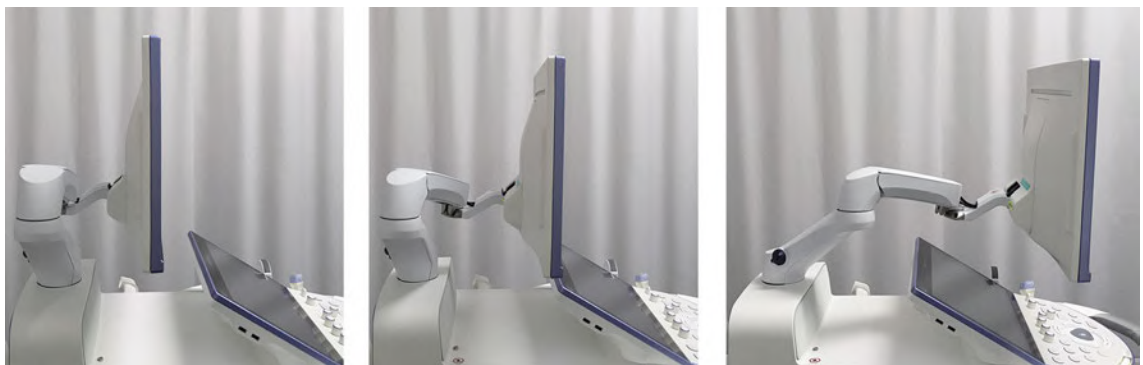
Verify, where applicable, that any regulatory information or tests required by national law are present and accounted for, and any regulatory tests required by national law are performed and documented.

6.2 Monitor Adjustment

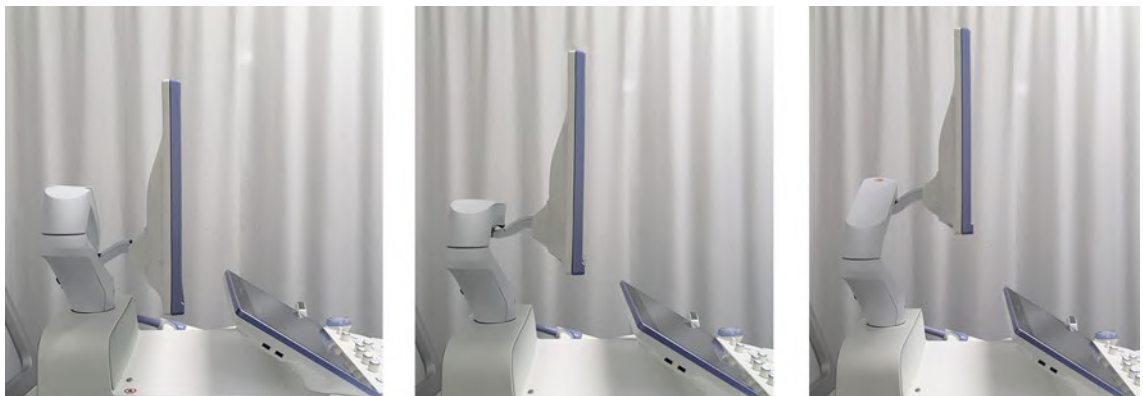
Incline the monitor



Move back and forth



Move up and down



To lock the Monitor Arm rotation see [Section 6.2.1 "Preparing for Transport" on page 6-3](#).

6.2.1 Preparing for Transport

To ensure that no part of the Monitor can be damaged when transporting or moving the system, the Monitor must be in a secure position.

1. Press the Lift DOWN button on the Front Handle and lower the system to its minimum height.
 2. Move the upper monitor arm parallel to the lower arm and push it down (A).
 3. Rotate the monitor to the center position and turn knob (B) counterclockwise until arm rotation and height adjustment is locked.
- Note: To avoid uncontrolled movement tighten the 2 levers of the monitor arm together (e.g., by means of a hook-and-loop fastener strap).*
4. Incline the monitor to the horizontal position (C).



The system can now be safely transported. Nevertheless, be careful when transporting or moving the device.

6.2.2 Monitor Test

1. Select the **Home** button at the Left Toolbar.
2. In the “Home” menu touch the **System Setup** button to invoke the setup desktop on the screen.
3. Select **Administration** and then click the **Service** tab.
4. Enter the password « she » and click the **Accept** button to display the Service Tools page.
5. Select the **Monitor Test** button in the “Service Tools” menu.
6. The screen becomes white.
 - WHITE is displayed without any tint (discolor) or colored pixels.
7. Press the **right/left trackball** key repeatedly to step through RED, GREEN, BLUE, BLACK, GRAYSCALE, COLOR ROWS with different color intensities, hardly visible WORDING on the screen and RECTANGLES with different grey tons.
 - Each pattern is displayed correctly (without any tint or discolored pixels).
8. To exit the Monitor Test program, press the **middle (top) trackball** key.

6.3 Control Console Positioning

The control console can be rotated, moved forward and backward and adjusted in height.

6.3.1 Translation/Rotation Adjustment



Press the **Brake** button inside of the handlebar opening to rotate/translate the console to the desired position. Press the **Brake** button again in order to secure the console against uncontrolled movement.



Figure 6-1: Buttons for Control Console Adjustment

- 1 **Lift** buttons for height adjustment of the control console
- 2 **Brake** buttons for locking and unlocking the control console



Caution

The system should not be moved with the control console (UI) extended. Do not put your hand between the control console and the main unit when moving the control console to its centered and locked position: Danger of injuries!

6.3.2 Height Adjustment (Elevation)



Height adjustment is done with the **Lift DOWN / Lift UP** button on the Front Handle. As long as a button is pressed, the control console can be lifted / lowered.

It is possible to lower/lift the control console whenever the systems main power cable is connected to a hospital grade power outlet with proper rated voltage. Booting up the system is not required.



Caution

Make sure that nothing would be jammed while moving!

Note

Shipping the Voluson Expert Series ultrasound system in its original packaging is only possible when the control console is centered and locked in position, the system is lowered to its minimum height and the monitor is flapped down and locked. Refer to [Section 6.2.1 "Preparing for Transport"](#) on page 6-3.

6.4 Modification of Keyboard Layout

Note *Modification of the Keyboard Layout is not possible by the user. Please contact your local distributor or GE service representative for input language setting.*

1. Select the **Home** button at the Left Toolbar.
2. In the “Home” menu touch the **System Setup** button to invoke the setup desktop on the screen.
3. Select **Administration** and then click the **Service** tab.
4. Click on the **Keyboard Layout** button.

This page was intentionally left blank.

Chapter 7

Diagnostics/Troubleshooting

This chapter describes how to setup and run the tools and software that help maintain image quality and system operation. Basic host, system, and board level diagnostics are run whenever power is applied. Some Service Tools may be run at the application level.

Content in this chapter

7.1 Collect vital System Information - - - - -	7-2
7.2 Request for Service (RFS) - - - - -	7-6
7.3 Check Point Voltages - - - - -	7-7
7.4 Screen Captures and Logs - - - - -	7-8
7.5 Remote Access to the Service Platform - - - - -	7-11
7.6 Service Desktop - - - - -	7-13
7.7 Troubleshooting Trees, Instructions and Tech Tips - - - - -	7-45

7.1 Collect vital System Information



Content in this chapter

[7.1.1 Keyboard Shortcuts](#) ----- 7-4

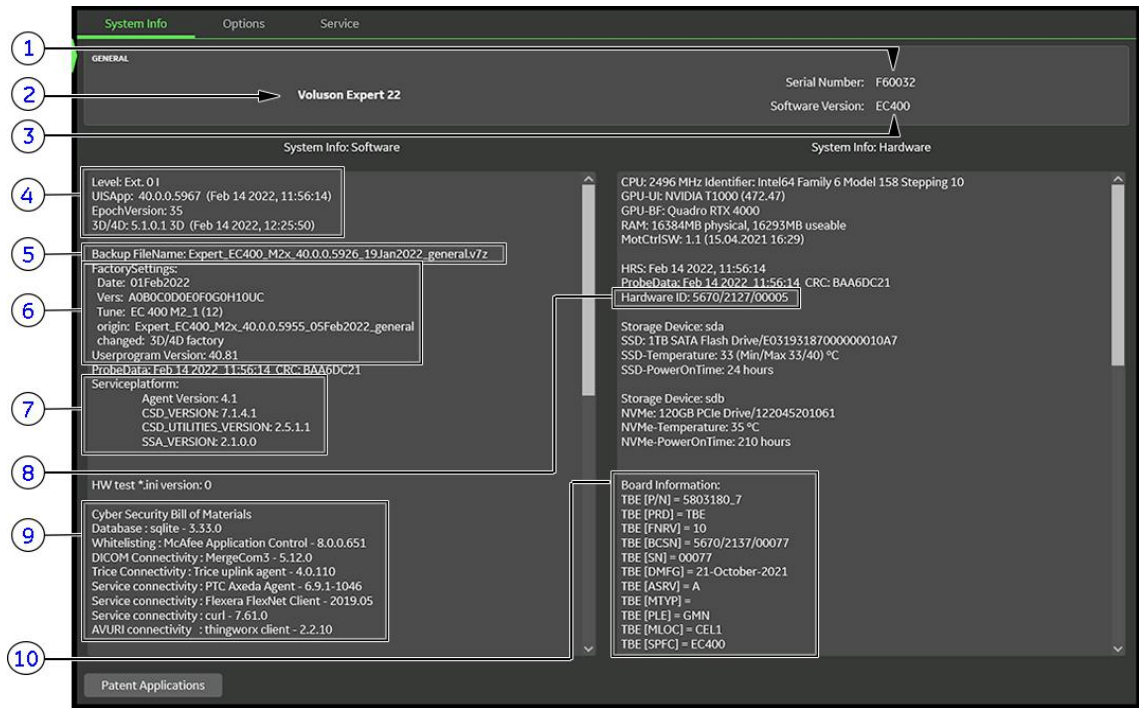
1. Select the **Home** button at the Left Toolbar.
2. In the “Home” menu touch the **System Setup** button to invoke the setup desktop on the screen.
3. Select **Administration** and then click the **System Info** tab.

The following information is necessary in order to properly analyze data or images being reported as a malfunction or being returned to the manufacturer:

- **System Type**
- **System Serial number** (also visible on label on back of the system)
- **Application Software version**
- **Backup version** (File name, Date of Factory Settings, Tune version, Userprogram Version, etc.)
- **additional information** (e.g., Hardware ID, “Mainboard Type”, HW configuration, etc.)

Note

All the above information can be found in the “System Info” page; see: [Figure 7-1 on page 7-3](#).

**Note**

Move the scroll bars downwards to view additional information about the installed software/hardware.

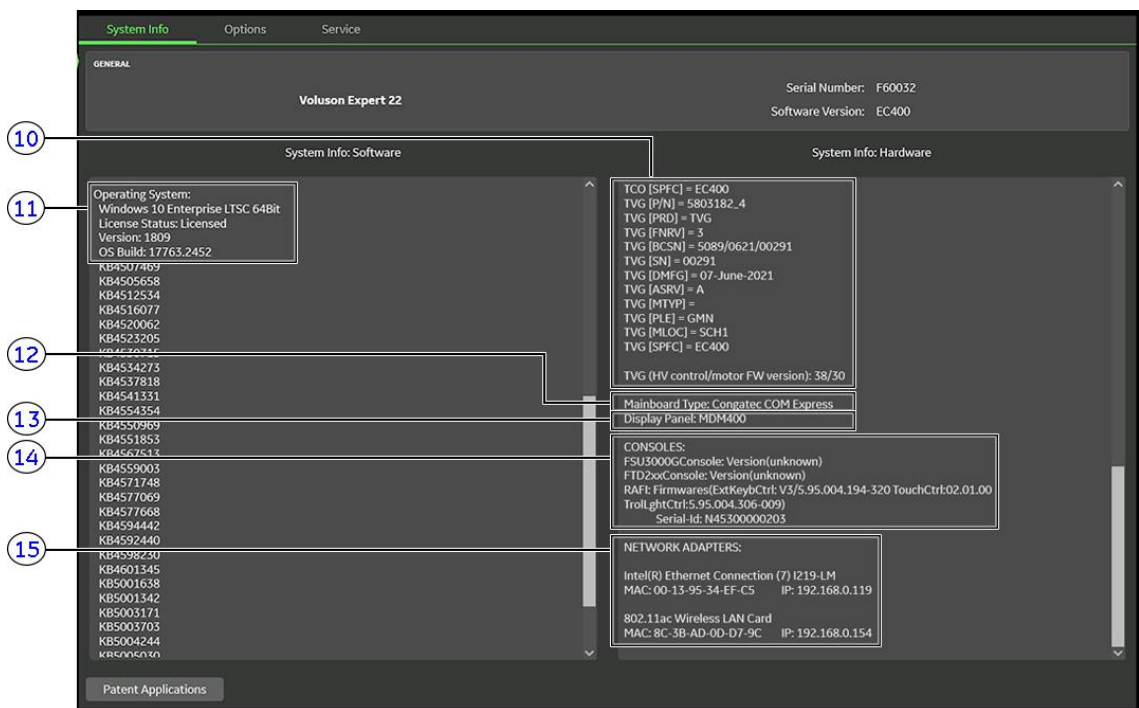


Figure 7-1: System Setup - Administration - SYSTEM INFO page

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1 Serial Number | 9 Cyber Security Bill of Materials |
| 2 System Type | 10 Board Information (Hardware Configuration) |
| 3 Software Version | 11 Operating System and its License Status |
| 4 Application Software | 12 Mainboard Type |
| 5 Backup File Name | 13 Monitor Display Type (e.g., HDU) |
| 6 Factory Settings: Date, Tune- and Userprogram version | 14 Console version |
| 7 Service Platform | 15 Network Adapters: MAC address and IP address |
| 8 Hardware ID | |

7.1.1 Keyboard Shortcuts



It is not required, but **recommended** to use an external alphanumeric keyboard.

Press the **Ctrl + H** key simultaneous to display the shortcuts list and a description of what they do.

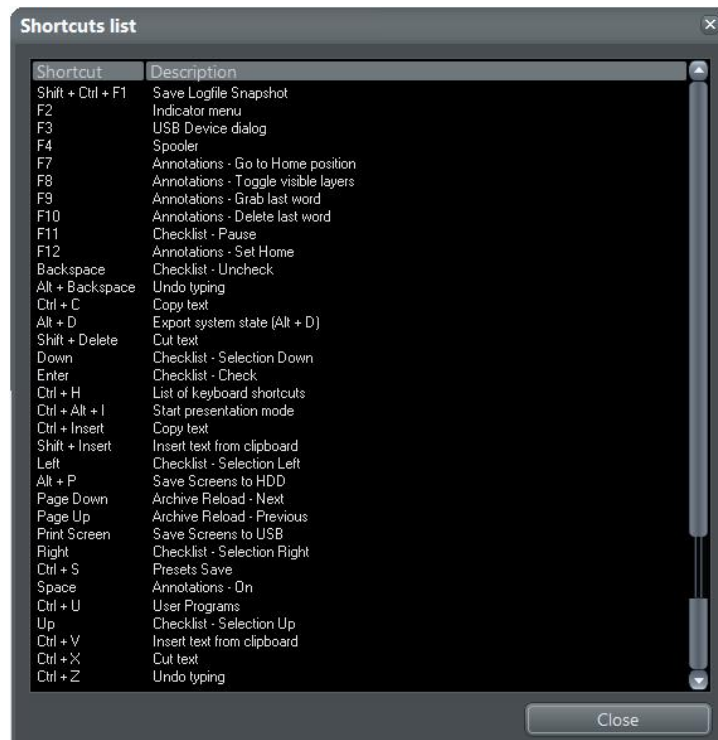


Figure 7-2: Keyboard Shortcuts list (Ctrl + H)

Table 7-1: list of keyboard shortcuts + description of what they do

Shortcut	Description	Access Level
Shift + Ctrl + F1	save Logfile snapshot (max. 2 Voluson Logfiles + screenshot of Monitor & Touch are stored on D:\export as a *.zip file)	User
F2	Indicator menu	User
F3	USB Device dialog	User
F4	Spooler	User
F7	Annotations - Go to Home position	User
F8	Annotations - Go to Home position	User
F9	Annotations - Grab last word	User
F10	Annotations - Delete last word	User
F11	Checklist - Pause	User
F12	Annotations - Set Home	User
Backspace	Checklist - Uncheck	User
Alt + Backspace	undo typing	User
Ctrl + C	copy text	User
Alt + D	export system state (Configuration Backup and dump files) to D:\ConfigurationBackup	User
Shift + Delete	cut text	User
Down	Checklist - selection down	User
Enter	Checklist - Check	User

Shortcut	Description	Access Level
Ctrl + H	list of keyboard shortcuts (see #unique_376/unique_376_Connect_42_F_SC-PRP)	User
Ctrl + Alt + I	start Presentation mode	User
Ctrl + Insert	copy text	User
Shift + Insert	insert text (paste) from clipboard	User
Left	Checklist - selection left	User
Alt + P	save screens to HDD (D:\export)	User
Page down	Archive reload - next	User
Page up	Archive reload - previous	User
Print Screen	save screens to USB	User
Right	Checklist - selection right	User
Ctrl + S	User Presets save	User
Space	Annotations - on	User
Ctrl + U	User programs	User
Up	Checklist - selection right	User
Ctrl + V	insert text (paste) from clipboard	User
Ctrl + X	cut text	User
Ctrl + Z	undo typing	User

7.2 Request for Service (RFS)

Note *Service Connectivity has to be checked out once before you can request for service. i.e., Service Platform has to be configured properly; see [Section 3.13.6 "RSvP Agent Configuration" on page 3-82](#).*

There are 2 possibilities to contact GE:

- by means of the **GE** "Remote Status Icon" that is displayed on top of the screen



Move the cursor to the **GE** icon at the right top of the display screen and press the left trackball key (= left-click). The "Contact GE" form (see [Figure 7-3 below](#)) is displayed.

- via the System Setup "Service" page
 1. Select the **Home** button at the Left Toolbar.
 2. In the "Home" menu touch the **System Setup** button to invoke the setup desktop on the screen.
 3. Select **Administration** and then click the **Service** tab.
 4. Enter the password « she » and click the **Accept** button to display the Service Tools page.
 5. Click the **Service Tools** button to display the Service Tools window.
 6. Click the **RFS** button and fill out the displayed form. (Enter detailed problem description.)

Figure 7-3: Contact GE - Request for Service

7. Click the **Submit** button to send the problem description to GE Service/Application representatives. A request confirmation message is displayed.



Figure 7-4: Request submitted

8. Write down and keep the RFS Request Number (A) for follow up procedures.

The request is saved in the **RFS History** tab for reviewing.



Figure 7-5: Contact GE - RFS History

9. For detailed description click on **Details (B)** of the proper report.



7.3 Check Point Voltages

Output voltage (usually 12V DC) of the TPS Power Supply can be checked via a LED on the TBE Backend Base Board. This green-light status LED (= ON) is visible from outside, see [Figure 7-6 below](#).

During boot-up further status LEDs are enabled.

Note

If undervoltage is detected a beep code error occurs. In this case please contact your local distributor or GE service representative.

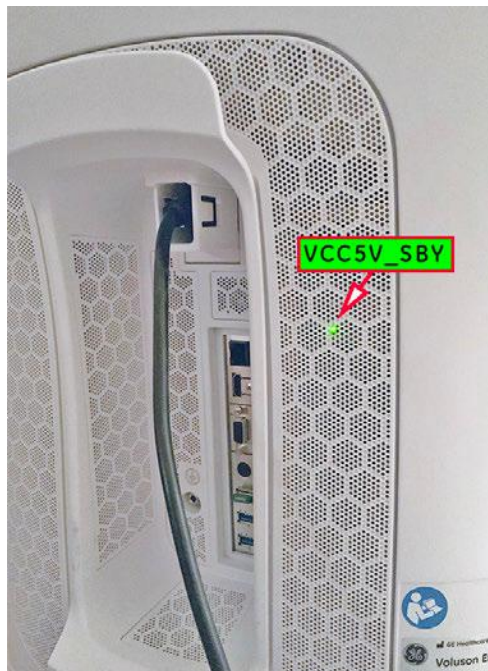


Figure 7-6: VCC5V_SBY - LED is visible from outside

7.4 Screen Captures and Logs

There may be times when the customer or field engineer will want to capture a presentation on the screen, so it may be recovered by the OnLine Center. This is accomplished by saving the image(s):

1. as *.png to the automatically generated "Voluson" folder on the last connected external USB drive. For more details see [Section 7.4.1 on page 7-8](#)
2. as *.jpg to D:\export by pressing the **Alt + P** key on an alphanumeric keyboard
Note: Successive **Alt + P** keystrokes (max. 20) overwrite existing screenshots at destination HDD!
3. creates one screenshot (Alt-D.png, saved on D:\export) + "Configuration Backup" of the System state saved on D:\ConfigurationBackup by pressing the **Alt + D** key on an alphanumeric keyboard

7.4.1 Capturing a Screen

The following is the generic process to capture a screen from the Voluson Expert Series system.

1. Navigate to, and display the image/screen to be captured.
2. Press the assigned **Cx** key on the control console and save the image as *.png to the automatically generated "Voluson" folder on the last connected external USB drive.

For example: The **C3** key is used to "Save Screens to USB".

A message is displayed whenever a screen is successfully saved and exported.



A short summary of keys configuration is shown in the status area on the screen. For assigning keys refer to [Section 3.6.7 "Button Configuration \(Remote Control\)" on page 3-45](#).



Figure 7-7: summary of keys configuration

Note Some few system screens are restricted/excluded from being captured this way.

Note In case of system errors that need to be recovered or when experiencing strange behavior, it is highly recommended to export system state. Therefore, select the **Shortcuts** button at the Right Toolbar and then touch the **Export system state (Alt +D)** button, or press **Alt + D** on an alphanumeric keyboard.

7.4.2 Export Log's and System Data

There are two possibilities to export system data (and log's):

1. ["Export System Data \(by pressing the ALT + D key\)"](#) to save a screenshot and "Configuration Backup" of the current system state
2. ["Export Log's and System Data \(via Service Page\)"](#) via the **Export System Data** button in the System Setup - Administration - Service page

7.4.2.1 Export System Data (by pressing the ALT + D key)

Alt + D is used to gather detailed information and data from the system. In addition it creates one screenshot (Alt-D.png) of the point in time when **Alt + D** was pressed. The main use is when OLC need detailed information about the system (e.g., when experiencing strange behavior or when the problem should be investigated). It is not intended to replace or enhance the existing Configuration Backup functionality.



Configuration Backup files created by **Alt + D** are protected by a password that can be customized. Whenever transmitting system state to R&D, do not forget to inform them about any password change.

Data (one zipped Backup file is generated) can be stored on the hard disk (D:\ConfigurationBackup), or you can export them to any media. The zipped backup file includes the D:\export folder, which contains dump files (for details see [Section 7.4.2.2.1 on page 7-10](#)), Autotester script files, SMART logs, sniffer logs and screenshots (**Alt + P**).

Note

*Successive **Alt + D** keystrokes overwrite existing screenshots at destination (internal) HDD.*

1. Select the **Shortcuts** button at the Right Toolbar and then touch the **Export system state (Alt +D)** button, or press **Alt + D** on an alphanumeric keyboard.

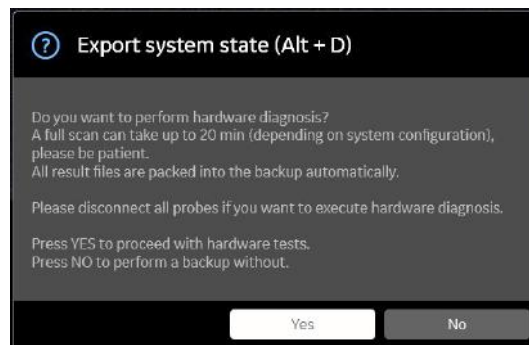


Figure 7-8: Export system state (Alt + D)

2. Select whether you want to backup data with or without hardware diagnosis tests.



Please detach all probes if you want to execute hardware diagnosis, then click **Yes**.

3. Select the destination of the "System state" backup (1).

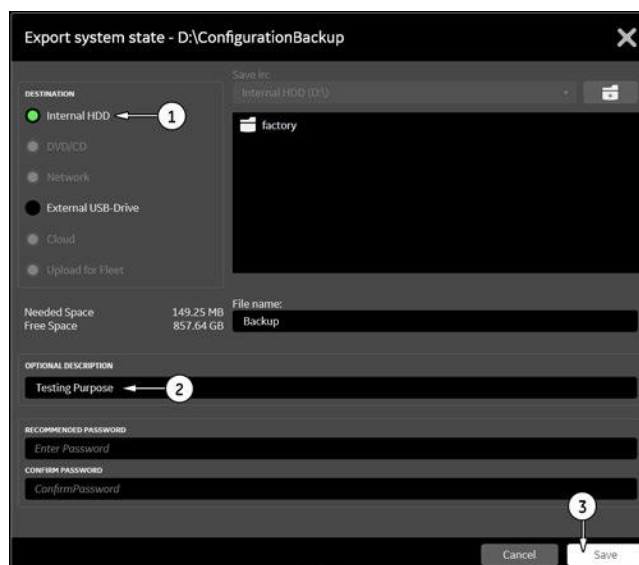


Figure 7-9: Export system state

4. If desired, enter optional description (2).
5. Select the **Save** button (3) to start the backup process.

After saving the data, the Voluson Expert Series reboots and the application starts again.

7.4.2.2 Export Log's and System Data (via Service Page)

1. Select the **Home** button at the Left Toolbar.
2. In the "Home" menu touch the **System Setup** button to invoke the setup desktop on the screen.
3. Select **Administration** and then click the **Service** tab.
4. Enter the password « she » and click the **Accept** button to display the Service Tools page.
5. Click on the **Export System Data** button to save Configuration Backup of the system state. This includes dump files and text files, full Service Database information about probes, boards, Software, Options and the Event Log File.

7.4.2.2.1 Dump file

Every time an error message is produced, a dump file and a text file containing the error dump and the error message are created in D:\export. Up to 20 dump files are stored there.

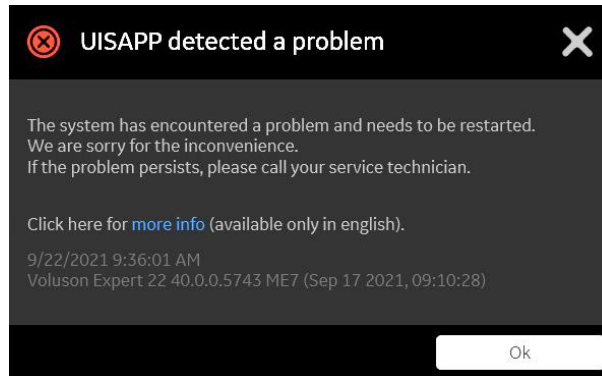


Figure 7-10: system has encountered a problem

After clicking on **OK** the system reboots automatically.

7.5 Remote Access to the Service Platform

Content in this chapter

7.5.1 General -----	7-11
7.5.2 How to locally enable/disable Disruptive Mode and VCO -----	7-12

7.5.1 General

This allows GE technicians to view the entire customer’s desktop and operation system. Using VCO (Virtual Console Observation) a service technician or the OLC (OnLine Center) can access and modify all settings and programs or run diagnostics on the customer's Voluson Expert Series system.

When Voluson Expert Series systems can be serviced remotely, service costs are minimized, and customers benefit from decreased costs and decreased downtime for their systems.

Note *Remote access is ONLY possible if the Service Platform is properly configured (either by the user or a GE technician at site). Operation see [Section 3.13.6 "RSvP Agent Configuration" on page 3-82](#).*

Remote access to the Voluson Expert Series system requires permission and customer input before a GE service technician or OLC can access the customer's system remotely.

Disruptive Mode can be selected by the customer directly on the Voluson Expert Series (see [Section 7.5.2 on page 7-12](#)), or requested remotely by the service technician or OLC.

7.5.2 How to locally enable/disable Disruptive Mode and VCO

- 1. If not already in read mode, **Freeze** the image.
- 2. Move the cursor to the **GE** icon at the right top of the display screen.
- 3. Press the **right trackball key** (= right-click).
- 4. Select **Connect Clinical Lifeline** (see: [Figure 7-11 below](#)). This activates “Disruptive Mode” and “VCO” for the application OLC to quickly assist the customer.

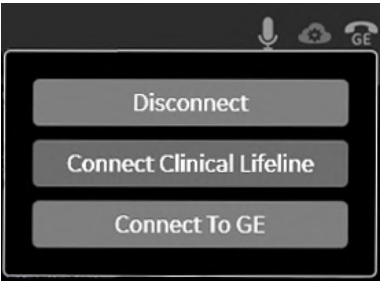


Figure 7-11: Connect Clinical Lifeline

- 5. Select **Disconnect** to turn OFF “Disruptive Mode” and “VCO”.

Note Visual information about GE remote status is shown in the status area on the right top of the screen.

Table 7-2: visual information about GE remote status

	Gray = Idle State	Remote access is inactive.
		Move the cursor over the GE icon to show trackball functions • Contact: Section 7.2 "Request for Service (RFS)" on page 7-6 • Configuration: Section 3.13.6 "RSvP Agent Configuration" on page 3-82 • Menu: Displays the Remote Access menu Figure 7-11 on page 7-12
	Yellow = Access pending	Remote Access is active, but Disruptive Mode and Virtual Console Observation (VCO) are not yet enabled.
	Red = Disrupted State	Remote Access is active. All processes (Virtual Console Observation and Service Desktop) are active. In this state the Voluson Expert Series system should NOT be used clinically.

If a GE Service Technician requests Remote Access Permission

If a GE Service technician requests remote access to your Voluson Expert Series system, following message appears on the screen.

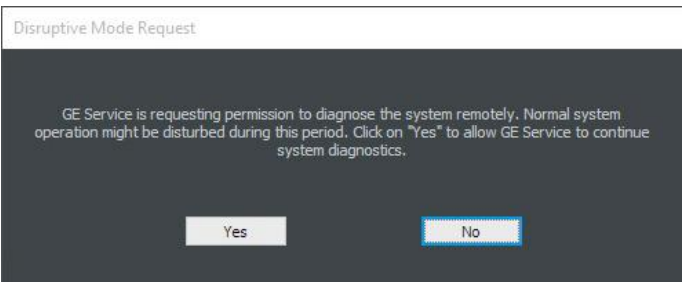


Figure 7-12: Disruptive Mode Request

To enable Disruptive Mode click **Yes**.

Note If the customer does not wish to have diagnostics running at the time of the request, select **No**. A message is sent back to the OLC or FE that permission to change Disruptive Status is denied.

7.6 Service Desktop

This section describes the features of the **Service Desktop** and its different access levels:

Basic Service access (Class A)	A user locally logged into the Voluson Expert Series system with local service access privilege. This level provides limited access to Service Desktop widgets and utilities.
Service Advanced access (Class C)	A user locally logged into the Voluson Expert Series system with local service access privilege. This level requires a "Service Advanced" option string (= Service Key) for enabling enhanced access to Service Desktop widgets and utilities.



Service Advanced access (Class C) activates enhanced diagnostic options. Those additional options are marked with an asterisk * in following sub-sections.

There are different possibilities to access the Service Desktop and its available features:

- **"Local Access"**: via System Setup - Administration - **Service** page
- **"Remote Access"**: This offers GE technicians the possibility to view the entire customer's desktop and operation system.

Note

Remote access to the Voluson Expert Series system requires permission and customer input before a GE service technician or OLC can access the customer's system remotely.

Disruptive Mode can be selected by the customer directly on the Voluson Expert Series (see [Section 7.5.2 on page 7-12](#)), or requested remotely by the service technician or OLC.

The navigation bar at the top of the screen shows the top-level menu choices.

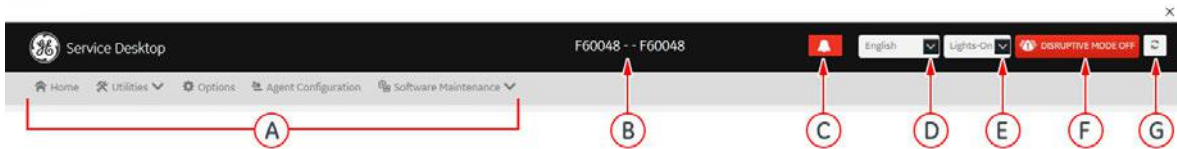


Figure 7-13: Service Desktop - Navigation

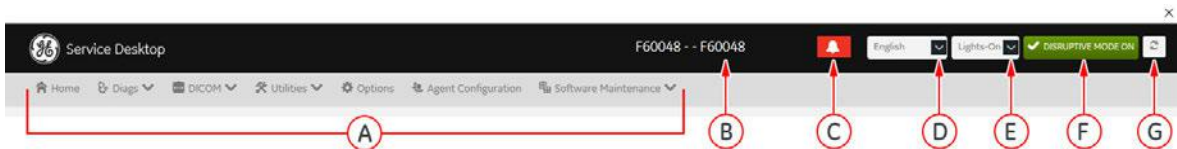


Figure 7-14: Service Desktop - Navigation* when "Service Advanced" option is active

- | | |
|---|---|
| A | Top-level menu choices |
| B | Display for CRM Number, Hospital Name and Serial Number |
| C | Notification |
| D | Control to change the language |
| E | Control to change color theme of pages |
| F | Disruptive Mode Status |
| G | Refresh - reloads content of the web page |

Content in this chapter

7.6.1 Service Desktop - Home	7-14
7.6.2 Service Desktop - Diags*	7-21
7.6.3 Service Desktop - DICOM*	7-38
7.6.4 Service Desktop - Utilities	7-39
7.6.5 Service Desktop - Options	7-42
7.6.6 Service Desktop - Agent Configuration	7-42
7.6.7 Service Desktop - Software Maintenance	7-43

7.6.1 Service Desktop - Home

The **Home** page displays a compact overview of information about the Voluson Expert Series system.

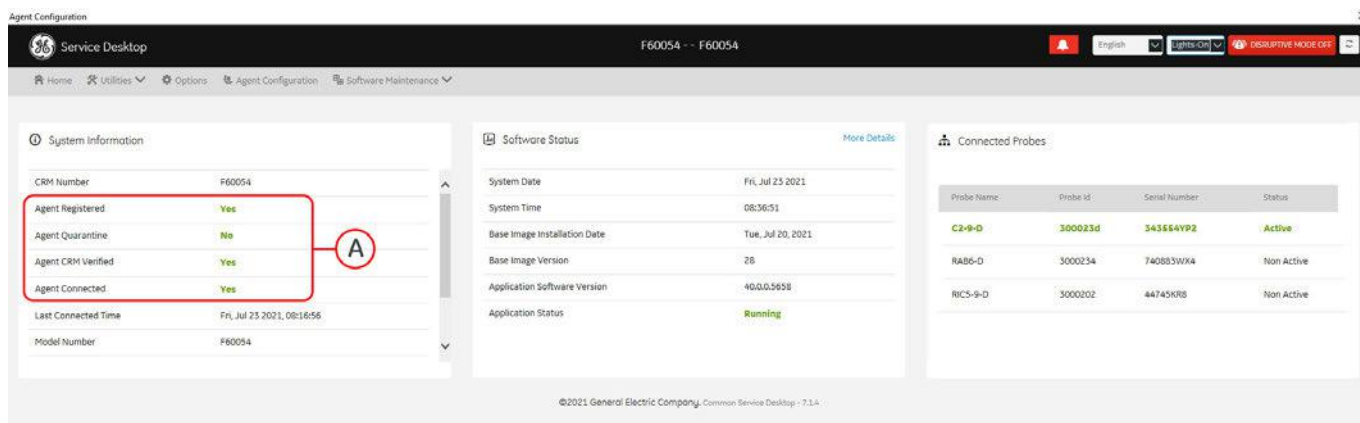


Figure 7-15: Service Desktop - Home

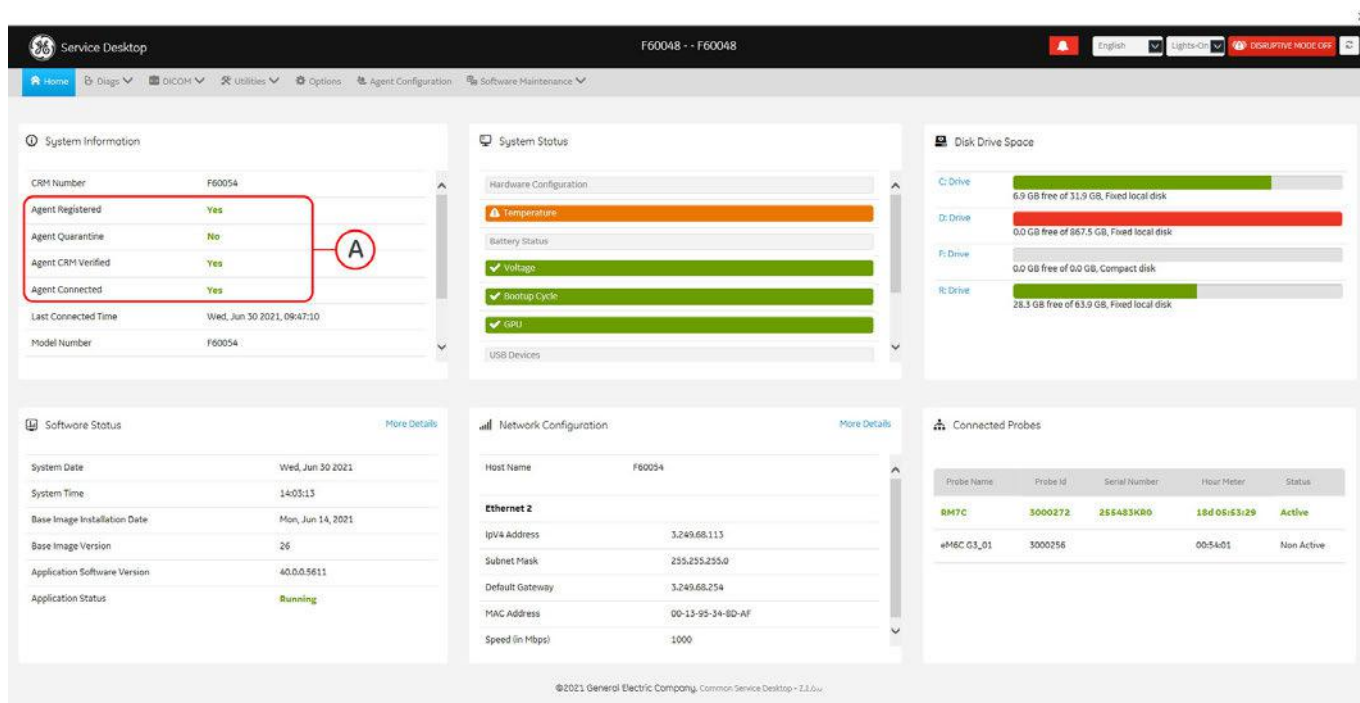


Figure 7-16: Service Desktop - Home* when "Service Advanced" option is active

System Information

Supplies common information about the Voluson Expert Series system.



When the Voluson Expert Series system is successfully configured and provided that network is up and running, the displayed values (**A**) are:

Agent Registered → **Yes** Agent Quarantine → **No** Agent CRM Verified → **Yes** Agent Connected → **Yes**

CRM Number	System identifier assigned to the customer unit by the service region.	
Agent Registered	Register status	• Yes - System is registered. • No - System is not registered.
Agent Quarantine	Quarantine status	• Yes - More than one device registered with the same CRM Number. • No - Just one device with the listed CRM Number is registered .
Agent CRM Verified	CRM Verified status	• Yes - System is verified. • No - System is not verified.
Agent Connected	Connection status	• Yes - System is connected to the RSvP Agent. • No - System is currently not connected to the RSvP Agent.
Last Connected Time	Date and Time of last connection to the RSvP Agent.	
Model Number	GE part number of the Voluson Expert Series system, acc. Identification and Rating plate.	
Serial Number	Serial number of the Voluson Expert Series system, acc. Identification and Rating plate.	
System Type	System type of the Voluson Expert Series system, acc. Identification and Rating plate.	
Facility	Hospital or facility where the Voluson Expert Series is installed.	

Color Status

Throughout the Service Desktop, colors indicate the following:

	Status is normal		Status is a warning		Status is an error
---	------------------	---	---------------------	---	--------------------

Software Status

Displays systems date and time and general information about the application software and base image version installed on the Voluson Expert Series system.

System Status*

Supplies status quo and reports of the Voluson Expert Series system.

□ Hardware Configuration

View the contents of the Hardware Configuration.

□ Temperature

Display temperature status for FRUs (including limit warning and error count of temperatures out of spec) and a graphical representation of the monitored temperatures.

For detailed analyze refer to [Section 7.6.1.1 "Temperature Monitoring*" on page 7-17](#).

□ Battery Status

not available

□ Voltage

FRU status summary on Voltage monitoring.

For detailed analyze refer to [Section 7.6.1.2 "Voltage Monitoring*" on page 7-19](#).

□ Bootup Cycle

View issues with the bootup process.

□ GPU

Status summary of GPUs and graphical temperature-, GPU usage-, and GPU memory usage monitoring.

For detailed analyze refer to [Section 7.6.1.3 "GPU*" on page 7-20](#).

□ USB Devices

Display the USB connected devices.

□ Available Memory

Displays the memory availability of the Voluson Expert Series system.

□ Software Install Date

Shows the software installation date.

▫ **Time since Last Reboot**

Shows the time since last reboot.

Network Configuration*

Supplies network IP address information (wired / wireless) as well as full ipconfig details.

Disk Drive Space*

Supplies information about partitions of the hard drive. Each partition displays free space and total size.

Connected Probes

Supplies information about name, ID, serial number and status of connected probe(s).

7.6.1.1 Temperature Monitoring*

1. Navigate to **Home** → **System Status** → **Temperature** and select **FRU status**.

This displays a summary of the FRUs being monitored and the details for each FRU (temperature out of spec including an overall count of the event warnings and errors).

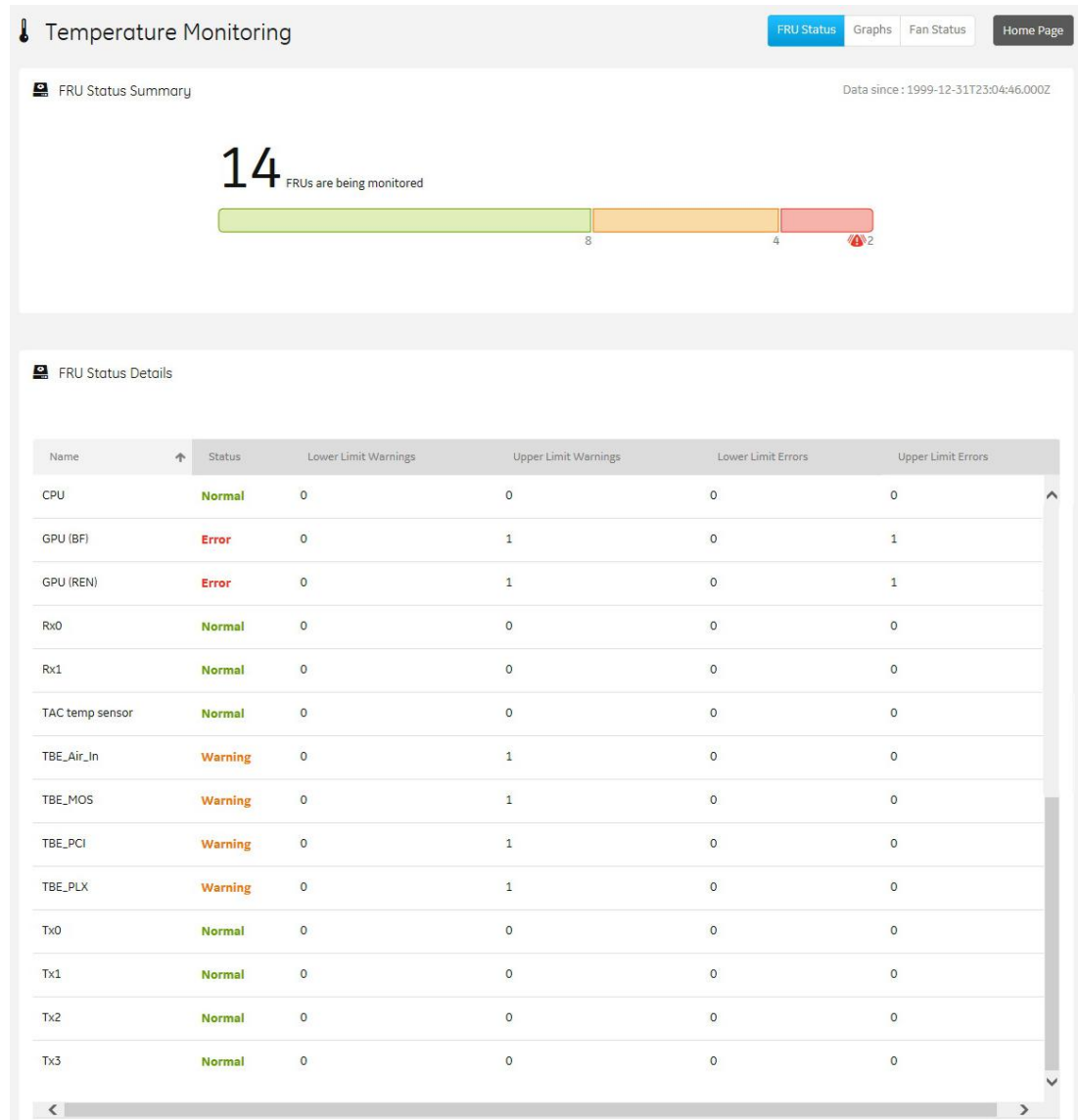


Figure 7-17: Service Desktop - Home -> System Status -> Temperature -> FRU status

2. Select **Graphs** to display temperature graphs for the configured monitoring points.

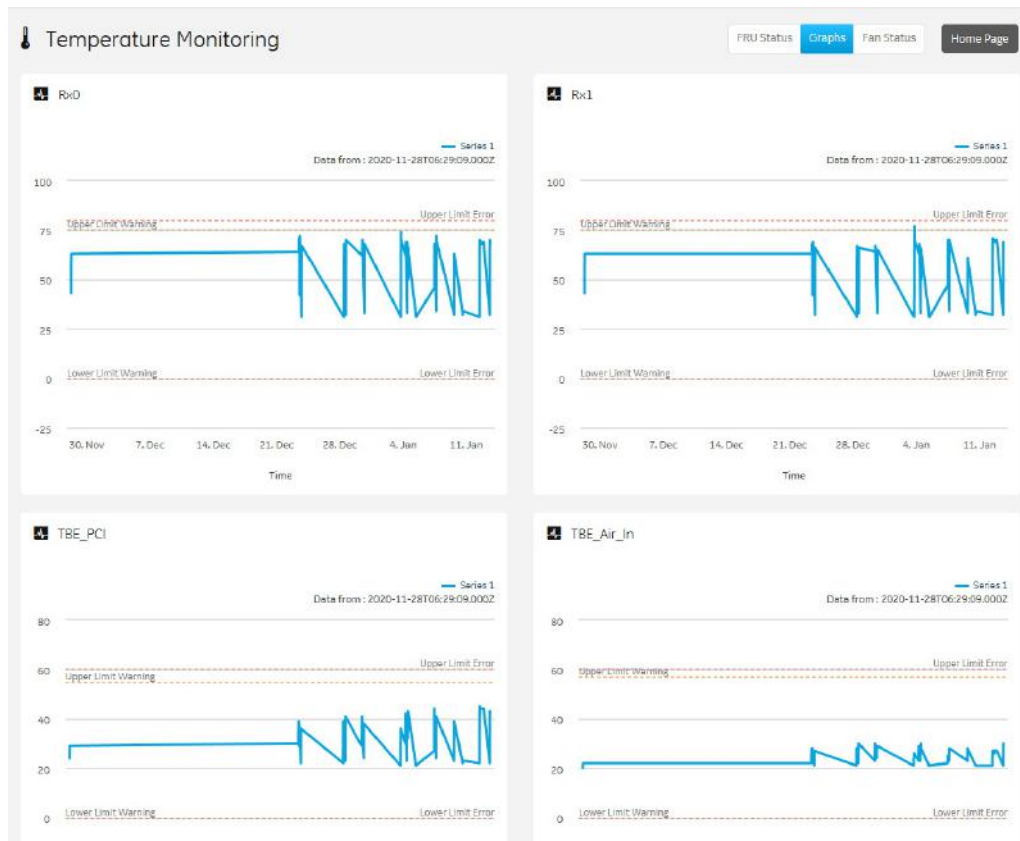


Figure 7-18: Service Desktop - Home -> System Status -> Temperature -> Graphs

3. Select **Fan Status** to display status of Frontend and Backend Fans.



Figure 7-19: Service Desktop - Home -> System Status -> Temperature -> Fan Status

4. Select **Home Page** to exit monitoring.

7.6.1.2 Voltage Monitoring*

1. Navigate to **Home** → **System Status** → **Voltage** and select **FRU status**.

This displays a summary of the FRUs being monitored and the details for each FRU (voltage out of spec including an overall count of the event warnings and errors).

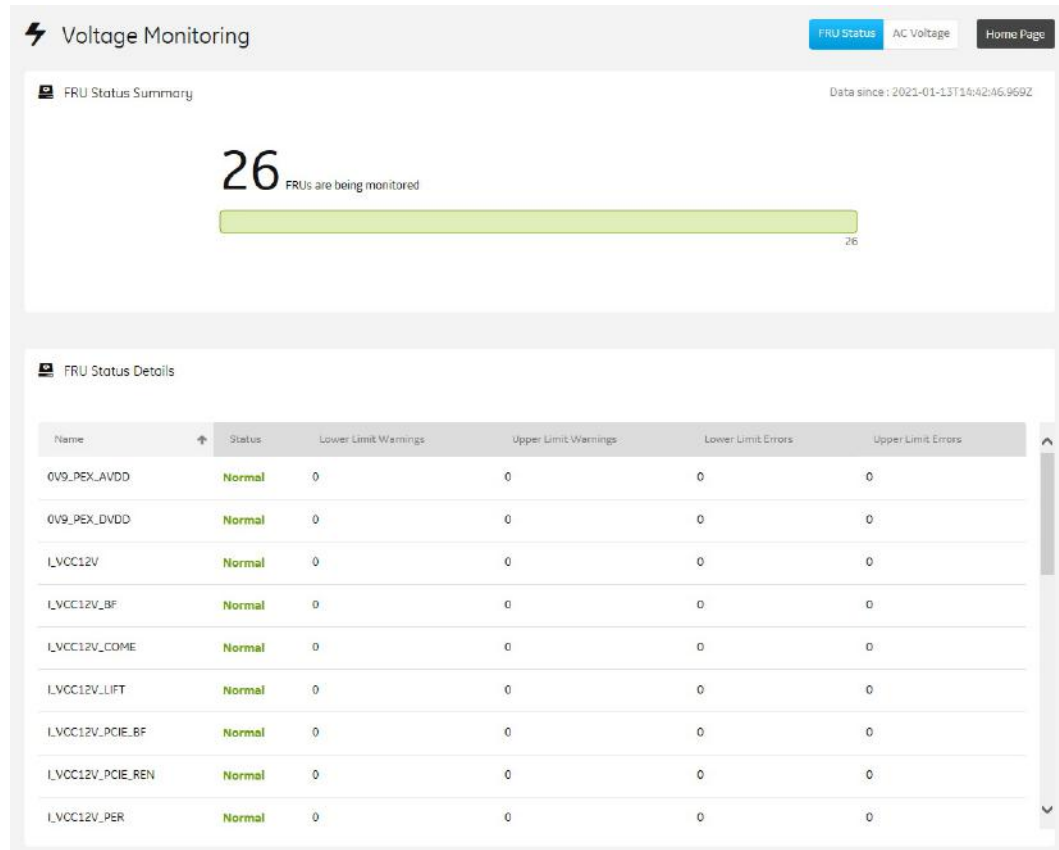


Figure 7-20: Service Desktop - Home -> System Status -> Voltage -> FRU status

2. Select **Home Page** to exit monitoring.

7.6.1.3 GPU*

1. Navigate to **Home** → **System Status** → **GPU**.

This displays the temperature, GPU usage and memory usage of the installed graphic card(s).



Figure 7-21: Service Desktop - Home -> System Status -> GPU

2. Select **Home Page** to exit monitoring.

7.6.2 Service Desktop - Diags*

The top-level menu **Diags** contains troubleshoot functionalities and diagnostics at hardware components.

- 1. **Run Diags** - The Voluson Expert Series system is capable of testing its own components using internal diagnosis hardware. These tests can be used to find not correctly working hardware more easily.
- 2. **Diags History** - view a history of the diagnostics you have run and the results



Service Desktop - Diags require a "Service Advanced" option string (= Service Key).

- Note** *Disruptive Mode needs to be turned ON before executing any diagnostic tests. Operation see [Section 7.6.2.1 "Before performing Diagnostics"](#) on page 7-22.*
- Note** *Please observe that some tests may not be available on your Voluson Expert Series. Tests depend on system type and configuration.*
- Note** *After performing any diagnostics, always disable "Disruptive Mode" and **reboot the system**. Operation see [Section 7.6.2.10 "After performing Diagnostics"](#) on page 7-37.*

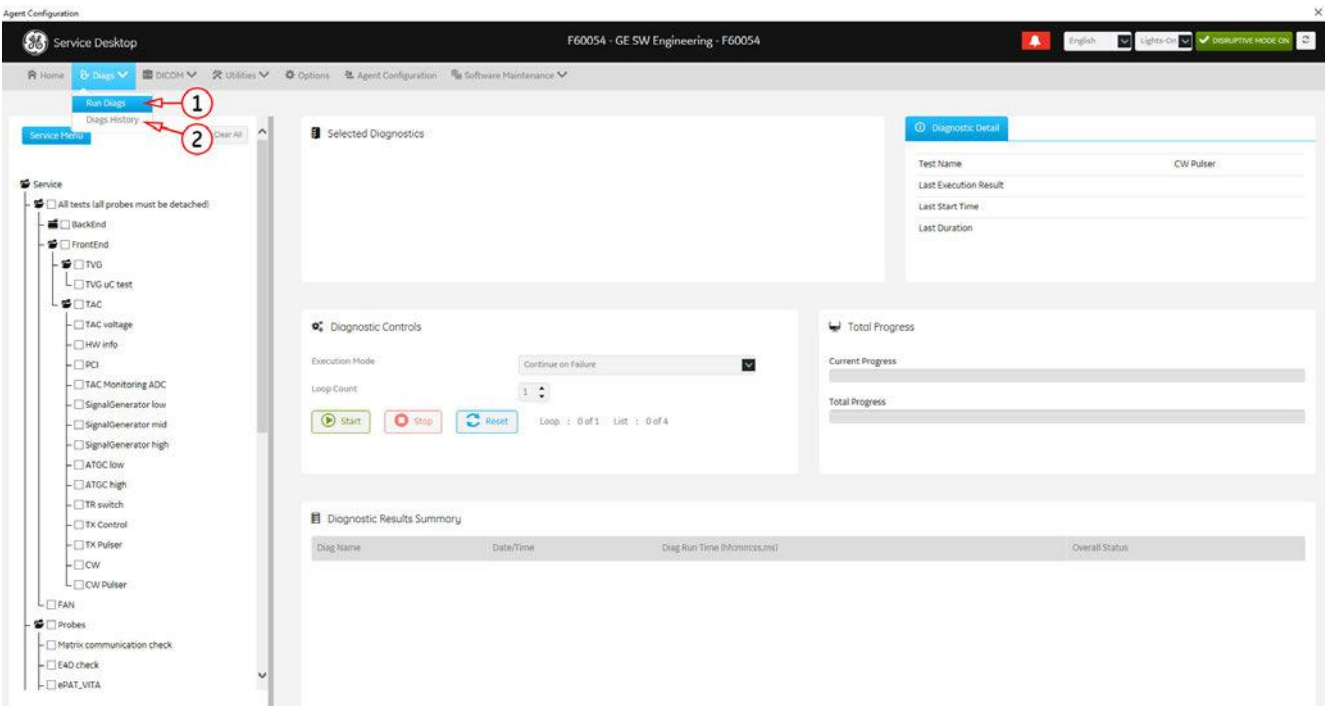


Figure 7-22: Service Desktop - Diags* when "Service Advanced" option is active

Content in this chapter

7.6.2.1 Before performing Diagnostics*	7-22
7.6.2.2 How to Run Diagnostics*	7-23
7.6.2.3 Run Diagnostics - BackEnd*	7-24
7.6.2.4 Run Diagnostics - FrontEnd*	7-24
7.6.2.5 Run Diagnostics - Fan*	7-25
7.6.2.6 Run Diagnostics - Probes*	7-26
7.6.2.7 Run Diagnostics - SMART*	7-35
7.6.2.8 Run Diagnostics - GPU*	7-36
7.6.2.9 Diags History*	7-37
7.6.2.10 After performing Diagnostics*	7-37

■ back to "Service Desktop - Home" on page 7-14

7.6.2.1 Before performing Diagnostics*

Disruptive Mode needs to be turned ON before executing any diagnostic tests.

1. In the Service Desktop window click the **Disruptive Mode Status** field (A) in the navigation bar at top of the screen. (Alternatively navigate to Utilities -> Disruptive Mode Utility.)
2. To turn on the "Disruptive Mode Utility" click **Enable** (B).

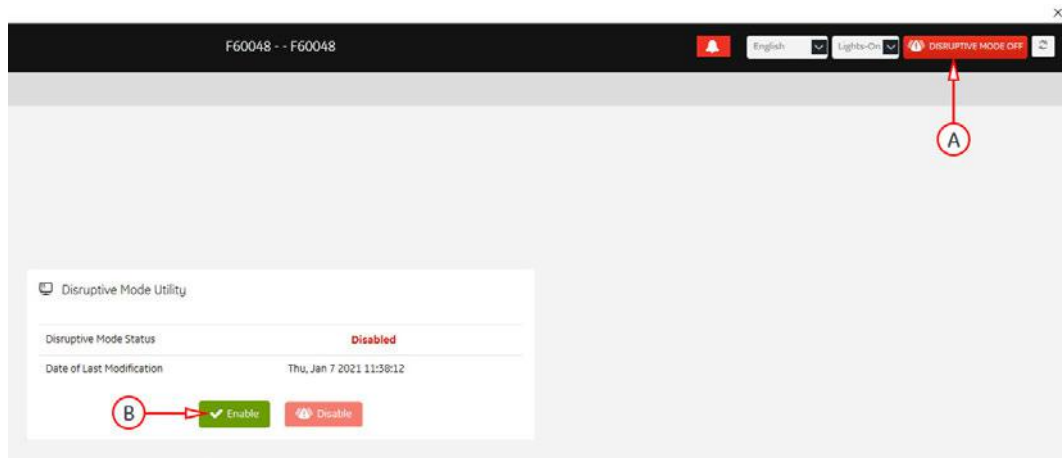


Figure 7-23: Disruptive Mode Utility

3. The following screen confirms Disruptive Status change (C). The Disruptive Mode Status field (D) on the right top of the screen changes accordingly.

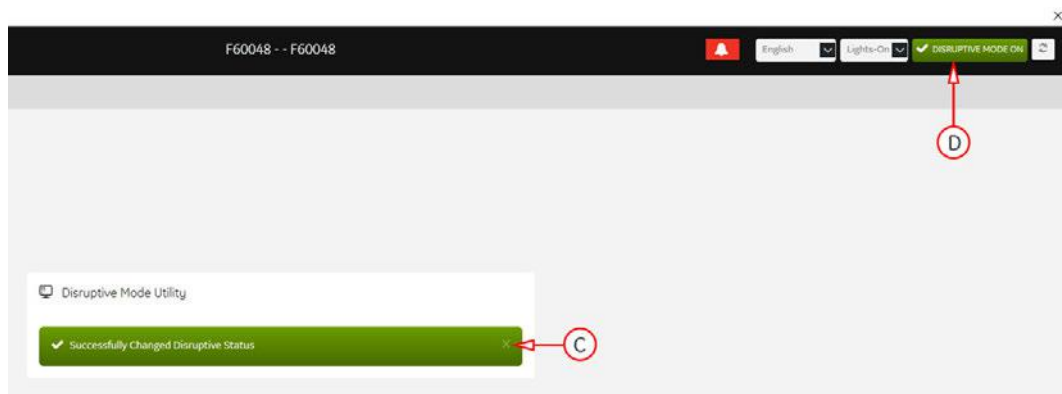


Figure 7-24: Successfully changed Disruptive Status

4. Proceed with [Section 7.6.2.2 "How to Run Diagnostics" on page 7-23](#).

7.6.2.2 How to Run Diagnostics*

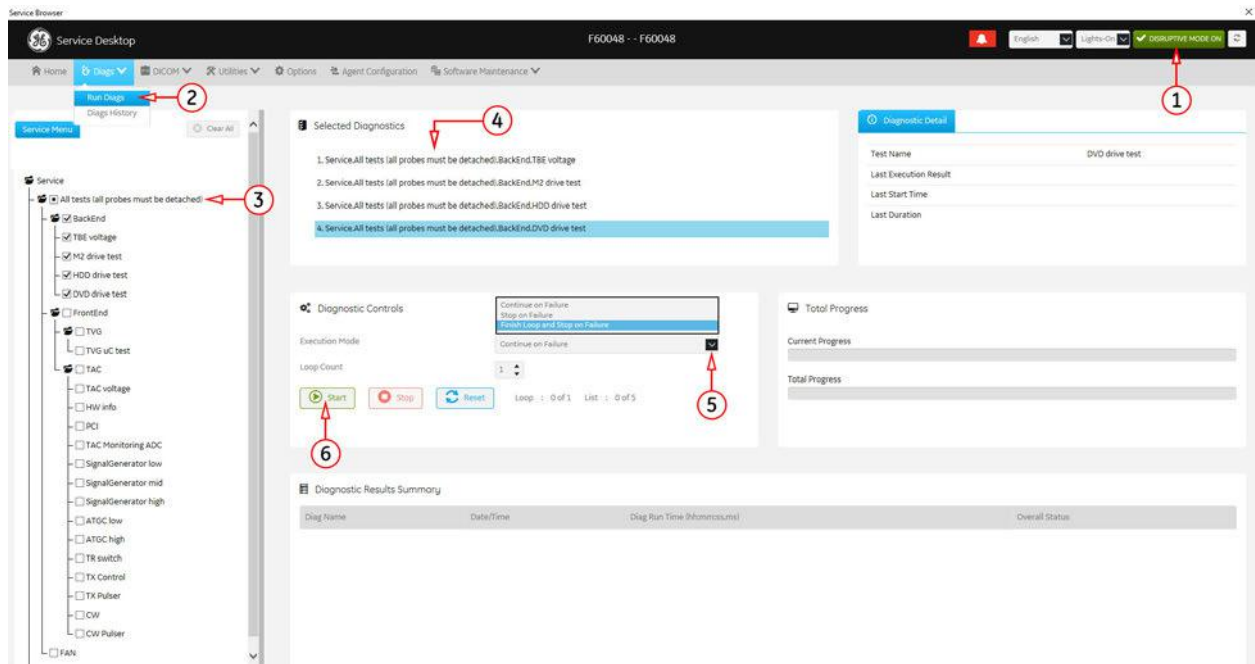


Figure 7-25: Service Desktop - Diags -> Run Diags

1. If not already done, turn Disruptive Mode **ON** to execute diagnostic tests.
2. Navigate to **Diags** → **Run Diags**.
3. From the **Service** directory tree, select the diagnostic (e.g., All tests). If required adapt your selection (check/uncheck diagnostic items).

Note

Verify if the selected diagnostic items require that all the probes are detached. If prompted (and not already done), disconnect all probes.

4. Select the desired **Execution Mode** from the pull-down menu.
5. Click **Start**.
6. View progress in the "Total Progress" area.
7. Check out results (Passed or Failed) in the "Diagnostic Results Summary" area.

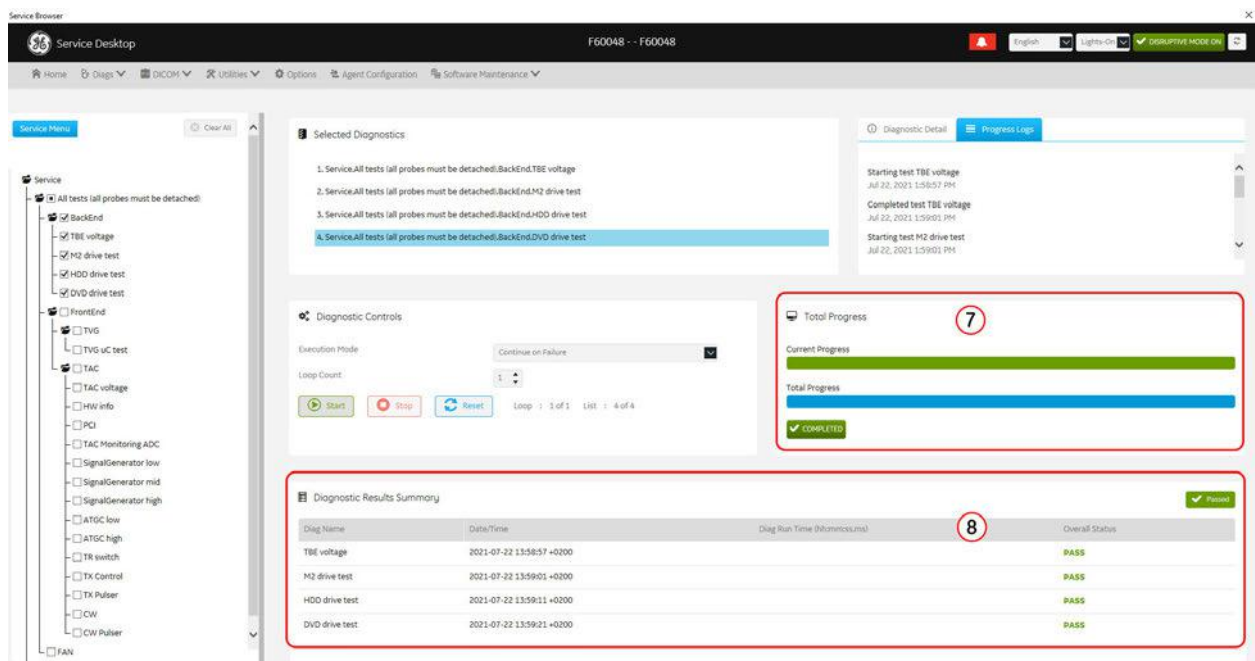


Figure 7-26: Service Desktop - Diags -> Run Diags → completed

Note

After performing any diagnostics, always disable "Disruptive Mode" and **reboot the system**. Operation see [Section 7.6.2.10 "After performing Diagnostics"](#) on page 7-37.

7.6.2.3 Run Diagnostics - BackEnd*

□ **TBE voltage**

This test pulls information regarding the voltage and current consumption from the TBE board.

Errors:

- The data read/write from/to HW fails.
- A data value is not within the limits.

□ **M2 drive test**

This test examines the read performance of the built-in M.2 SSD drive.

The diskspd.exe tool is used for a performance analysis.

Errors:

- The return value of the diskspd.exe tool.
- The read performance of the tested drive is too low.

□ **HDD drive test**

This test examines the read performance of the built-in HDD drive.

The diskspd.exe tool is used for a performance analysis.

Errors:

- The return value of the diskspd.exe tool.
- The read performance of the tested drive is too low.

□ **DVD drive test**

This test is executed automatically with start of the test software and displays the found firmware version of the DVD drive.

■ back to "[Service Desktop - Diags**](#)" on page 7-21

7.6.2.4 Run Diagnostics - FrontEnd*

TVG

□ **TVG uC test**

This test checks communication and functionality of the 3 TVG microcontrollers by

- checking IIC communication with TVG uCs,
- bringing TVG uCs in pre-defined states and checking status registers
- measuring and comparing voltages and currents in pre-defined states

Errors:

- The data read/write from/to HW fails.
- The status registers show unexpected errors.
- The data values are not within the limits.

TAC

□ **TAC Voltage**

This test checks pulls information regarding the voltage and current consumption from the TAC board.

Errors:

- The data read/write from/to HW fails.
- A data value is not within the limits.

□ **HW info**

This test checks the pulls status information from DAC0/1, Tx-FPGA's, AFE's and temperature sensors.

Errors:

- The data read/write from/to HW fails.
- A data value is not within the limits.

□ **PCI**

A PCI performance test is done and each of the 16 PCI lanes is checked.

Errors:

- The data read/write to HW fails.
 - The value of the acquired signal does not match the level/frequency/amplitude.
- **TAC Monitoring ADC**
- HW has implemented monitoring features using an ADC. This monitoring is tested by comparing some measured values against pre-defined values.
- Errors:
- The data read/write to HW fails.
 - Data values are not within the limits.
- **SignalGenerator high / low / mid**
- This test checks if the signal quality is as expected.
- Errors:
- The data read/write from/to HW fails.
 - The value of the acquired signal does not match the level/frequency/amplitude.
- **ATGC high / ATGC low**
- This test checks if the signal level is influenced as expected by the ATGC.
- Errors:
- The data read/write from/to HW fails.
 - The value of the acquired signal does not match the level/frequency/amplitude.
- **TR switch**
- This test checks if TR-switch does open and close.
- Errors:
- The data read/write from/to HW fails.
 - The value of the acquired signal does not match the level/frequency/amplitude.
- **TX Control**
- This test checks if TR-control lines are switch in the correct way.
- Errors:
- The data read/write to HW fails
 - The value of the acquired signal does not match the level/frequency/amplitude.
- **TX Pulser**
- This test checks the correct amplitude and form of a pulse on each channel. It checks pulser A and B with positive and negative waveform.
- Errors:
- The data read/write to HW fails.
 - The value of the acquired signal does not match the level/frequency/amplitude set to HW.
- **CW**
- This test checks the receive paths of the CW signal in the system.
- Errors: Amplitude, phase or noise levels not within expected ranges
- **CW Pulser**
- This test checks the transmit paths of the CW signal in the system.
- Errors: Amplitude, phase or noise levels not within expected ranges
- back to "[Service Desktop - Diags**](#)" on page 7-21

7.6.2.5 Run Diagnostics - Fan*

- **Fan**
- This test sets the fan speed for TBE and TAC at different levels and reads the tachometer signal for each fan back from HW.
- Error:
- The data read/write to HW fails.
 - The tachometer signal value does not match with the level set previously.

■ back to "[Service Desktop - Diags**](#)" on page 7-21

7.6.2.6 Run Diagnostics - Probes*

□ **Matrix communication check**

This test examines if the init and echo communication with the cache controller of the connected Matrix probe works as expected.

Errors:

- Communication errors during the test.
- Supplied voltages are not valid.

Note *At least one Matrix array probe (ML6-15D, M5Sc-D, RM7C) has to be connected to perform this test.*

□ **E4D check** (Voluson Expert 22 only)

This test examines if the communication with the cache controller and the built in electronics of the connected E4D probe (eM6C) works as expected.

To determine if the system or the connected probe has a problem the test is split into several test steps (see [Table 7-3 on page 7-28](#)). Depending on the test step (1...x) cross check with this matrix (switch connector and retest if recommend).

Operation see ["E4D check" on page 7-27](#).

Note *Only one E4D probe (eM6C G3) has to be connected when performing this test.*

□ **ePAT_VITA**

This test checks the functionality and sensitivity of probe elements.

Errors:

- The data read/write from/to HW fails.
- The probe is defect.
- System does not detect Hall zero position on motor driven probes.

Operation see ["ePAT_VITA" on page 7-31](#).

Note *This test can be performed at all probes.*

□ **iPAT_Impedance Check**

This test checks the impedance influence of probe elements to a signal provided by the built-in signal generator.

Errors:

- The data read/write from/to HW fails.
- The probe is defect.

Operation see ["iPAT_ImpedanceCheck" on page 7-33](#).

Note *This test can be performed at all probes **except** E4D (eM6C).*

■ back to ["Service Desktop - Diags" on page 7-21](#)

7.6.2.6.1 E4D check*

This test examines if the communication with the cache controller and the built in electronics of the connected E4D probe (eM6C) works as expected.

To determine if the system or the connected probe has a problem the test is split into several test steps.

Note

Only one E4D probe (eM6C G3) has to be connected when performing this test.

E4D Check Procedure



- Clean probes before the test. Any remaining coupling gel will disturb measurements.
- Be aware of the sensitive probe head. Impact to the probe head could result in irreparable damage.
- For Volume probes (e.g., RAB, RIC,...), which are filled with oil, it is recommended to position the head horizontally in such a way that any air bubbles are moved away from the array. Wait some seconds until air bubbles are surely moved aside.

1. If not already connected, plug the eM6C probe to be tested to the Voluson Expert Series system.

2. Navigate to **Diags** → **Run Diags**.

3. Check mark **E4D Check (A)** and then click **Start (B)**.

Probe diagnostic tests will run for the connected E4D probe and show up completion status (C) after few minutes.

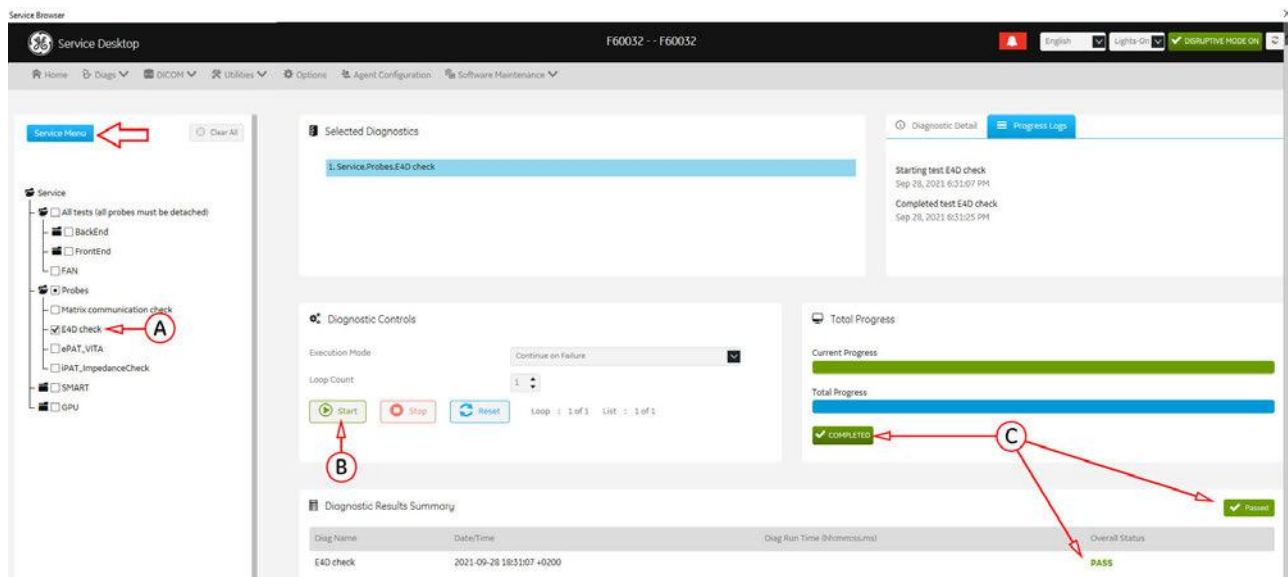


Figure 7-27: E4D Check - Passed

View Detailed Results

1. Navigate to **Diags** → **Diags History** and select the specific E4D Check test report.

Note

Move the scroll bar downwards to view specific test results for the connected E4D probe.

The screenshot displays the Service Desktop interface. The top navigation bar includes 'Home', 'Diags', 'DICOM', 'Utilities', 'Options', 'Agent Configuration', and 'Software Maintenance'. The 'Diags' section is active, showing 'Diagnostic Results History'. The 'Last Run Results' tab is selected, and the 'Service.Probes.E4D check' report is highlighted. A red arrow points to this report. The right pane shows the detailed results for this test, including Testname, Start Time, End Time, Duration, Config File, SW version, System Serial, Computername, TBE version, TAC version, TCO version, TVG version, Temperature, and Overall Result (PASSED).

Figure 7-28: Service Desktop - Diags -> Diags History - E4D Check PASSED

Table 7-3: Troubleshooting (example) - E4D check

Step #	Description / Measurement	System defect	Probe defect	unknown																																								
Step 1	Check if only one eM6C probe is connected. Step 1: E4D found at probe connector C ProbeID: 0x03000256 Probe serial number: 249062KR1																																											
Step 2	Step 2: Check system temperature circuit and system voltage supply circuit (probe NOT selected) <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th colspan="5">System temperature circuit and system voltage supply circuit (probe NOT selected)</th></tr> <tr> <th>Var</th><th>Value</th><th>Min</th><th>Max</th><th></th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Probe surface temperature (XDCR, TO/T1) [degC]</td><td>-25.3538</td><td>-273.1499</td><td>0.0000</td><td>----- --</td></tr> <tr> <td>+12V S FE [V]</td><td>12.2087</td><td>11.5000</td><td>12.5000</td><td>----- ----</td></tr> <tr> <td>+12V S FE current [A]</td><td>0.0085</td><td>0.0000</td><td>0.0500</td><td>--- -----</td></tr> <tr> <td>+5V S FE [V]</td><td>5.0716</td><td>4.5000</td><td>5.5000</td><td>----- -----</td></tr> <tr> <td>+5V S FE current [A]</td><td>0.0296</td><td>0.0000</td><td>0.1000</td><td>----- -----</td></tr> <tr> <td>PWR MOT [W]</td><td>-1.4876</td><td>-3.5000</td><td>1.5000</td><td>----- -----</td></tr> </tbody> </table> System temperature circuit and voltage check PASSED. Probe activated and PLD version 4.5 read	System temperature circuit and system voltage supply circuit (probe NOT selected)					Var	Value	Min	Max		Probe surface temperature (XDCR, TO/T1) [degC]	-25.3538	-273.1499	0.0000	----- --	+12V S FE [V]	12.2087	11.5000	12.5000	----- ----	+12V S FE current [A]	0.0085	0.0000	0.0500	--- -----	+5V S FE [V]	5.0716	4.5000	5.5000	----- -----	+5V S FE current [A]	0.0296	0.0000	0.1000	----- -----	PWR MOT [W]	-1.4876	-3.5000	1.5000	----- -----	X		
System temperature circuit and system voltage supply circuit (probe NOT selected)																																												
Var	Value	Min	Max																																									
Probe surface temperature (XDCR, TO/T1) [degC]	-25.3538	-273.1499	0.0000	----- --																																								
+12V S FE [V]	12.2087	11.5000	12.5000	----- ----																																								
+12V S FE current [A]	0.0085	0.0000	0.0500	--- -----																																								
+5V S FE [V]	5.0716	4.5000	5.5000	----- -----																																								
+5V S FE current [A]	0.0296	0.0000	0.1000	----- -----																																								
PWR MOT [W]	-1.4876	-3.5000	1.5000	----- -----																																								
Step 3	Step 3: Check PSS signal at probe connector C PSS check PASSED.			X *)																																								

Step #	Description / Measurement	System defect	Probe defect	unknown																																																																																																																																																																					
Step 4	Step 4: Check probe cache controller communication at probe connector C CacheController version 4.5 found CacheController check [LoopCnt: 500] PASSED.		X	X **)																																																																																																																																																																					
Step 5	Step 5: Check probe temperature circuit and probe voltage supply at probe connector C G3 limits used 2828 values sampled. <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th colspan="5">Probe surface temperature (XDCR, TO/T1) [degC]: (Min: 25.9322 Avg: 25.9322 Max: 25.9322)</th> </tr> <tr> <th>Var</th><th>Value</th><th>Min</th><th>Max</th><th></th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Probe surface temperature (XDCR, TO/T1) [degC]</td><td>25.9322</td><td>10.0000</td><td>49.0000</td><td>----- -----</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th colspan="5">+12V S FE [V]: (Min: 12.1642 Avg: 12.1642 Max: 12.1642)</th> </tr> <tr> <th>Var</th><th>Value</th><th>Min</th><th>Max</th><th></th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>+12V S FE [V]</td><td>12.1642</td><td>11.5000</td><td>12.5000</td><td>----- -----</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th colspan="5">+12V S FE current [A]: (Min: 0.2120 Avg: 0.2120 Max: 0.2120)</th> </tr> <tr> <th>Var</th><th>Value</th><th>Min</th><th>Max</th><th></th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>+12V S FE current [A]</td><td>0.2120</td><td>0.1000</td><td>0.4000</td><td>----- -----</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th colspan="5">+5V S FE [V]: (Min: 4.9564 Avg: 4.9564 Max: 4.9564)</th> </tr> <tr> <th>Var</th><th>Value</th><th>Min</th><th>Max</th><th></th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>+5V S FE [V]</td><td>4.9564</td><td>4.5000</td><td>5.5000</td><td>----- -----</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th colspan="5">+5V S FE current [A]: (Min: 0.5656 Avg: 0.5656 Max: 0.5656)</th> </tr> <tr> <th>Var</th><th>Value</th><th>Min</th><th>Max</th><th></th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>+5V S FE current [A]</td><td>0.5656</td><td>0.4500</td><td>0.6500</td><td>----- -----</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th colspan="5">PWR MOT [W]: (Min: 2.9873 Avg: 2.9873 Max: 2.9873)</th> </tr> <tr> <th>Var</th><th>Value</th><th>Min</th><th>Max</th><th></th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>PWR MOT [W]</td><td>2.9873</td><td>2.4000</td><td>4.2000</td><td>----- -----</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th colspan="5">I MOT PRIM [A]: (Min: 0.4399 Avg: 0.4399 Max: 0.4399)</th> </tr> <tr> <th>Var</th><th>Value</th><th>Min</th><th>Max</th><th></th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>I MOT PRIM [A]</td><td>0.4399</td><td>0.2000</td><td>0.7000</td><td>----- -----</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th colspan="5">PWR 5V [W]: (Min: 2.8033 Avg: 2.8033 Max: 2.8033)</th> </tr> <tr> <th>Var</th><th>Value</th><th>Min</th><th>Max</th><th></th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>PWR 5V [W]</td><td>2.8033</td><td>2.0000</td><td>3.6000</td><td>----- -----</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th colspan="5">PWR 12V [W]: (Min: 2.5835 Avg: 2.5835 Max: 2.5835)</th> </tr> <tr> <th>Var</th><th>Value</th><th>Min</th><th>Max</th><th></th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>PWR 12V [W]</td><td>2.5835</td><td>1.8000</td><td>3.2000</td><td>----- -----</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th colspan="5">I Cos DRV [A]: (Min: 487.4646 Avg: 487.4646 Max: 487.4646)</th> </tr> <tr> <th>Var</th><th>Value</th><th>Min</th><th>Max</th><th></th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>I Cos DRV [A]</td><td>487.4646</td><td>380.0000</td><td>580.0000</td><td>----- -----</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th colspan="5">I Cos RTN [A]: (Min: 487.1411 Avg: 487.1411 Max: 487.1411)</th> </tr> <tr> <th>Var</th><th>Value</th><th>Min</th><th>Max</th><th></th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>I Cos RTN [A]</td><td>487.1411</td><td>380.0000</td><td>580.0000</td><td>----- -----</td></tr> </tbody> </table> System temperature circuit and voltage check PASSED.	Probe surface temperature (XDCR, TO/T1) [degC]: (Min: 25.9322 Avg: 25.9322 Max: 25.9322)					Var	Value	Min	Max		Probe surface temperature (XDCR, TO/T1) [degC]	25.9322	10.0000	49.0000	----- -----	+12V S FE [V]: (Min: 12.1642 Avg: 12.1642 Max: 12.1642)					Var	Value	Min	Max		+12V S FE [V]	12.1642	11.5000	12.5000	----- -----	+12V S FE current [A]: (Min: 0.2120 Avg: 0.2120 Max: 0.2120)					Var	Value	Min	Max		+12V S FE current [A]	0.2120	0.1000	0.4000	----- -----	+5V S FE [V]: (Min: 4.9564 Avg: 4.9564 Max: 4.9564)					Var	Value	Min	Max		+5V S FE [V]	4.9564	4.5000	5.5000	----- -----	+5V S FE current [A]: (Min: 0.5656 Avg: 0.5656 Max: 0.5656)					Var	Value	Min	Max		+5V S FE current [A]	0.5656	0.4500	0.6500	----- -----	PWR MOT [W]: (Min: 2.9873 Avg: 2.9873 Max: 2.9873)					Var	Value	Min	Max		PWR MOT [W]	2.9873	2.4000	4.2000	----- -----	I MOT PRIM [A]: (Min: 0.4399 Avg: 0.4399 Max: 0.4399)					Var	Value	Min	Max		I MOT PRIM [A]	0.4399	0.2000	0.7000	----- -----	PWR 5V [W]: (Min: 2.8033 Avg: 2.8033 Max: 2.8033)					Var	Value	Min	Max		PWR 5V [W]	2.8033	2.0000	3.6000	----- -----	PWR 12V [W]: (Min: 2.5835 Avg: 2.5835 Max: 2.5835)					Var	Value	Min	Max		PWR 12V [W]	2.5835	1.8000	3.2000	----- -----	I Cos DRV [A]: (Min: 487.4646 Avg: 487.4646 Max: 487.4646)					Var	Value	Min	Max		I Cos DRV [A]	487.4646	380.0000	580.0000	----- -----	I Cos RTN [A]: (Min: 487.1411 Avg: 487.1411 Max: 487.1411)					Var	Value	Min	Max		I Cos RTN [A]	487.1411	380.0000	580.0000	----- -----		X	
Probe surface temperature (XDCR, TO/T1) [degC]: (Min: 25.9322 Avg: 25.9322 Max: 25.9322)																																																																																																																																																																									
Var	Value	Min	Max																																																																																																																																																																						
Probe surface temperature (XDCR, TO/T1) [degC]	25.9322	10.0000	49.0000	----- -----																																																																																																																																																																					
+12V S FE [V]: (Min: 12.1642 Avg: 12.1642 Max: 12.1642)																																																																																																																																																																									
Var	Value	Min	Max																																																																																																																																																																						
+12V S FE [V]	12.1642	11.5000	12.5000	----- -----																																																																																																																																																																					
+12V S FE current [A]: (Min: 0.2120 Avg: 0.2120 Max: 0.2120)																																																																																																																																																																									
Var	Value	Min	Max																																																																																																																																																																						
+12V S FE current [A]	0.2120	0.1000	0.4000	----- -----																																																																																																																																																																					
+5V S FE [V]: (Min: 4.9564 Avg: 4.9564 Max: 4.9564)																																																																																																																																																																									
Var	Value	Min	Max																																																																																																																																																																						
+5V S FE [V]	4.9564	4.5000	5.5000	----- -----																																																																																																																																																																					
+5V S FE current [A]: (Min: 0.5656 Avg: 0.5656 Max: 0.5656)																																																																																																																																																																									
Var	Value	Min	Max																																																																																																																																																																						
+5V S FE current [A]	0.5656	0.4500	0.6500	----- -----																																																																																																																																																																					
PWR MOT [W]: (Min: 2.9873 Avg: 2.9873 Max: 2.9873)																																																																																																																																																																									
Var	Value	Min	Max																																																																																																																																																																						
PWR MOT [W]	2.9873	2.4000	4.2000	----- -----																																																																																																																																																																					
I MOT PRIM [A]: (Min: 0.4399 Avg: 0.4399 Max: 0.4399)																																																																																																																																																																									
Var	Value	Min	Max																																																																																																																																																																						
I MOT PRIM [A]	0.4399	0.2000	0.7000	----- -----																																																																																																																																																																					
PWR 5V [W]: (Min: 2.8033 Avg: 2.8033 Max: 2.8033)																																																																																																																																																																									
Var	Value	Min	Max																																																																																																																																																																						
PWR 5V [W]	2.8033	2.0000	3.6000	----- -----																																																																																																																																																																					
PWR 12V [W]: (Min: 2.5835 Avg: 2.5835 Max: 2.5835)																																																																																																																																																																									
Var	Value	Min	Max																																																																																																																																																																						
PWR 12V [W]	2.5835	1.8000	3.2000	----- -----																																																																																																																																																																					
I Cos DRV [A]: (Min: 487.4646 Avg: 487.4646 Max: 487.4646)																																																																																																																																																																									
Var	Value	Min	Max																																																																																																																																																																						
I Cos DRV [A]	487.4646	380.0000	580.0000	----- -----																																																																																																																																																																					
I Cos RTN [A]: (Min: 487.1411 Avg: 487.1411 Max: 487.1411)																																																																																																																																																																									
Var	Value	Min	Max																																																																																																																																																																						
I Cos RTN [A]	487.1411	380.0000	580.0000	----- -----																																																																																																																																																																					

Step #	Description / Measurement	System defect	Probe defect	unknown																																								
Step 6	Step 6: Check probe electronic temperature, XDCR sensor number and XDCR temperature at probe connector C Stop reading temperature after 0 runs. <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th colspan="5">Probe electronic temperature, XDCR sensor number and XDCR temperature</th></tr> <tr> <th>Var</th><th>Value</th><th>Min</th><th>Max</th><th></th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Electronic temperature [degC]</td><td>27.2461</td><td>0.0000</td><td>60.0000</td><td>----- -----</td></tr> <tr> <td>Probe surface temperature (XDCR, T0/T1) sensor number []</td><td>1.0000</td><td>0.0000</td><td>3.0000</td><td>----- -----</td></tr> <tr> <td>Probe surface temperature (XDCR, T0/T1) [degC]</td><td>25.9324</td><td>10.0000</td><td>49.0000</td><td>----- -----</td></tr> </tbody> </table> Electronic temperature, XDCR sensor number and XDCR temperature check PASSED.	Probe electronic temperature, XDCR sensor number and XDCR temperature					Var	Value	Min	Max		Electronic temperature [degC]	27.2461	0.0000	60.0000	----- -----	Probe surface temperature (XDCR, T0/T1) sensor number []	1.0000	0.0000	3.0000	----- -----	Probe surface temperature (XDCR, T0/T1) [degC]	25.9324	10.0000	49.0000	----- -----		X																
Probe electronic temperature, XDCR sensor number and XDCR temperature																																												
Var	Value	Min	Max																																									
Electronic temperature [degC]	27.2461	0.0000	60.0000	----- -----																																								
Probe surface temperature (XDCR, T0/T1) sensor number []	1.0000	0.0000	3.0000	----- -----																																								
Probe surface temperature (XDCR, T0/T1) [degC]	25.9324	10.0000	49.0000	----- -----																																								
Step 7	Step 7: Check probe hardware (ping ASIC test) at probe connector C ASIC board ping PASSED [LoopCnt: 20]		X																																									
Step 8	Step 8: Check probe hardware (ASIC comm. test) at probe connector C ASIC board check [LoopCnt: 50] PASSED		X																																									
Step 9	Step 9: Check system temperature circuit and system voltage supply circuit (probe NOT selected) <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th colspan="5">System temperature circuit and system voltage supply circuit (probe NOT selected)</th></tr> <tr> <th>Var</th><th>Value</th><th>Min</th><th>Max</th><th></th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Probe surface temperature (XDCR, T0/T1) [degC]</td><td>-25.4796</td><td>-273.1499</td><td>0.0000</td><td>----- --</td></tr> <tr> <td>+12V S FE [V]</td><td>12.2009</td><td>11.5000</td><td>12.5000</td><td>----- -----</td></tr> <tr> <td>+12V S FE current [A]</td><td>0.0049</td><td>0.0000</td><td>0.0500</td><td>-- -----</td></tr> <tr> <td>+5V S FE [V]</td><td>5.0713</td><td>4.5000</td><td>5.5000</td><td>----- -----</td></tr> <tr> <td>+5V S FE current [A]</td><td>0.0299</td><td>0.0000</td><td>0.1000</td><td>----- -----</td></tr> <tr> <td>PWR MOT [W]</td><td>-1.4565</td><td>-3.5000</td><td>1.5000</td><td>----- -----</td></tr> </tbody> </table> System temperature circuit and voltage check PASSED.	System temperature circuit and system voltage supply circuit (probe NOT selected)					Var	Value	Min	Max		Probe surface temperature (XDCR, T0/T1) [degC]	-25.4796	-273.1499	0.0000	----- --	+12V S FE [V]	12.2009	11.5000	12.5000	----- -----	+12V S FE current [A]	0.0049	0.0000	0.0500	-- -----	+5V S FE [V]	5.0713	4.5000	5.5000	----- -----	+5V S FE current [A]	0.0299	0.0000	0.1000	----- -----	PWR MOT [W]	-1.4565	-3.5000	1.5000	----- -----	X		
System temperature circuit and system voltage supply circuit (probe NOT selected)																																												
Var	Value	Min	Max																																									
Probe surface temperature (XDCR, T0/T1) [degC]	-25.4796	-273.1499	0.0000	----- --																																								
+12V S FE [V]	12.2009	11.5000	12.5000	----- -----																																								
+12V S FE current [A]	0.0049	0.0000	0.0500	-- -----																																								
+5V S FE [V]	5.0713	4.5000	5.5000	----- -----																																								
+5V S FE current [A]	0.0299	0.0000	0.1000	----- -----																																								
PWR MOT [W]	-1.4565	-3.5000	1.5000	----- -----																																								

Legend:

- *) If test failed, repeat test on other probe connector(s)
If test failed on all probe connectors most likely the probe is defect. Double check with another probe if possible.
- **) Possible defect on the LVDS IF -> Repeat test on other probe connector(s)
If test failed on all probe connectors most likely the probe is defect. If possible connect a Matrix probe (e.g., RM7C or ML6-15-D) and check if an error occurs during probe selection. If yes then most likely the system HW is defect.

■ back to *"Service Desktop - Diags"* on page 7-21

7.6.2.6.2 ePAT_VITA*

This test checks the functionality and sensitivity of probe elements.

Note *This test can be performed at all probes.*

ePAT_VITA Procedure



- Clean probes before the test. Any remaining coupling gel will disturb measurements.
- Be aware of the sensitive probe head. Impact to the probe head could result in irreparable damage.
- For Volume probes (e.g., RAB, RIC,...), which are filled with oil, it is recommended to position the head horizontally in such a way that any air bubbles are moved away from the array. Wait some seconds until air bubbles are surely moved aside.

1. If not already connected, plug all probes to be tested to the Voluson Expert Series system.
2. Navigate to **Diags** → **Run Diags**.
3. Check mark **ePAT_VITA (A)** and then click **Start (B)**.

Probe diagnostic tests will run for all connected probes and show up completion status **(C)** after few minutes.

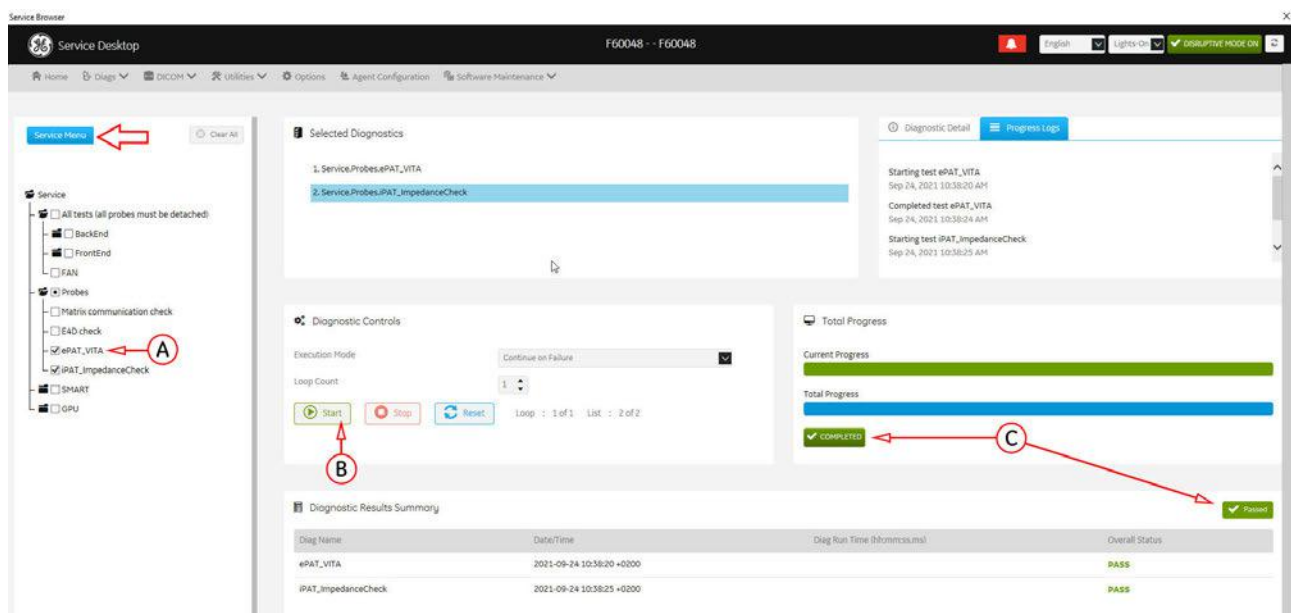


Figure 7-29: ePAT_VITA - Passed

View Detailed Results

1. Navigate to **Diags** → **Diags History** and select the specific ePAT_VITA test report.

Note

Move the scroll bar downwards to view specific probe assessment results of all connected probes.

- Test output** - shows details about tested probe
- Assessment result** - lists up abnormal probe elements (in case there are any)
- Probe element sensitivity** - plot and table show detailed element sensitivity

Service Browser

Service Desktop F60048 - F60048

Home Diags DICOM Utilities Options Agent Configuration Software Maintenance

Diagnostic Results History Last Run Results All Results

22.09.2021_17.23.05.288

- Service.All tests (all probes must be detached).FrontEnd.TAC.TAC voltage 22.09.2021_17.23.04.628
- Service.All tests (all probes must be detached).FrontEnd.TAC.TR switch 22.09.2021_17.23.06.605
- Service.All tests (all probes must be detached).FrontEnd.TAC.TX Control 22.09.2021_17.23.06.825
- Service.All tests (all probes must be detached).FrontEnd.TVG.uC test 22.09.2021_17.23.07.044
- Service.All tests (all probes must be detached).FrontEnd.TVG.uC test 22.09.2021_17.23.04.608
- Service.Probes.ePAT_VITA 17.09.2021_08.40.365
- Service.Probes.ePAT_VITA 24.09.2021_10.38.22.621**
- Service.Probes.iPAT_impedanceCheck 17.09.2021_08.40.42.195
- Service.Probes.iPAT_impedanceCheck 24.09.2021_10.38.27.417

← 1 2 3 4 →

Diagnostic Results History

Testname: Service.Probes.ePAT_VITA

Start Time: 24.September.2021 10:38:22

End Time: 24.September.2021 10:38:24

Duration: 00:00:02

Config File: C:\V730\Distribution\Hardware\SW\BF_Hardware\BF_Test\iePAT_VITA.ini

SW version: EC400 40.0.0.5743 ME7 (Sep 17 2021, 09:10:28), BNR:5743, SysDVD revision: 0

SystemSerial: F60032

Computername:

TBE version: PC: TBE FR: 8 AR: A SN: 00087 BCSN: (5670_2103_00087) --- uC FW: 0x3237

TAC version: PC: TAC FR: 0 AR: F SN: 00016 BCSN: (5670_2030_00016) --- uC FW: 0x0206

TCO version: PC: TCO FR: 0 AR: D SN: 00149 BCSN: (5670_2102_00149)

TVG version: TVG FR: 3 AR: A SN: 00214 BCSN: (5089_1220_00214) --- HVAB uC FW: 36 Motor uC FW: 30

Temperature: DACQ_0: 75.30degC, DACQ_1: 72.84degC, TX0: 69.76degC, TX1: 66.20degC, TX2: 70.01degC, TX3: 64.97degC

Overall Result: **PASSED**

Tables (click to jump to it):

Probe element sensitivity [dB]: (Min: -4.1809 Avg: 48.0788 Max: 51.4188)

Test output:

RIC6-12-D on probe connector B

256 channels used

Date of manufacturing (DD/MM/YYYY): 14-Feb-2013

probe usage

SystemID	Date of first use	Date of last use	hommiss
E69000	24-Aug-2021	25-Aug-2021	9d 21:09:58
F60054	25-Aug-2021	31-Aug-2021	9d 23:54:06
A09999	20-Sep-2021	20-Sep-2021	9d 23:49:38
F60032	21-Sep-2021	24-Sep-2021	10d 01:27:44
EC400K1	24-Aug-2021	24-Aug-2021	9d 21:05:50

probe SD/4D usage

V-sweeps	V-Time[s]	Angle average	Angle changes
1483	336	68.06	23

Assessment result:

Probe elements with a sensitivity of -5.0dB below average: --

Probe elements with a sensitivity of -10.0dB below average: 0, 2, 185, 253, 255

Probe test passed.

Probe element sensitivity visualization

Probe element sensitivity [dB]: (Min: -4.1809 Avg: 48.0788 Max: 51.4188)

Var	Value	Min	Max	
Element 000	-1.7506	-4.1809	51.4188	-
Element 001	49.3182	-4.1809	51.4188	 -
Element 002	-0.4243	-4.1809	51.4188	-
Element 003	51.3760	-4.1809	51.4188	

Figure 7-30: Service Desktop - Diags -> Diags History (enlarged)

back to "Service Desktop - Diags*" on page 7-21

7.6.2.6.3 iPAT_ImpedanceCheck*

This test checks the impedance influence of probe elements to a signal provided by the built-in signal generator.

Note This test can be performed at all probes **except** E4D (eM6C).

iPAT_ImpedanceCheck Procedure



- Clean probes before the test. Any remaining coupling gel will disturb measurements.
- Be aware of the sensitive probe head. Impact to the probe head could result in irreparable damage.
- For Volume probes (e.g., RAB, RIC,...), which are filled with oil, it is recommended to position the head horizontally in such a way that any air bubbles are moved away from the array. Wait some seconds until air bubbles are surely moved aside.

1. If not already connected, plug all probes to be tested to the Voluson Expert Series system.
2. Navigate to **Diags** → **Run Diags**.
3. Check mark **iPAT_ImpedanceCheck** (A) and then click **Start** (B).

Probe diagnostic tests will run for all connected probes and show up completion status (C) after few minutes.

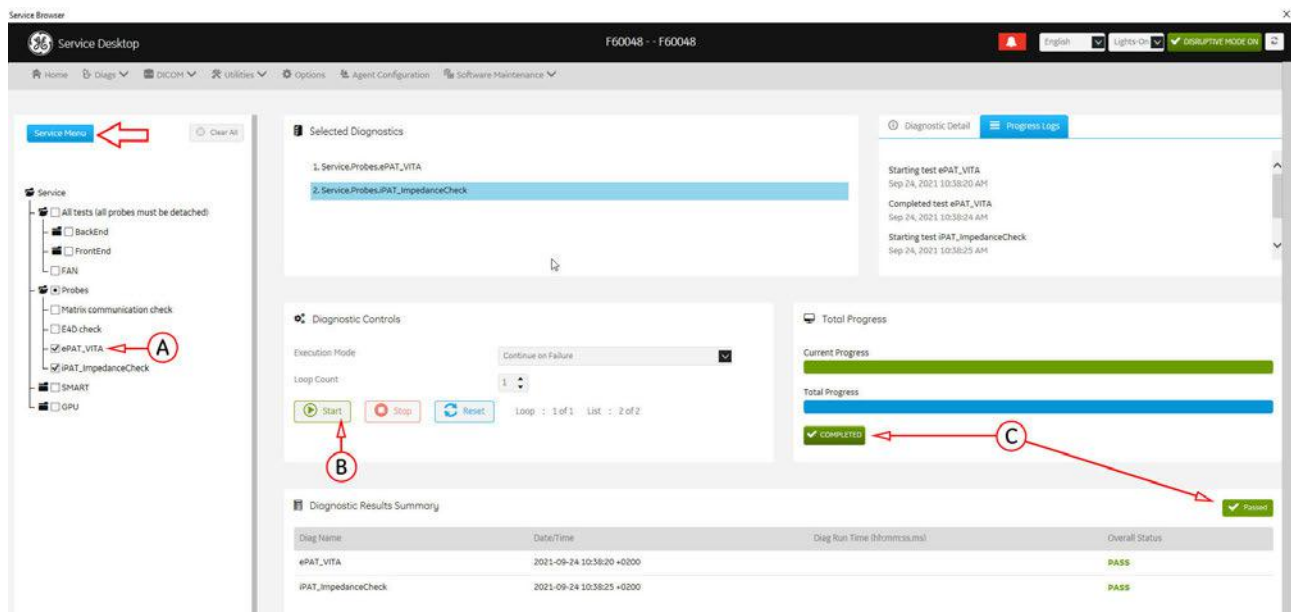


Figure 7-31: iPAT_Impedance Check - Passed

View Detailed Results

1. Navigate to **Diags** → **Diags History** and select the specific iPAT_ImpedanceCheck test report.
Move the scroll bar downwards to view specific probe assessment results of all connected probes.

Note

- a. **Test output** - shows details about tested probe
- b. **Assessment result** - lists up abnormal probe elements (in case there are any)
- c. **Probe element impedance** - plot and table show detailed element impedance

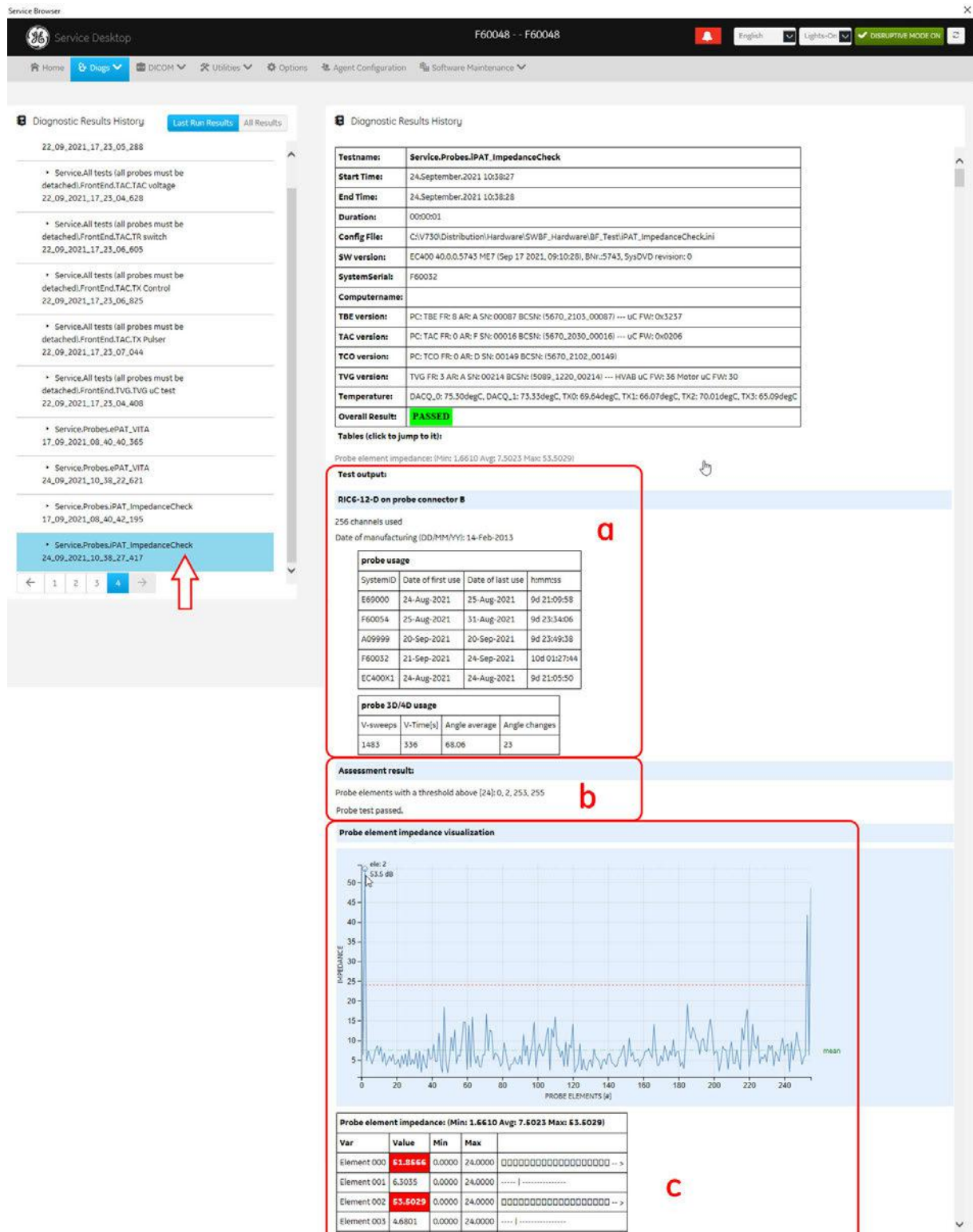


Figure 7-32: Service Desktop - Diags -> Diags History (enlarged)

back to "Service Desktop - Diags*" on page 7-21

7.6.2.7 Run Diagnostics - SMART*

The S.M.A.R.T (Self Monitoring, Analysis and Reporting Technology) HDD Status - Reporting tool is a piece of software, which is present on most modern hard disks that continuously gathers data about performance and operations, such as hour meter, temperature, read/write failures, etc.

The manufacturer of the hard disk limits these measurements to certain thresholds. When these thresholds are met (e.g., due to old age or excessively high temperatures), the S.M.A.R.T software concludes that the hard disk is very likely to fail within the next 24 hours.

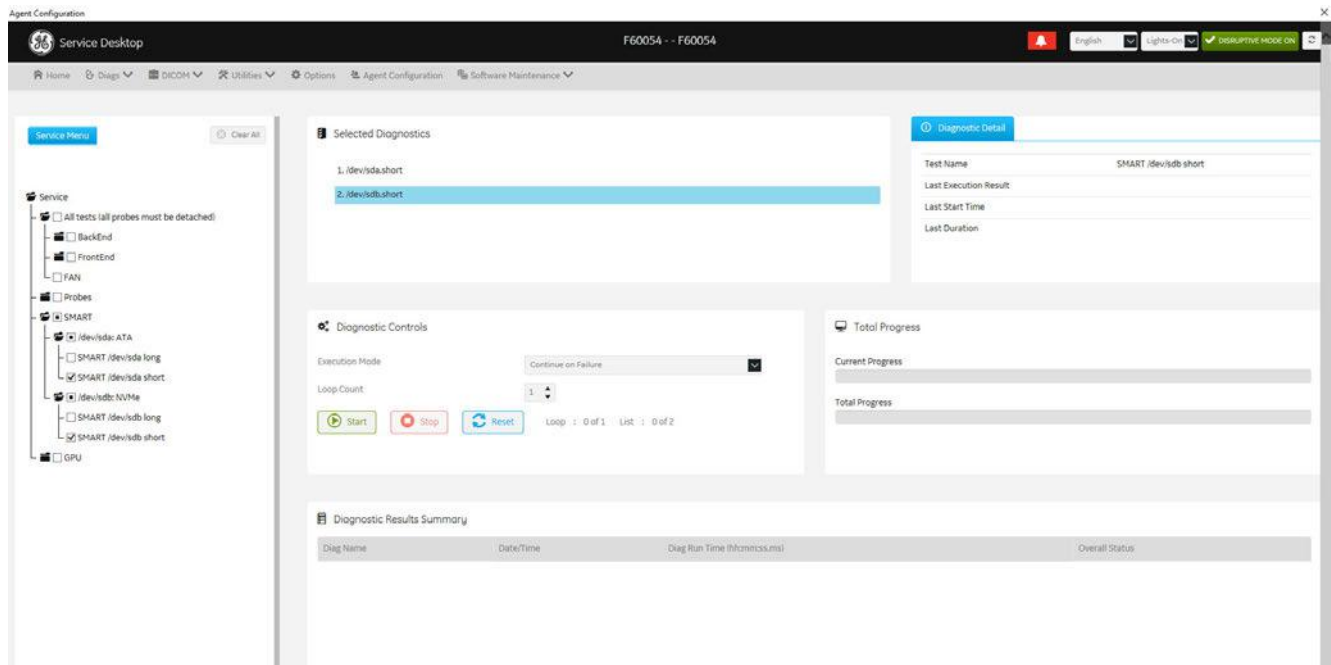


Figure 7-33: Service Desktop - Diags -> Run Diags -> SMART

The duration time of the tests depend on the installed hard disk types. SMART Tests for M.2 NVMe disks are almost instant, while tests of optical hard disks depend on read/writing speed. Typical durations for Hard disk drives: long ~ 5 minutes, short ~ 1.5 minutes.

- **dev/sda** (ATA device)
 - Smart Tests for first installed Hard disk (D: User partition); usually 2TB HDD or optional 1TB SSD
 - SMART /dev/sda long: Wait for test to complete.
 - SMART /dev/sda short: Wait for test to complete.
- **dev/sdb** (NVMe device)
 - Smart Tests for second installed Hard disk (C: System partition); usually 120/128GB M.2 SSD
 - SMART /dev/sdb long: Wait for test to complete.
 - SMART /dev/sdb short: Wait for test to complete.

■ back to "[Service Desktop - Diags](#)" on page 7-21

7.6.2.8 Run Diagnostics - GPU*

GPU Memory Test executes a software-based tester to test for "soft errors" in GPU memory or logic. It uses a variety of proven test patterns to verify the correct operation of GPU memory and logic.

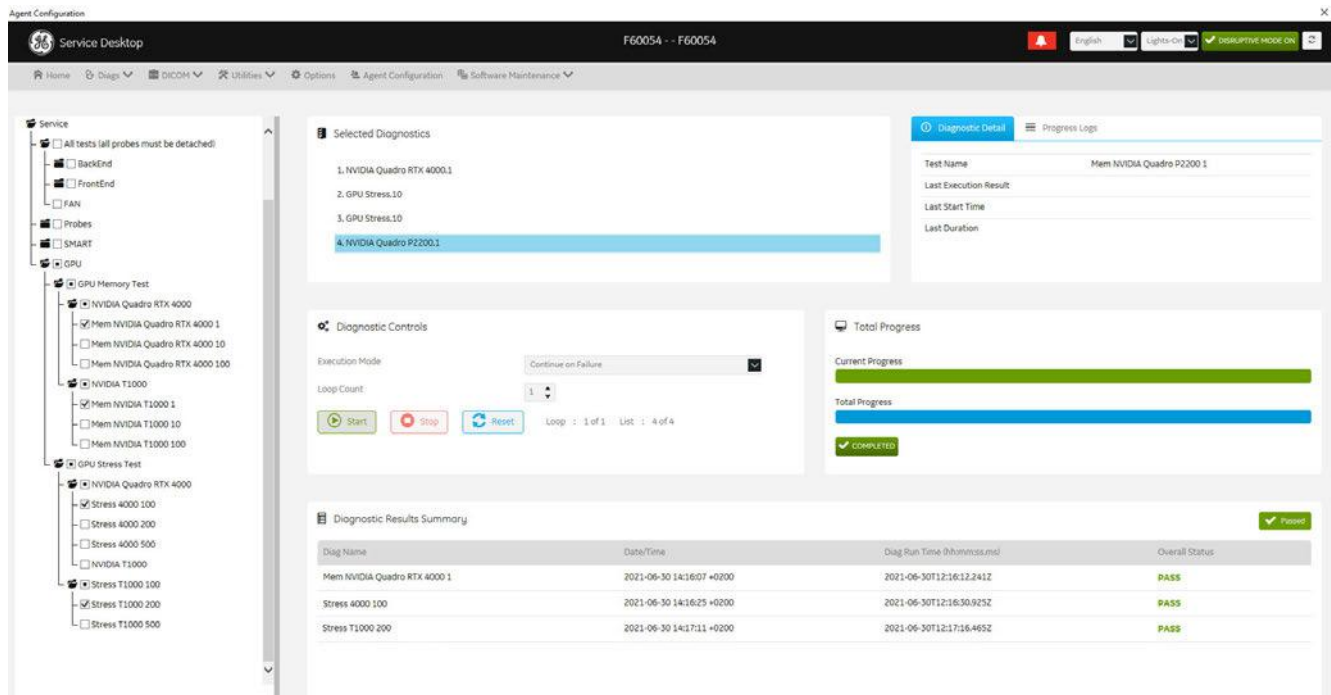


Figure 7-34: Service Desktop - Diags -> Run Diags -> GPU

□ GPU Memory Test

GPU Memory Test executes a software-based tester to test for "soft errors" in GPU memory or logic. It uses a variety of proven test patterns to verify the correct operation of GPU memory and logic.

- NVIDIA Quadro RTX 4000
 - Mem NVIDIA Quadro RTX 4000 1: Wait about 10 seconds for test to complete.
 - Mem NVIDIA Quadro RTX 4000 10: Wait about 30 seconds for test to complete.
 - Mem NVIDIA Quadro RTX 4000 100: Wait about 4 minutes for test to complete.
- NVIDIA Quadro T1000
 - Mem NVIDIA Quadro T1000 1: Wait about 10 seconds minutes for test to complete.
 - Mem NVIDIA Quadro T1000 10: Wait about 1 minute for test to complete.
 - Mem NVIDIA Quadro T1000 100: Wait about 9 minutes for test to complete.

□ GPU Stress Test

GPU Stress Test executes a software-based tester to test for "soft errors" in GPU memory or logic.

It uses a high computational load and memory usage to verify the correct operation of GPU memory and logic under heavy usage.

- NVIDIA Quadro RTX 4000
 - Stress 4000 100: Wait about 3 minutes for test to complete.
 - Stress 4000 200: Wait about 5 minutes for test to complete.
 - Stress 4000 500: Wait about 11 minutes for test to complete.
- NVIDIA Quadro T1000
 - Stress T1000 100: Wait about 7 minutes for test to complete.
 - Stress T1000 200: Wait about 15 minutes for test to complete.
 - Stress T1000 500: Wait about 35 minutes for test to complete.

■ back to "[Service Desktop - Diags](#)" on page 7-21

7.6.2.9 Diags History*

Navigate to **Diags** → **Diags History** to view a history of the diagnostics run on the Voluson Expert Series.

Select the test result to display detailed Diagnostic Result History.

Test results are also located in D:\export\ for retrieval by the OnLine Center (OLC).

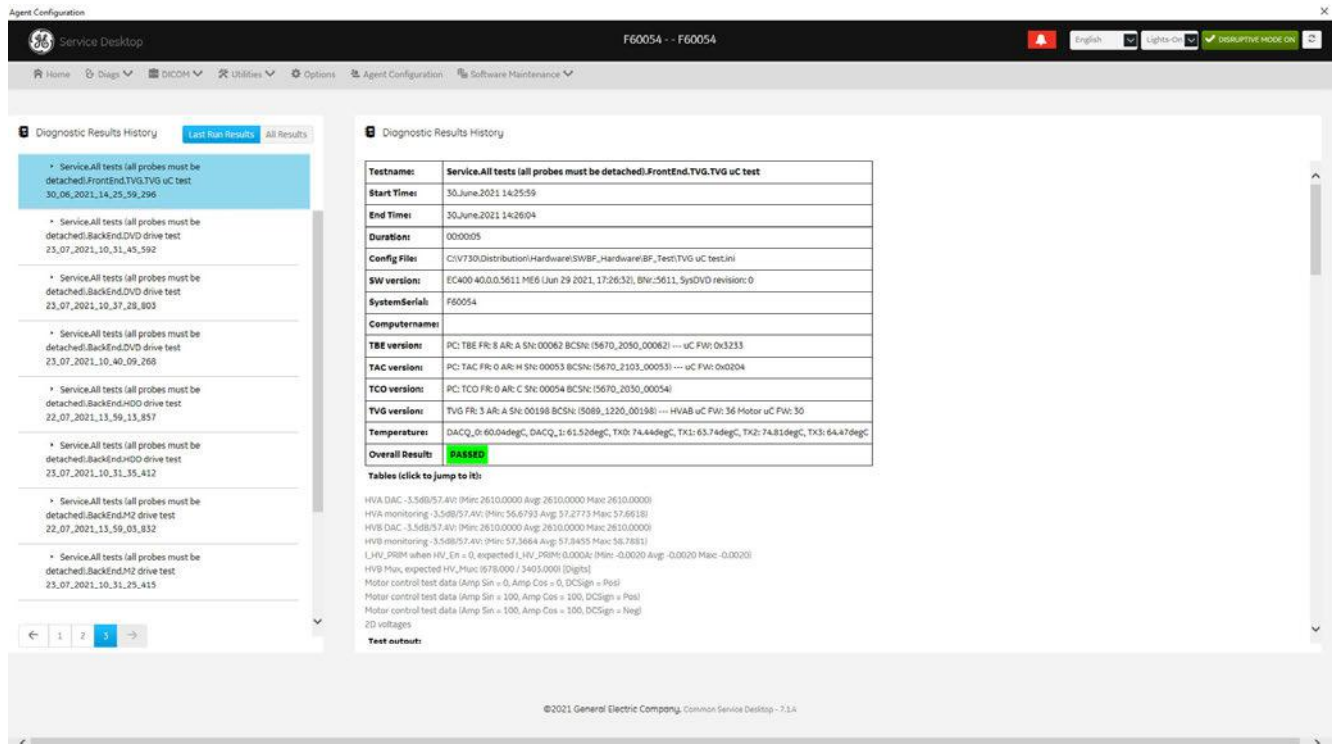


Figure 7-35: Service Desktop - Diags -> Diags History

■ back to "Service Desktop - Diags*" on page 7-21

7.6.2.10 After performing Diagnostics*

After performing any diagnostics, **always turn Disruptive Mode OFF** and reboot the system.

1. In the Service Desktop window click the the **Disruptive Mode Status** field in the navigation bar at top of the screen (A).
2. To turn off the "Disruptive Mode Utility" click **Disable** (B).

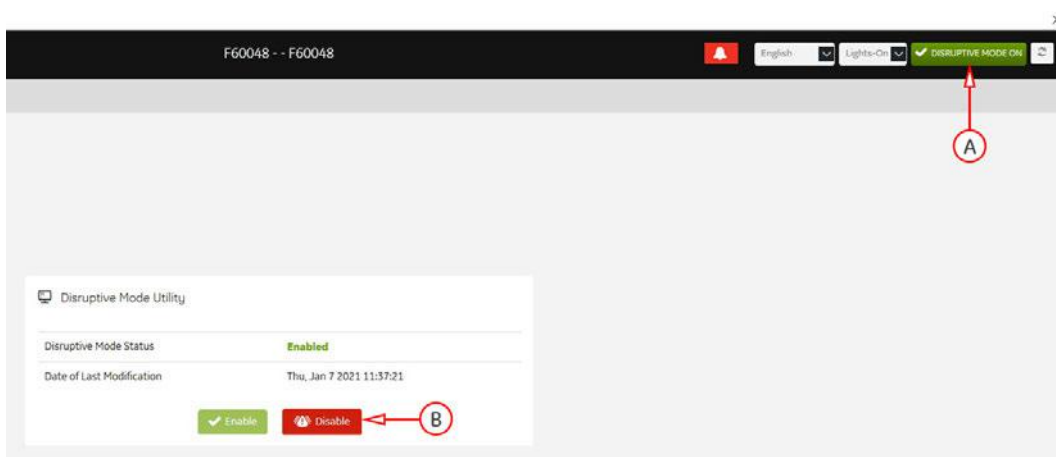


Figure 7-36: Utilities → System Shutdown

3. The following screen confirms Disruptive Status change. The Disruptive Mode Status field on the right top of the screen changes accordingly.
4. Close the Service Desktop and restart the system. (Turn system OFF and then back ON.)

■ back to "Service Desktop - Home" on page 7-14

7.6.3 Service Desktop - DICOM*

The top-level menu **DICOM** is used to troubleshoot DICOM components and connectivity.



Service Desktop - DICOM require a "Service Advanced" option string (= Service Key).

- **DICOM Spooler** - provides a summary of the current and recently outgoing jobs and their status. This summary shows Transferred jobs, Failed jobs, Pending jobs, etc. A pie chart shows health of the spooler.

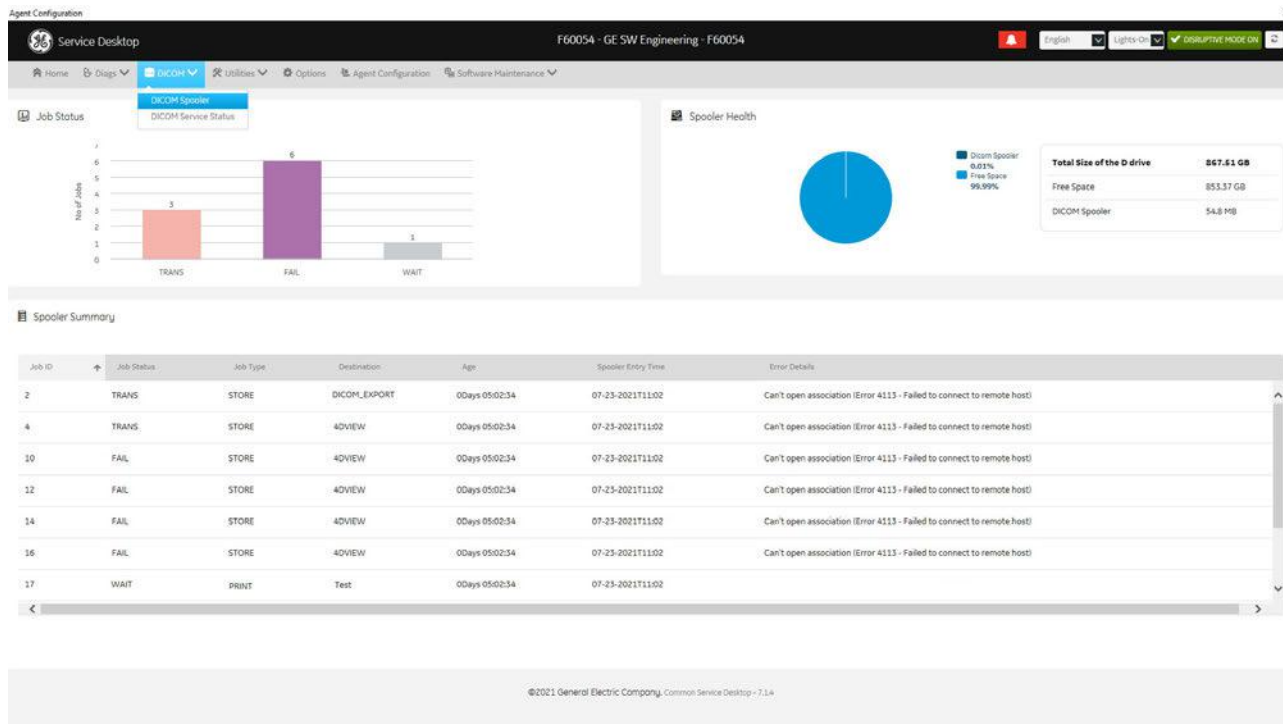


Figure 7-37: Service Desktop - DICOM -> DICOM Spooler

- **DICOM Service Status** - shows the AE Title and the Port Number of the Console. In this window you can check the connectivity of all available, or individual DICOM devices.

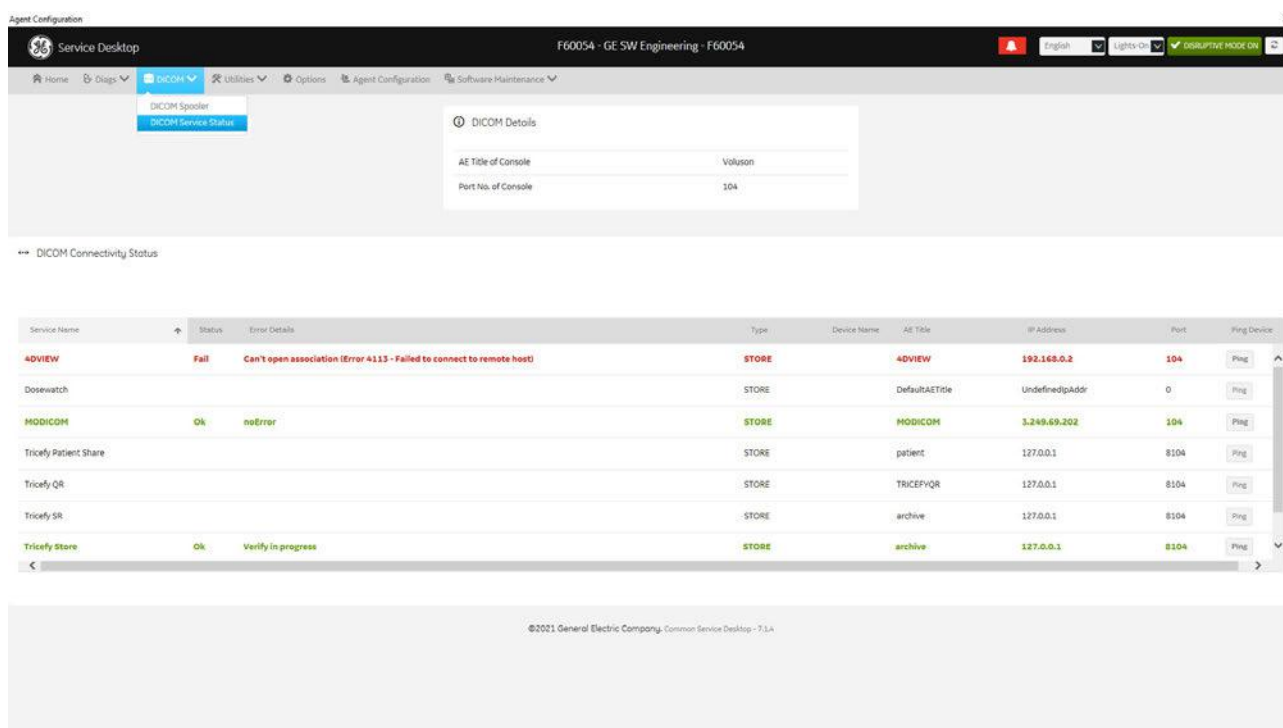


Figure 7-38: Service Desktop - DICOM -> DICOM Service Status

back to "Service Desktop - Home" on page 7-14

7.6.4 Service Desktop - Utilities

The top-level menu **Utilities** contains a variety of utility tools and troubleshoot functions for indicating the status and manage the Voluson Expert Series system.

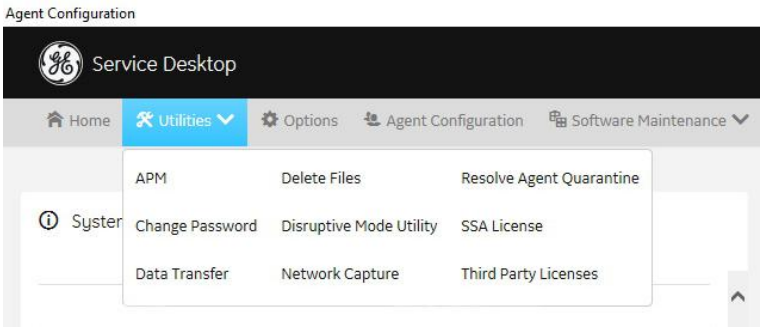


Figure 7-39: Service Desktop - Utilities (Overview)

Content in this chapter

7.6.4.1 APM	7-39
7.6.4.2 Change Password	7-40
7.6.4.3 Data Transfer	7-41
7.6.4.4 Delete Files	7-41
7.6.4.5 Disruptive Mode Utility	7-41
7.6.4.6 Network Capture	7-41
7.6.4.7 Resolve Agent Quarantine	7-41
7.6.4.8 SSA License	7-41
7.6.4.9 Third Party Software Licenses	7-41

■ back to ["Service Desktop - Home" on page 7-14](#)

7.6.4.1 APM

APM enables upload of system usage data for Asset Performance Management purposes. The data contain protected health information.

The upload may only be enabled if a signed service contract is in place.

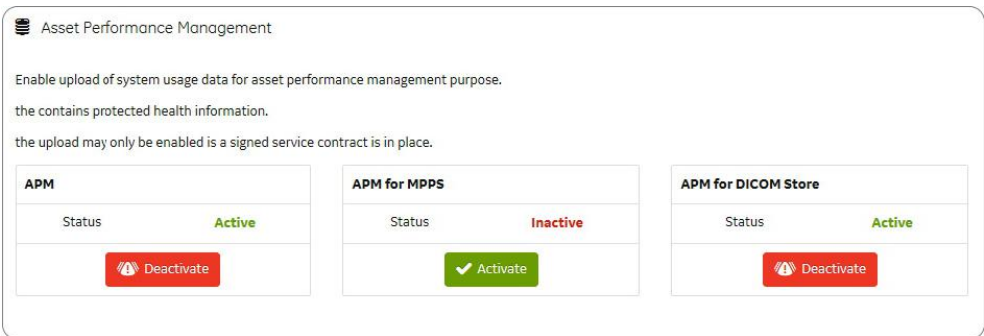


Figure 7-40: Service Desktop -> Utilities -> APM

When connected (**APM is active**), the Voluson Expert Series system has the capability to transmit certain data sets to the General Electric Back Office. These data sets pertain to system utilization and are accessible via proprietary tools only. Upon request, General Electric can provide a complete listing of data sets gathered. Data sets will be transmitted during the warranty period and when the Voluson Expert Series system is under a maintenance contract with General Electric. The requirement for data transfer is a signed service agreement with valid data transfer clauses

The Field Engineer has the ability to stop the data transmission. The data transfer needs to be manually enabled by the Field Engineer if there is an active contractual agreement for the data transfer.

■ back to ["Service Desktop - Utilities" on page 7-39](#)

7.6.4.2 Change Password

Change Password allows to change the **GEService** password that is used to perform portions of remote service. Both, "File transfer" and "SSH" depend on this **GEService** password.

Note Before changing the **GEService** password, make sure the Voluson Expert Series is connected to the network and the **RSvP Agent** is properly configured (see [Section 3.13.6 "RSvP Agent Configuration" on page 3-82](#)).

If the **GEService** password is changed when offline, the back-office is not updated. At the next remote session, the password is not matching => this will prevent from "File transfer" and/or "SSH" services and may slow down remote service.

Note **Change Password** is not available via remote connection.



Please be aware that a **password change needs to be repeated** whenever a software upgrade (upgrade to any higher Ext. version) took place. When loading new software, the password is reset to the factory default password, but is not automatically updated at the back-office.



Warning

Risk of losing data: If the password is lost, GE will not be able to recover or reset it. The loss of a password may result in the loss of patient data.

GE will not be able to recover or reset changed passwords. Securely record the new password.

How to change the password

1. In the Service Desktop window navigate to **Utilities** → **Change Password**.
2. Select **GEService** from the **User Type** pull-down menu (A).

Figure 7-41: Utilities → Change Password

- **GEService** is the user for GE Service. Both, File transfer and SSH depend on this user and password combination. When using SSH in FFA, the user and password will always be requested. Entering the incorrect password multiple times will lock you out. When changing this password, the Voluson Expert Series should be online so the back office updates. If the password is changed when offline, the back-office will not be updated and you will have to change the password again with the Voluson Expert Series online. There is no notification when this password has been changed. Changes to this password do not affect logs sent to the GE Service data lake.
3. In the **New Password** field (B) type the new password according to password requirements.
 4. In the **Confirm Password** field (C) type the new password again.
 5. Click **Update Password** (D). A "Password changed successfully" message is shown.

Note At any later time, there is no indication that a password change happened.

6. Reboot the system.

■ back to "[Service Desktop - Utilities](#)" on page 7-39

7.6.4.3 Data Transfer

Data Transfer provides a way to enable/disable file upload based on permissions configured in the UISApp.

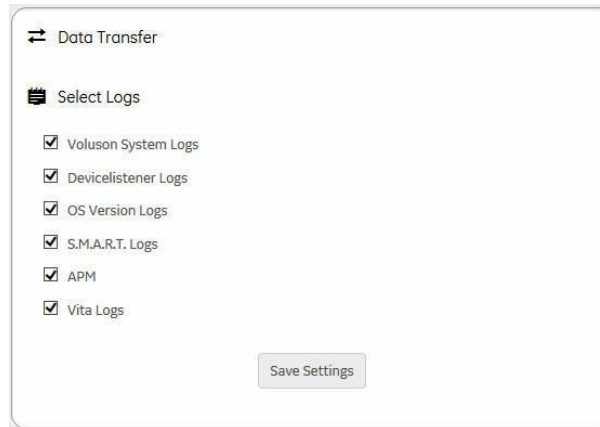


Figure 7-42: Data Transfer

7.6.4.4 Delete Files

Delete Files displays all files and folders present in the D:\export folder and allows for their deletion. Deleting unneeded files improves performance and reduces the need to defragment the disk drive.

7.6.4.5 Disruptive Mode Utility

Disruptive Mode Utility provides a way to enable and disable disruptive mode troubleshooting.



Normal operation and patient scanning might be disturbed and limited while disruptive mode is enabled. Once service activity is completed (e.g., after performing diagnostics), **always disable "Disruptive Mode" and reboot the system** before returning it to the customers use.



Disruptive Mode can be selected by the customer directly on the Voluson Expert Series (see [Section 7.5.2 on page 7-12](#)), or requested remotely by the service technician or OLC.

7.6.4.6 Network Capture

Network Capture displays network traffic between the Voluson Expert Series and configured devices.

Each network capture outputs two log files: one for main logging with no protected information and another including protected information. These log files are useful when debugging connectivity issues. Because these log files can be large, they are only kept for one week.

7.6.4.7 Resolve Agent Quarantine

This functionality resolves the agent from quarantine state only during agent upgrades. If agent goes to quarantine due to any other reason, this utility will not fix the quarantine issue.

7.6.4.8 SSA License

SSA License displays status and information about the SSA (Secure Service Access) class M key connected to the system.

7.6.4.9 Third Party Software Licenses

The **Third Party Software Licenses** page displays all the third party software licenses used as part of the Service Platform.

7.6.5 Service Desktop - Options

In the top-level menu **Options** all the available software options and their status is listed.

The Hardware Number and the Serial Number is displayed in the Software Option Details field (A).

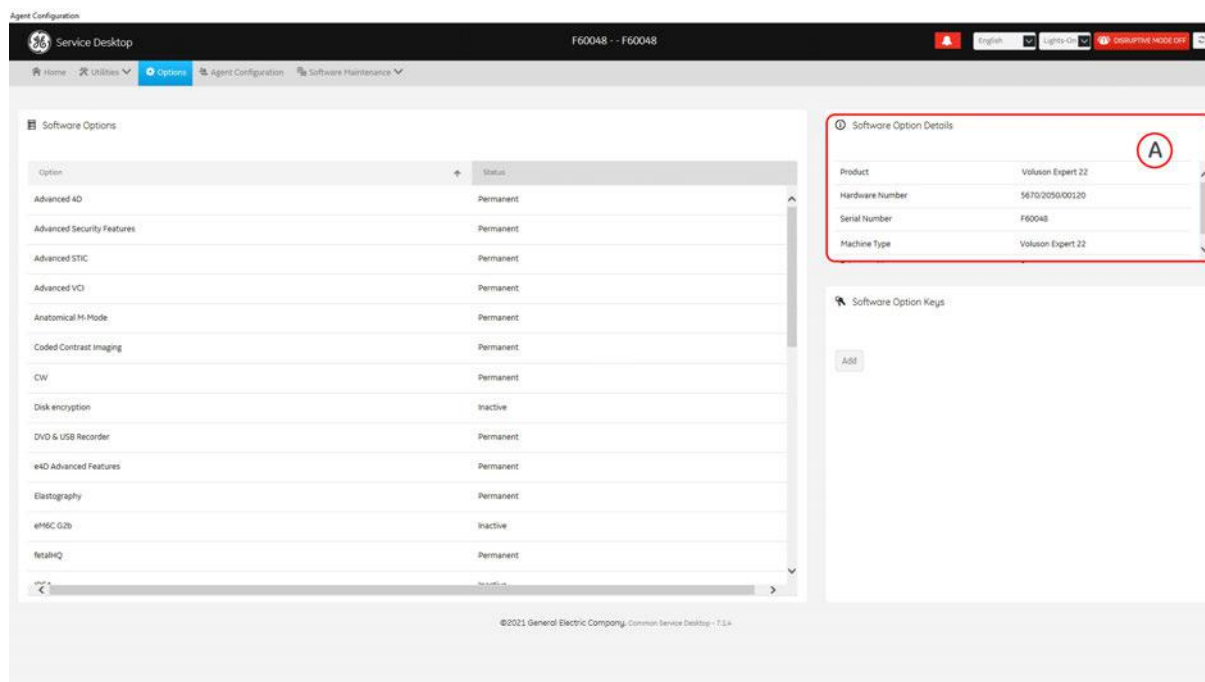


Figure 7-43: Service Desktop - Options

■ back to ["Service Desktop - Home" on page 7-14](#)

7.6.6 Service Desktop - Agent Configuration

In the top-level menu **Agent Configuration** you should properly enter and fill in all fields required for remote access and troubleshooting by a GE Service technician.

Note

Remote access is ONLY possible if the Service Platform is properly configured (either by the user or a GE technician at site). Operation see [Section 3.13.6 "RSvP Agent Configuration" on page 3-82](#).

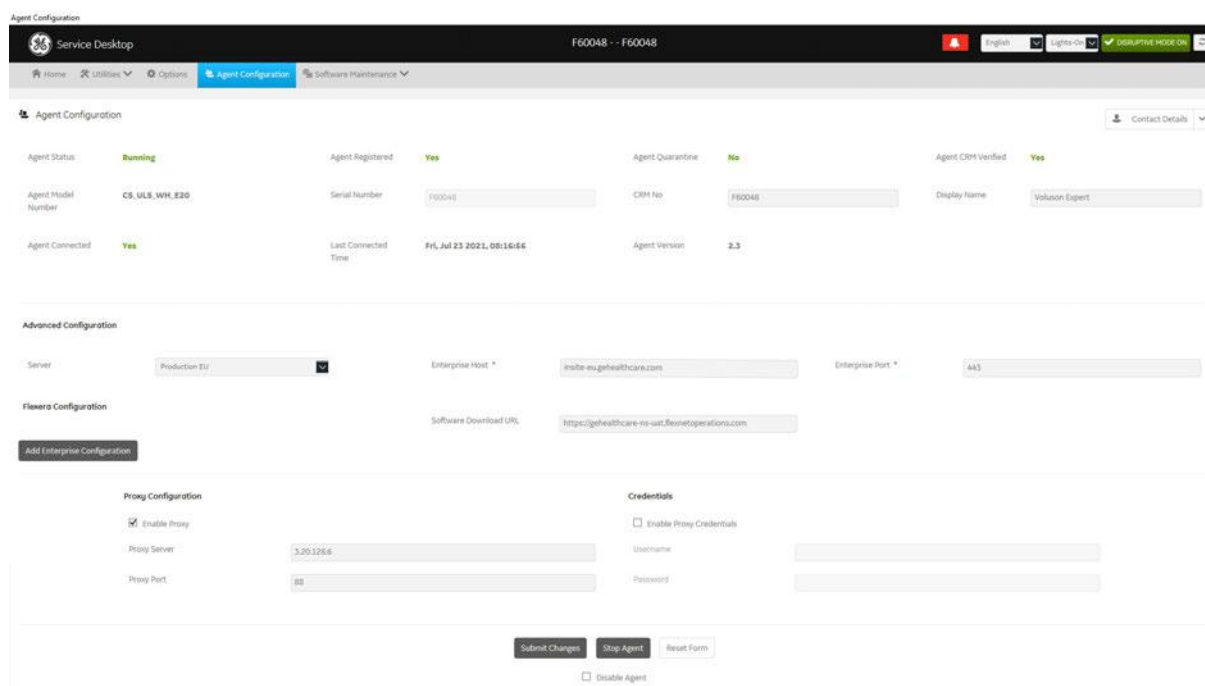


Figure 7-44: Service Desktop - Agent Configuration

■ back to ["Service Desktop - Home" on page 7-14](#)

7.6.7 Service Desktop - Software Maintenance

The top-level menu **Software Maintenance** is used to manage software updates, which includes checking for pending updates and initiating the download for installation.

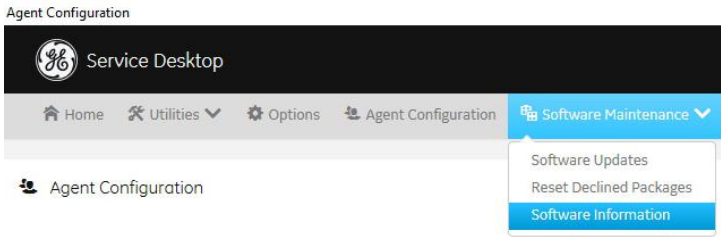


Figure 7-45: Service Desktop - Software Maintenance (Overview)

Content in this chapter

7.6.7.1 Software Updates	7-43
7.6.7.2 Reset Declined Packages	7-44
7.6.7.3 Software Information	7-44

back to "Service Desktop - Home" on page 7-14

7.6.7.1 Software Updates

Software Updates are assigned by CRM number.

1. Click **Query for Updates** to check for available software updates.



Figure 7-46: Service Desktop - Software Maintenance -> Software Updates

2. Update Packages for download are populated.

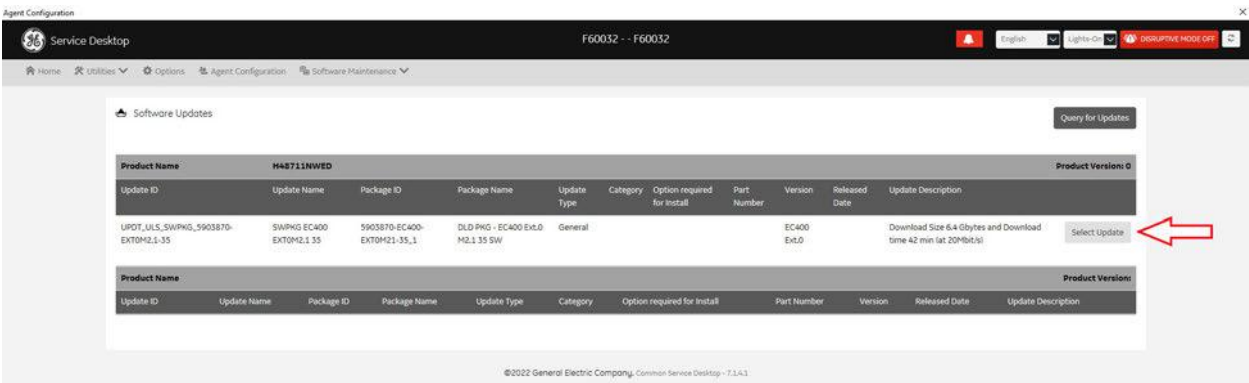


Figure 7-47: Service Desktop - Software Maintenance -> Software Updates - download information

3. Click **Select Update** and confirm with **OK** to initiate download of the package.



Figure 7-48: Service Desktop - Software Maintenance -> Software Updates - update successfully set

For detailed information and proper download/installation procedure see [Section 8.2.3 "Software Update Package - Download/Installation" on page 8-13](#).

7.6.7.2 Reset Declined Packages

Reset Declined Packages provides a way to reset software updates that have been previously declined through software download.

By clicking **Reset** the selected package is reset so that it is again available through a query on ["Software Updates"](#).

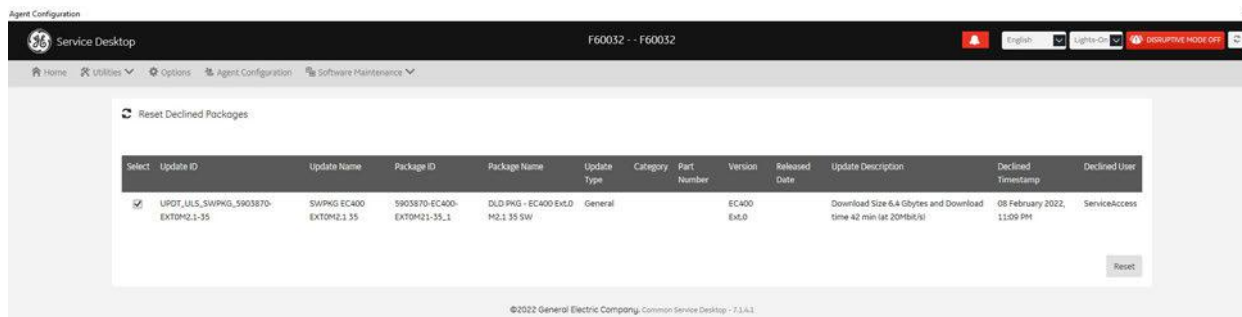


Figure 7-49: Service Desktop - Software Maintenance -> Reset Declined Packages

7.6.7.3 Software Information

Software Information displays general information about the software currently installed on the Voluson Expert Series system.

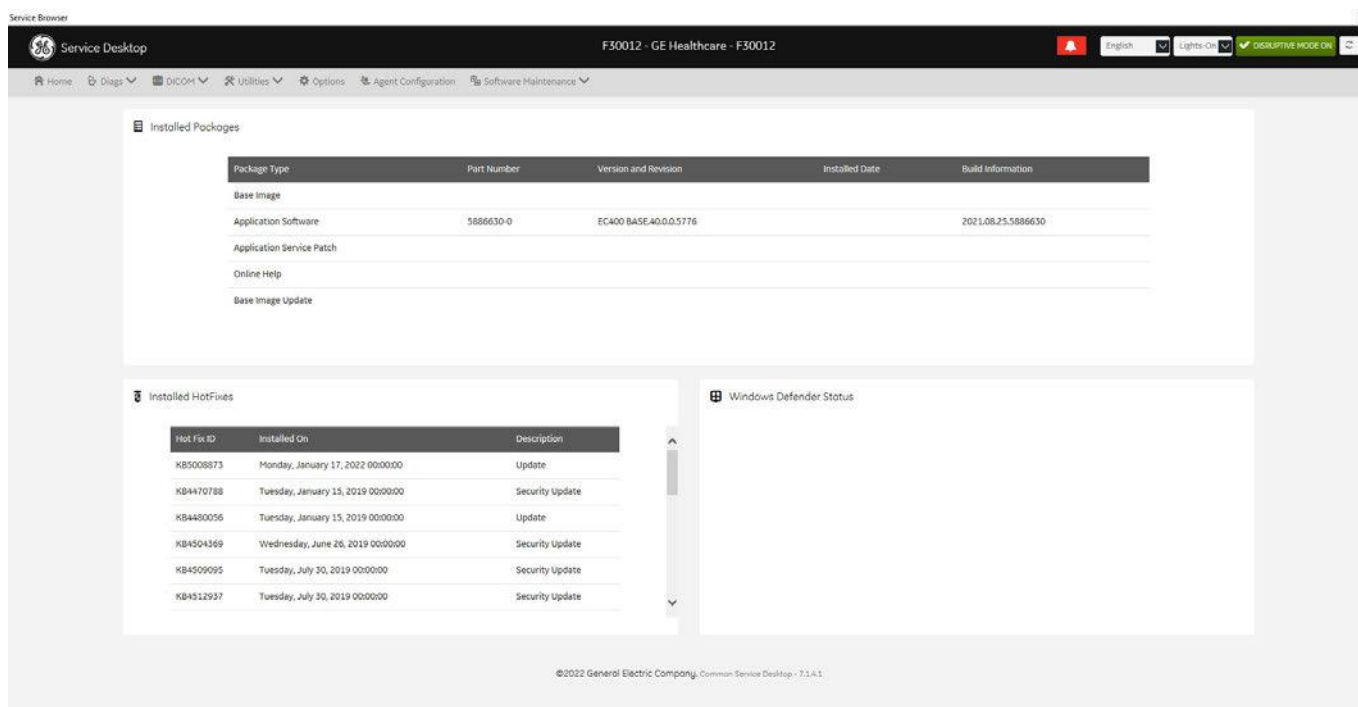


Figure 7-50: Service Desktop - Software Maintenance -> Software Information

7.7 Troubleshooting Trees, Instructions and Tech Tips

Content in this chapter

<i>7.7.1 Error Beep Codes</i>	<i>7-46</i>
<i>7.7.2 Noise disturbs the Image</i>	<i>7-47</i>
<i>7.7.3 Trackball Malfunction</i>	<i>7-50</i>
<i>7.7.4 Printer Malfunction</i>	<i>7-51</i>
<i>7.7.5 Monitor Troubleshooting</i>	<i>7-52</i>
<i>7.7.6 DVD Drive Tests</i>	<i>7-53</i>
<i>7.7.7 Network Troubleshooting</i>	<i>7-56</i>
<i>7.7.8 Activate Windows - Network Connectivity Issues</i>	<i>7-57</i>
<i>7.7.9 Error due to an empty CMOS Battery (set correct date & time)</i>	<i>7-58</i>

7.7.1 Error Beep Codes

In case of any failure, following beep codes are used to signal issues and indicate the status of the Voluson Expert Series system.

Table 7-4: Error Beep Codes

Beep Code	Error Name	Short Description
4 x 0.3 sec	12V_ERROR	12V Main power voltage is too low
2 x 0.3 sec	NO_FPGA_DONE	FPGA_DONE signal from TAC not received
3 x 0.3 sec	NO_S3	SUS_S3_COME# signal from COM Express not received
2 x 1 sec	EEPROM_ERROR	Content of PLX EEPROM is wrong and overwriting failed
1 x 0.3 sec	NO_PCIE_RST	CB_RESET# signal from COM Express not received
1 x 1 sec.	FAN_BLOCKED	A Backend fan is blocked or not working properly
1 x 2 sec	TAC_CURR_ERROR	TAC overcurrent detected
1 x 3 sec	WATCHDOG_OVERFLOW	TBE firmware was trapped -> a watchdog timer overflow occurred
3 x 1 sec	INV_HW_COMB	Invalid Hardware combination

7.7.2 Noise disturbs the Image

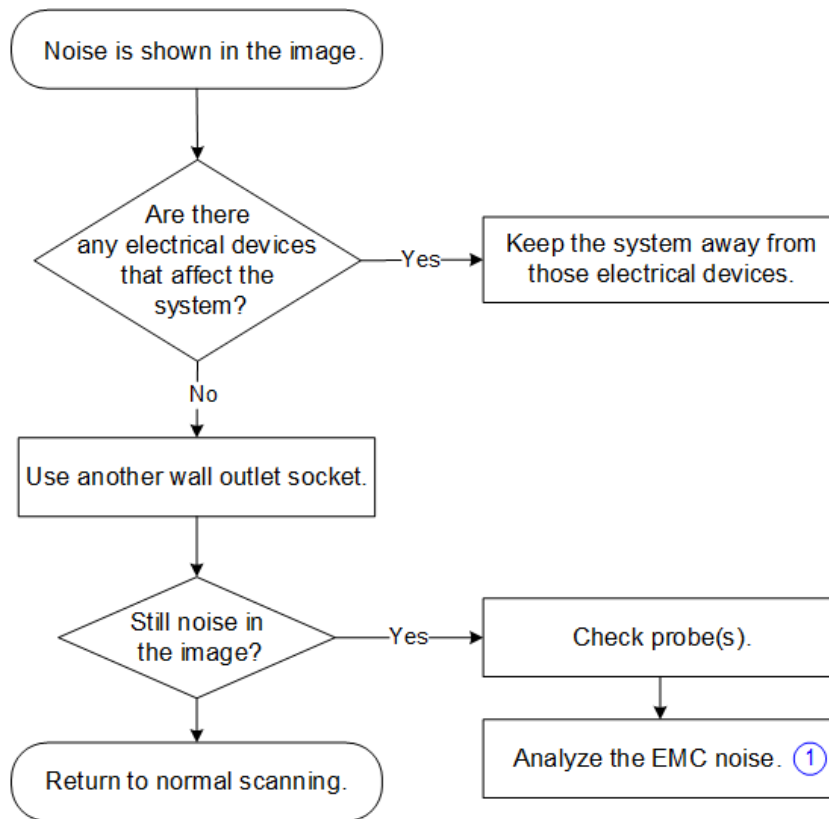
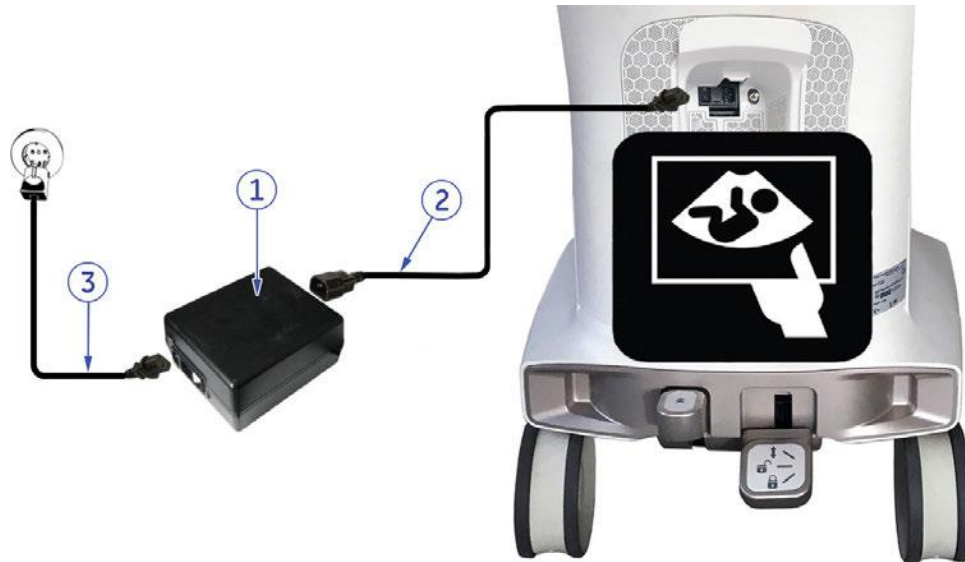


Figure 7-51: Noise disturbs the Image - Troubleshooting

1 Section 7.7.2.1 "How to analyze the EMC noise" on page 7-48

7.7.2.1 How to analyze the EMC noise

1. Switch on the Voluson Expert Series system and choose settings which show EMC noise in the ultrasound image. Typically the ultrasound probe must be contacted (hold in hand/apply to body) to observe EMC noise.
2. Disconnect one by one all cords that are connected to the Voluson Expert Series system like LAN/Ethernet, VGA, DVI, S-Video, USB, ... on the ultrasound system-side and observe the EMC noise.
3. If EMC noise is still present after disconnecting all cables, then use the stand-alone Power Filter (H48701EL) to power the Voluson Expert Series system. Connect the Power Filter between AC mains and the Voluson Expert Series system.


Note

Make sure, that:

- the Power Filter (1) is located behind (not under) the Voluson Expert Series system.
- the Power Filter (1) is not close to any metallic devices.
- the AC mains power cable (3) is not located near/under the Voluson Expert Series system.
- the AC mains power cable (3) is not located close to the short 1m Power Extension cord (2).

Figure 7-52: Power Filter - Connection Scheme

4. Switch on the Voluson Expert Series system.
5. Activate the ultrasound probe and choose settings which show EMC noise in the ultrasound image to check for EMC noise (EMC noise should be absent). If EMC noise is still present – then check again for any other conducting connections to the Voluson Expert Series; perform step 2.) again.
6. Connect one by one other cords to the Voluson Expert Series system like LAN/Ethernet, VGA, DVI, S-Video, USB, ... and check for EMC noise.

If a stand-alone UPS (Uninterruptible Power Supply) is available to power the Voluson Expert Series

Connect the UPS between AC mains and the Voluson Expert Series system in the same manner as shown in [Figure 7-52](#), - instead of the stand-alone Power Filter.

1. Switch on the Voluson Expert Series system.
2. Activate the ultrasound probe and choose settings which show EMC noise in the ultrasound image to check for EMC noise (EMC noise should be visible).
3. Disconnect one by one all cords that are connected to the Voluson Expert Series system like LAN/Ethernet, VGA, DVI, S-Video, USB, ... on the ultrasound system-side and observe the EMC noise.
4. If EMC noise is still present after disconnecting all cables, then disconnect the AC mains power cord that supplies the UPS from the wall outlet socket.
If EMC noise is absent, then it is confirmed that the EMC noise source is in the power line of the wall outlet socket.
5. If EMC noise is still present – then check again for any other conducting connections to the Voluson Expert Series; perform step 3.) again.
6. Connect one by one other cords to the Voluson Expert Series system like LAN/Ethernet, VGA, DVI, S-Video, USB, ... and check for EMC noise.

For reducing EMC noise consider following options

- use WLAN instead of LAN-cable
- use wireless video transmitter instead of VGA-cable, DVI-cable, S-Video-cable, ...

If EMC noise does not depend on whether the ultrasound probe is contacted

When the EMC noise does not depend on whether the ultrasound probe is contacted (hold in hand/apply to body), then do the following:

1. Hold the ultrasound probe only at the cable and change the orientation of the ultrasound probe.
2. If the EMC noise changes by changing the orientation of the ultrasound probe, then the EMC noise is caused by a magnetic field in the room/building.

In such situations the Power Filter (H48701EL) cannot reduce the EMC noise.

7.7.3 Trackball Malfunction

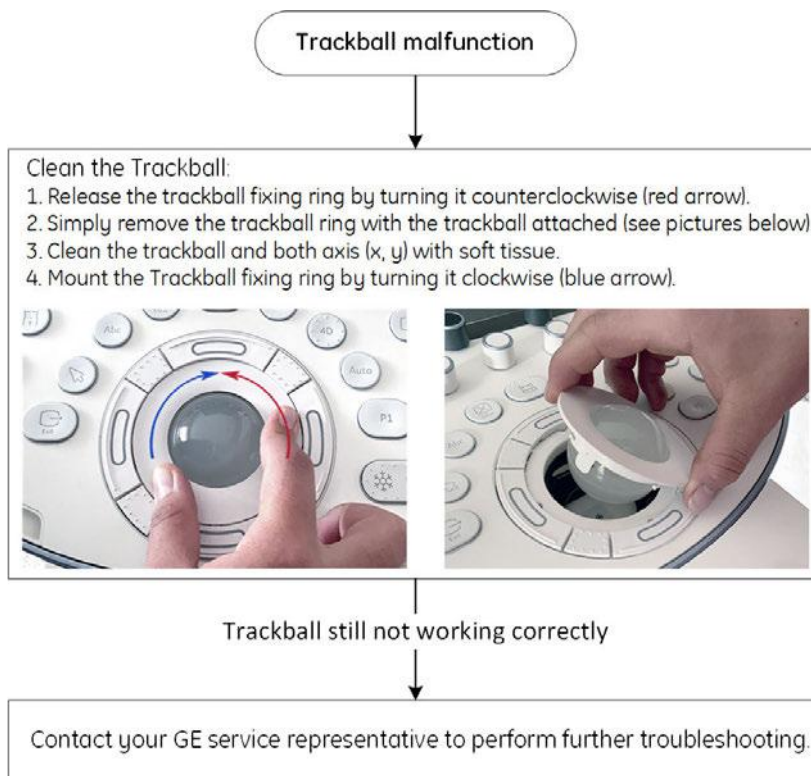


Figure 7-53: Trackball Malfunction - Troubleshooting



Connect a USB-Mouse to one of the USB-Connectors of the Voluson Expert Series system. So the system remains operable until the trackball problems are solved.

7.7.4 Printer Malfunction

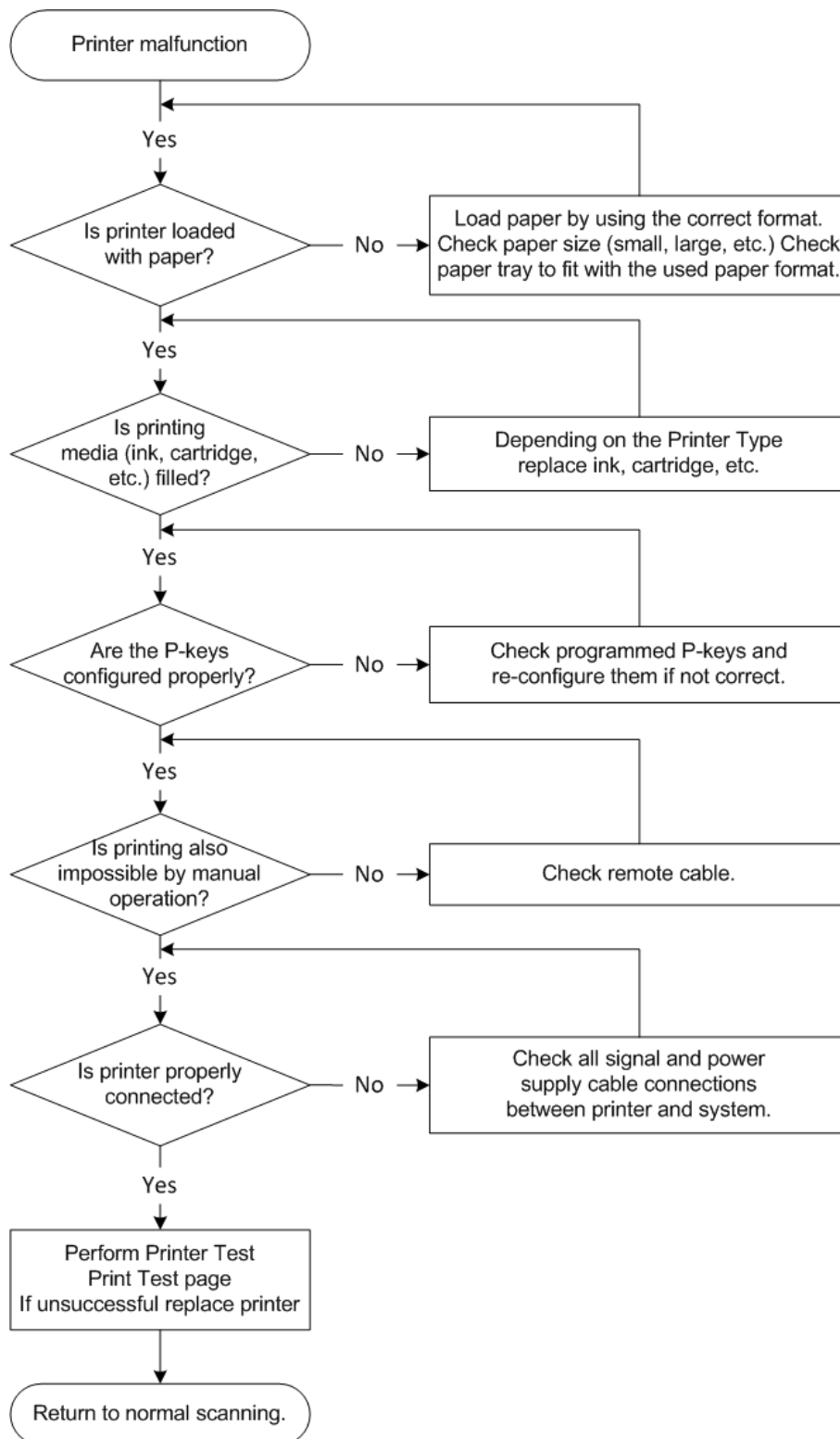


Figure 7-54: Printer Malfunction

7.7.5 Monitor Troubleshooting

Fault symptom	Check these items
No image	Check the power cord is properly connected.
	Check the video cable is properly connected.
	Check no pins of the video cable are bent.
	Check if video is present on backplane.
Picture is fuzzy	Adjust the picture contrast and picture brightness. Some SVGA cards having an excessive video output level will cause a fuzzy picture at the maximum contrast level.
Video test patterns are not clear, bright, parallel or square	Replace the monitor.

Note

For further details see [Section 6.2 "Monitor Adjustment" on page 6-2](#).

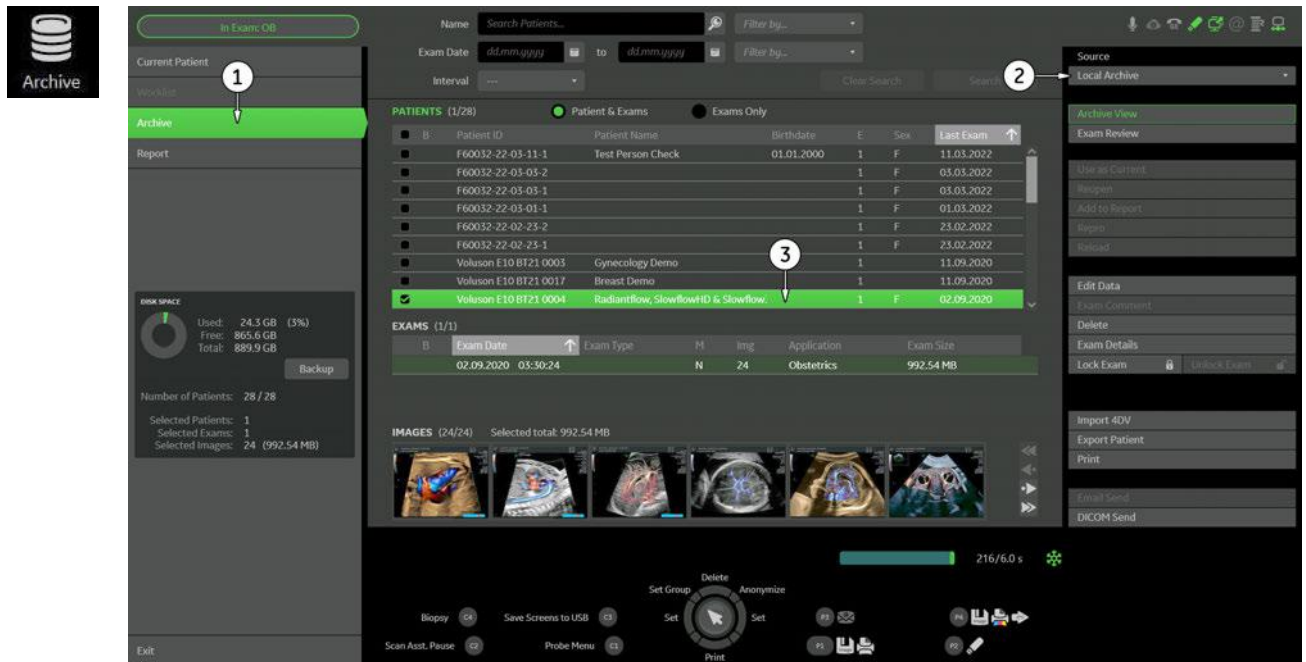
7.7.6 DVD Drive Tests

Content in this chapter

- 7.7.6.1 Export images from "Local Archive" to DVD/CD+R/RW ----- 7-53
 7.7.6.2 Record Spectral Doppler display ----- 7-55

7.7.6.1 Export images from "Local Archive" to DVD/CD+R/RW

1. Insert an empty, formatted DVD/CD+R/RW disc into the drive.
2. Enter "Patient Archive" by pressing the **Archive** key on the control console.



3. On the left side of the screen select **Archive** (1).
4. If not already selected, choose "Local Archive" from the "Source" pull-down menu (2).
5. Select an exam with images (3).

6. Export images of the selected exam to DVD/CD+R/RW.

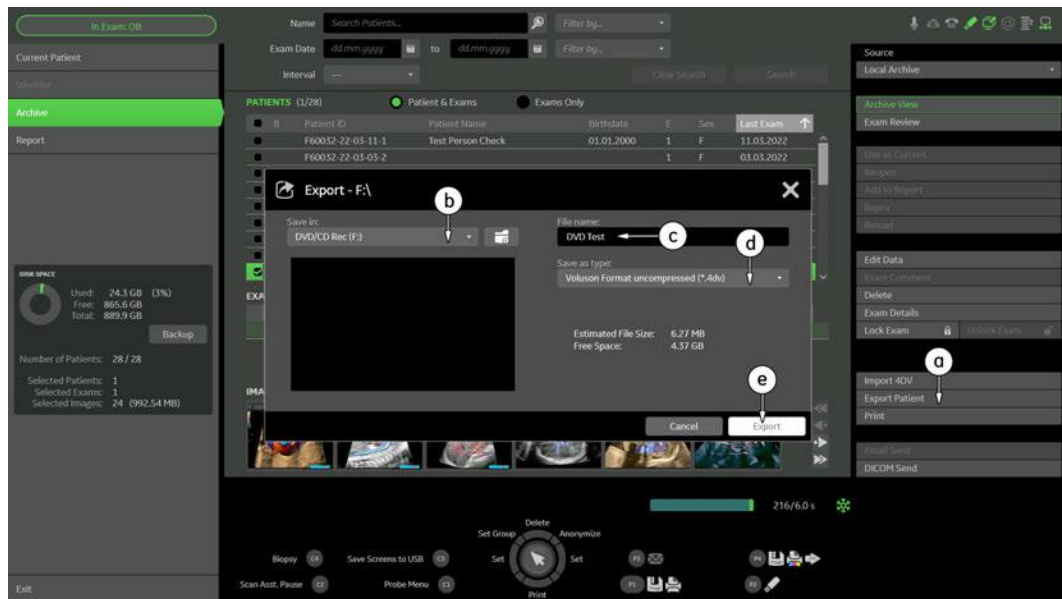


Figure 7-55: Export images to DVD/CD - *.4dv format

- Click on **Export**.
- If not already selected, choose "DVD/CD Rec" from the pull-down menu.
- Enter "File name".
- Select any Voluson Format (*.4dv) from the pull-down menu.
- Click the **Export** button.

After successful export, perform an import of images

- On the right side of the screen select **Import 4DV**.
- Choose "DVD/CD Rec" from the pull-down menu.
- Select the folder where the file was stored and select the file name.
- Click **Import** button to display the images.

Limits: All images, which have been exported to DVD/CD+R/RW are visible after the import.

7.7.6.2 Record Spectral Doppler display

1. Insert an empty, formatted DVD/CD+R/RW disc into the drive.

Note

*If you use an unformatted DVD+RW, recording is impossible! To format the DVD, touch the **DVR** button at the Right Toolbar and then select the **Format Media** button.*

2. Press the **PW** key on the control panel to start PW preparation mode.
3. Activate Doppler motion display by pressing the **right/left trackball key**.
4. Select the **DVR** button at the Right Toolbar to display the remote control menu.

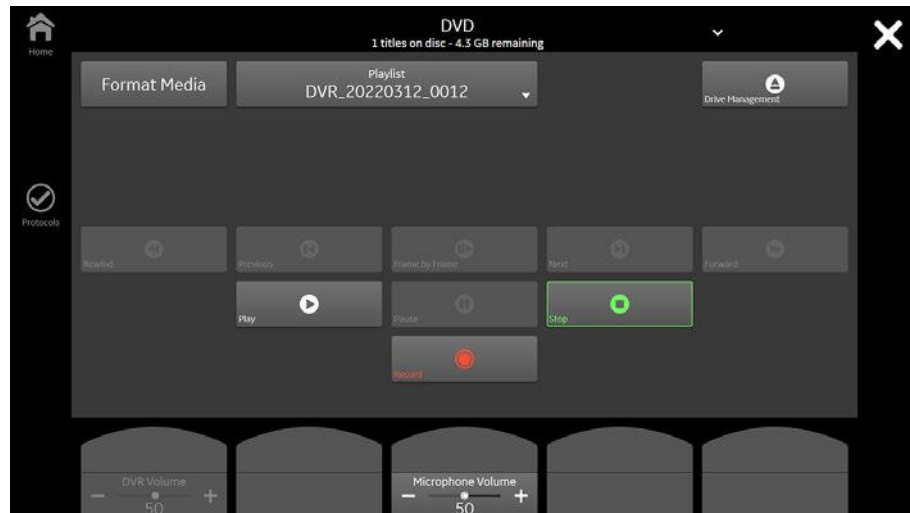


Figure 7-56: Remote Control menu

5. In the remote menu touch the **Record** button to record a Doppler motion display (e.g., of the *Carotid*).
6. Touch the **Stop** button to stop recording.
7. Touch the **Play** button to play-back the recorded Doppler motion sequence.

Limits: The recorded Doppler motion sequence is running. The audio signal of the arterial flow can be heard in the loudspeaker(s).

7.7.7 Network Troubleshooting

7.7.7.1 No Connection to the Network at all

	Cable disconnected or no network signal on a connected cable.
	Cable connected to a network. Does not imply proper network settings.
	Remote connection.

1. Check that the network cable between the Voluson Expert Series system and the wall network is connected and well seated in both ends. (Use a network cable that is known to be OK.)
2. Connect a network cable between the system and a PC by either using a hub or a cross-over cable. Try to ping from system to IP address on PC. If OK, hardware connection inside the system is OK.

	WiFi disconnected.
	WiFi connected.
	Remote connection.

7.7.7.2 Email connection

	Gray = Email function is not configured.
	Green = Email status: successfully sent (OK)
	Red = Email status: not sent (fail)

7.7.7.3 GE - Remote Service Connection

Note Visual information about GE remote status is shown in the status area on the right top of the screen.

Table 7-5: visual information about GE remote status

	Gray = Idle State	Remote access is inactive.
		Move the cursor over the GE icon to show trackball functions • Contact: Section 7.2 "Request for Service (RFS)" on page 7-6 • Configuration: Section 3.13.6 "RSvP Agent Configuration" on page 3-82 • Menu: Displays the Remote Access menu Figure 7-11 on page 7-12
	Yellow = Access pending	Remote Access is active, but Disruptive Mode and Virtual Console Observation (VCO) are not yet enabled.
	Red = Disrupted State	Remote Access is active. All processes (Virtual Console Observation and Service Desktop) are active. In this state the Voluson Expert Series system should NOT be used clinically.

7.7.8 Activate Windows - Network Connectivity Issues

Issue: In case of network connectivity issues, it may not be possible to activate your Windows operating system on the Voluson Expert Series systems.

Cause: Activation servers of Microsoft are not reachable.

- Solution:**
1. Check Operating System License Status in the Home - System Setup - Administration - **System Info** tab.
 - a. **Licensed** -> Windows is properly activated.
 - b. **Notification** -> Windows is not activated. Proceed with troubleshooting steps.

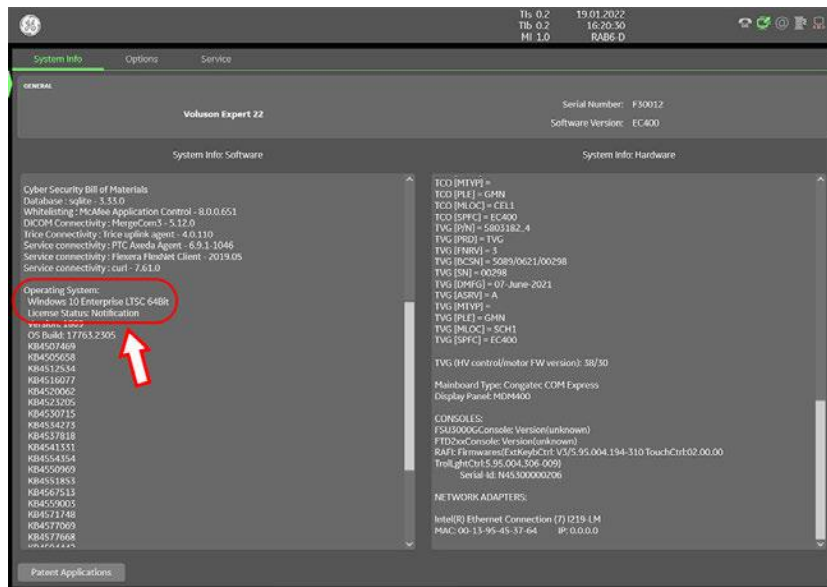


Figure 7-57: License Status: NOTIFICATION => Windows is not activated

2. Make sure that the Voluson Expert Series system is connected to the internet.
3. Contact your local IT department to make sure that inside your local network infrastructure activation servers of Microsoft are reachable. If needed, contact your GE service technician for further support.

7.7.9 Error due to an empty CMOS Battery (set correct date & time)

Issue An empty or dead CMOS battery (located on the TBE board) is not always easy detected. As long as the Voluson Expert Series system is not completely disconnected from power, the system is supported by standby voltage. If standby voltage is lost (e.g., after power outage or after pulling the main power cable for a certain period) and the battery is empty, the system automatically shuts down immediately after the next boot-up. When the system is started again following message is displayed on the Touchpanel indicating that RTC failure happened. An error flag is set in BIOS, which needs to be reset manually.



Figure 7-58: Error: GENERIC_BAD_DATE_TIME_ERROR

After about 5 seconds the error message disappears and the system proceeds with the boot up.

Note: *BIOS system date and time is still lost. This is point out by a message that appears at every system restart.*

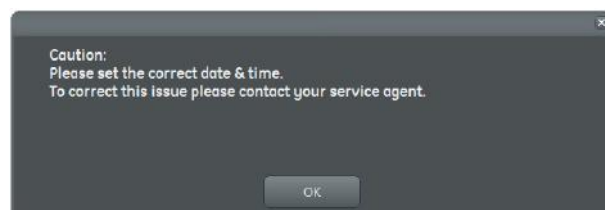


Figure 7-59: check/set correct date & time

Note: As long the error flag in BIOS is not reset, not only the message (see [Figure 7-59 above](#)) will appear, but also the System Date & Time is set to 2000/01/01 - 0:00 at every system bootup/restart. Setting the correct date & time is necessary to get accurate examination results.

Short-term Workaround Whenever the message appears, manually correct Date & Time in the Home → System Setup → Settings → General tab.

Long-term Solution Please contact your GE service technician to replace the CMOS battery.

Chapter 8

Replacement Procedures

This chapter contains replacement procedures for different modules and their subsystems.

Content in this chapter

8.1 Returning/Shipping System, Probes and Repair Parts - - - - -	8-3
8.2 System Software - Installation/Upgrade procedure - - - - -	8-6
8.3 Software and Functional Checks after Installation/Upgrade Procedure - - - - -	8-16
8.4 System Configuration Backup - Loading Procedure - - - - -	8-17
8.5 Image Archive - Loading Procedure - - - - -	8-17
8.6 Replacement or Activation of Options - - - - -	8-18
8.7 Replacement of the Rear Cover Top - - - - -	8-19
8.8 Replacement of the Front Cover - - - - -	8-20
8.9 Replacement of the Probe Holder Set - - - - -	8-21
8.10 Replacement of the Respond Probe Holder - - - - -	8-22
8.11 Replacement of the Probe Holder for Endocavity Probes - - - - -	8-24
8.12 Replacement of the Trackball Ring - - - - -	8-25
8.13 Replacement of the Caps for Encoders and/or Joycoders - - - - -	8-26
8.14 Replacement of the Caps for Hardkeys - - - - -	8-27
8.15 Replacement of the Monitor Back Cover - - - - -	8-28
8.16 Replacement of a Probe - - - - -	8-29
8.17 Replacing optional Peripherals / How to mount Peripherals at a later date - - - - -	8-30

Warning



DO NOT touch any boards with integrated circuits prior to taking necessary ESD precautions.

1. When installing boards, ESD may cause damage to a board. ALWAYS connect yourself, via an arm-wrist strap, to the ESD connection point located on the rear of the system (nearby the power connector).
2. Follow general guidelines for handling of electrostatic sensitive equipment.

Warning



No covers or panels should be removed from the system (high-voltage risk). Service and repairs must only be performed by authorized personal. Attempting do-it-yourself repairs invalidate warranty and are an infringement to regulations and are inadmissible acc. to IEC 60601-1.



The Waste of Electrical and Electronic Equipment (WEEE) **must not be disposed as unsorted municipal waste** and must be collected separately. Please contact the manufacturer or other authorized disposal company for information concerning the decommission of your equipment.

8.1 Returning/Shipping System, Probes and Repair Parts

When returning or shipping the Voluson Expert Series system in the original packaging:

- the control console must be centered and locked in “unextended” position
- system must be lowered to its minimum height with monitor flapped down

Note For detailed description see [Section 6.2.1 on page 6-3](#).

Equipment being returned must be clean and free of blood and other infectious substances.

GE policy states that body fluids must be properly removed from any part or equipment prior to shipment. GE employees, as well as customers, are responsible for ensuring that parts/equipment have been properly decontaminated prior to shipment. Under no circumstance should a part or equipment with visible body fluids be taken or shipped from a clinic or site (for example, body coils or and ultrasound probe).

The purpose of the regulation is to protect employees in the transportation industry, as well as the people who will receive or open this package.

Note The US Department of Transportation (DOT) has ruled that “items what were saturated and/or dripping with human blood that are now caked with dried blood; or which were used or intended for use in patient care” are “regulated medical waste” for transportation purpose and must be transported as a hazardous material.

Note The user/service staff should dispose of all the waste properly, per federal, state, and local waste disposal regulations.

The Voluson Expert Series system is not meant to be used for long-term storage of patient data or images. The user is responsible for the data on the system and a regular backup is highly recommended.

If the system is sent for repair, please ensure that any patient information is backed up and erased from the system before shipping. It is always possible during system failure and repair to lose patient data. GE is not responsible for the loss of this data.

If PHI (Patient Healthcare Information) data needs to be sent to GE employees for service purposes, GE will ascertain agreement from the customer. Patient information shall only be transferred by approved service processes, tools and devices restricting access, protecting or encrypting data where required, and providing traceability in the form of paper or electronic documents at each stage of the procedure while maintaining compliance with cross-border restrictions of patient information transfers.

For brief repacking instructions refer to [Section 8.1.1 on page 8-3](#).

8.1.1 Repacking the System

Note Shipping the Voluson Expert Series ultrasound system in its original packaging is only possible when the control console is centered and locked in position, the system is lowered to its minimum height and the monitor is flapped down and locked. Refer to [Section 6.2.1 "Preparing for Transport" on page 6-3](#).

Step	Task
A	Place the 2 ramps at the pallets rear side and adjust the foil.
B	Push the system onto the pallet. Note: Push in direction of the arrows on pallet.
C	Observe parking position.





Step	Task
D	Tighten the screw (M8x18) on top of the sheet metal with Mt = 8 Nm / 70.8 in-lbs. It might be required to readjust the 4 screws on bottom of the sheet metal, too. Finally all 5 screws must be tightened with Mt = 8 Nm / 70.8 in-lbs.
E	Push the right Pedal on the systems rear down (= full lock).
F	Pull the anti-static foil over the device (protrude about 40 cm / 15.8 inch at the front.)
G	Hold the foil with one hand on the monitor arm and press the foil between the handle and the back of the user interface.
	   
H	Press the foil sideways between the monitor and the user interface.
J	Attach the 2 foam parts carefully at the left and right side of the system.
	  
K	To stabilize the foam inserts, mount the 3 remaining parts.
L	Open the transport lock of the monitor arm.
	  

Step	Task
M	Pull the foil over the complete system and close it with a cable tie.
N	Place cardboard boxes (for accessories, etc.) at correct positions.
P	Place the 2 ramps at the rear side.
	
Q	Attach side wall to the intended location on the pallet and close the front with Velcro fasteners.
R	Place the top cover.
S	Fixate with straps; 1 at the short side and 2 at the long side.
	



Caution
Transport only with forklift or stacker truck. During transport pay attention to the point of gravity (“tilt and drop” indicator)!

8.2 System Software - Installation/Upgrade procedure

Introduction

There are different possibilities to update the system software.

1. via the **SWI from Media** button in the System Setup **Service** page; see [Section 8.2.2 on page 8-10](#)
 - Software parts to be upgraded (e.g., Ultrasound Application Software, Service Software, MS patches, etc.) and installation time depend on contents of the used Media.
 - **Note:** A new software specific "Permanent key" is required. Please contact your local distributor or GE service representative.
2. by downloading and installing a **Software Update Package** (= eDelivery); see [Section 8.2.3 on page 8-13](#)
 - Software parts to be upgraded (e.g., Ultrasound Application Software, Service Software, MS patches, etc.) and installation time depend on contents of the SW update package.
 - **PRECONDITION:** The "eDelivery" option must be active and InSite connection has to be configured and checked out; operation see: [Section 3.13.6 "RSvP Agent Configuration" on page 3-82](#).



Caution

Disconnecting any unessential external USB devices (such as hubs, Bluetooth, memory devices, etc.) is **NECESSARY**, as this might interfere with the installation procedure.

DO NOT disconnect the Disk Drive Module (DVD drive).

Manpower

One person ~ 1 hour (depends on installation procedure, software content, etc.)

Tools

Media (usually a USB stick) **or** active InSite connection (eDelivery)

8.2.1 Before the Software Installation/Upgrade Procedure

Before performing the Software Upgrade:

Note

- 1. backup all presets and database; see: [Section 4.4.1 on page 4-11](#)
- No preset changes are expected since only the Application Software is updated. However, it is always best practice to ensure patient data and presets are backed up before proceeding with software installation.*
- 2. perform an initial verification of the system and its functions
- 3. check/collect vital System Setup data; see [Section 8.2.1.1 on page 8-8](#), such as:
 - Application Software version
 - installed Options
 - status of "Advanced Security Features" (Whitelisting and Disk Encryption)

Caution: If the option "Advanced Security Features" is active at the Voluson Expert Series system



Whitelisting	Check "Whitelisting" status. If Whitelisting is active, it needs to be re-activated after the upgrade.
Disk Encryption	The 48-digit "Recovery key" needs to be saved, noted, or print out BEFORE starting any SW Loading, Recovering or Initializing procedure! Note: Without the "Recovery key" or the user defined Password, it is not possible to perform any modification. A USB device with unlock key <u>may not be recognized</u> during the installation.



If the currently installed software has to be upgraded to a higher version, a new software specific "Permanent key" is required. Please contact your local distributor or GE service representative to get the necessary key.

8.2.1.1 Check/Collect vital System Setup data

1. Select the **Home** button at the Left Toolbar.
2. In the “Home” menu touch the **System Setup** button to invoke the setup desktop on the screen.
3. Select **Security**.
4. If available, click the **Disk Encryption** tab.
 - Select media and click the **Save to USB** button (A) to save the unlock key to an external USB device.
 - Choose any connected printer from the pull-down menu and click **Print recovery key** (B).

Note

If printing is not possible, it is **required to write down the 48-digit “Recovery key”!** A USB device with unlock key **may not be recognized during the installation.**

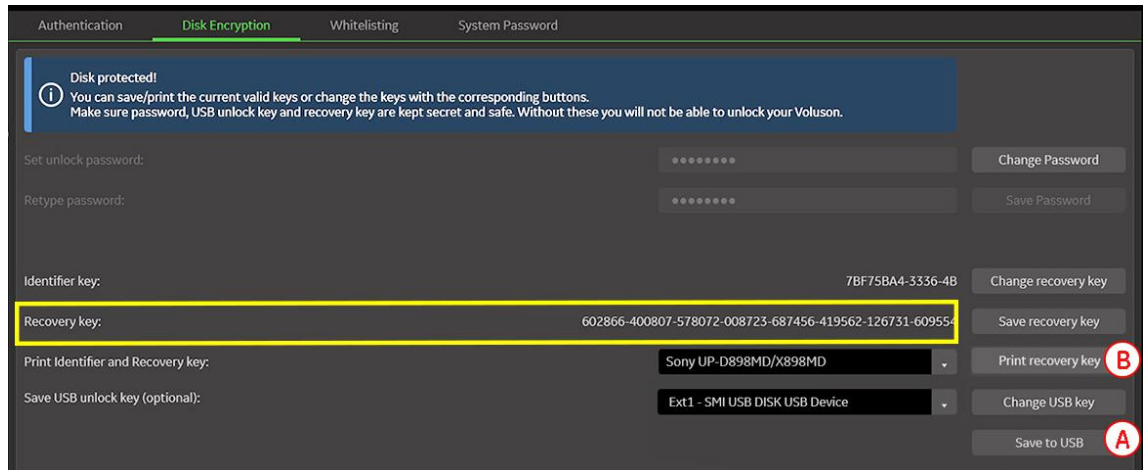


Figure 8-1: System Setup - Security - Disk Encryption

5. Click the **System Info** tab and check the currently installed Software/Hardware version of the system.

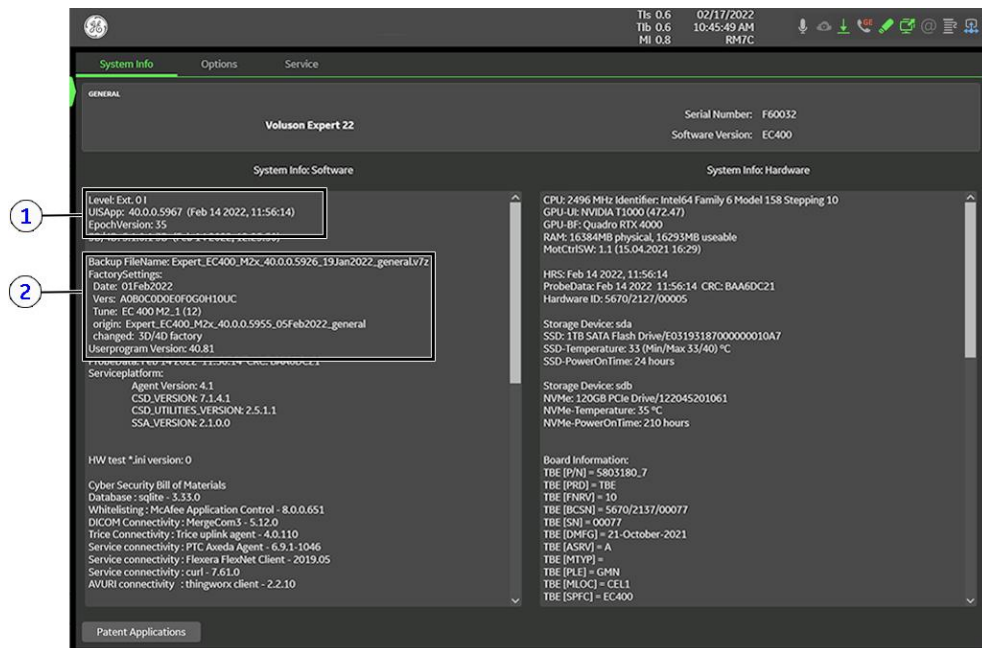


Figure 8-2: Version check: System Setup - Administration - System Info page

- 1 currently installed Ultrasound **Application Software version**
- 2 Date of Factory Settings

6. Click the **Options** tab to see which options are currently installed. Please print out the options page or write down the state of the options (P = permanent, I = inactive).

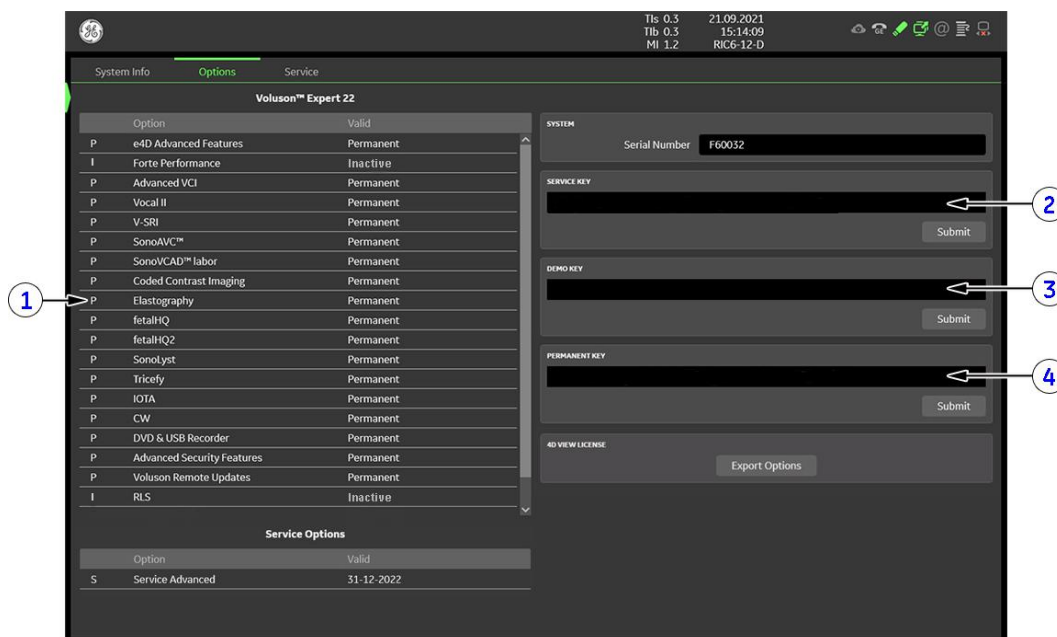


Figure 8-3: System Setup - Administration - Options page

- 1 **D = Demo** (Option is activated for demo and expires at date shown in the "Valid" column)

I = Inactive (Option is not activated)

P = Permanent (Option is permanently activated, i.e. purchased)

d = deactivated (Option is inactive)

- 2 Service Key (expire date is shown in the "Valid" column)

- 4 Permanent Key

7. **Disconnect any unessential external USB media devices** as this might interfere with the recovery/ installation procedure. Please keep printers, LAN cable and Wi-Fi in case of usage active and connected.

Note

DO NOT disconnect the Disk Drive Module (DVD drive).

Note

If a Network Color Laser Printer (e.g., HP LaserJet M454) was installed before the upgrade, it might be required to reinstall/readjust this printer as described in [Section 3.6.3 on page 3-32](#). The printer driver is available on the internal hard disk (R:\system\periph\HP_Laserjet_400).

8. If the software has to be upgraded to a higher version via the **SWI from Media** button, please contact your local distributor or GE service representative.

8.2.2 SWI from Media - System Software Installation

System software installation starts with saving and recording the settings present on the system. Then the new software is written to the hard disk.

Note

For more detailed information, see [Section 5.14.3.2 "SWI from Media" on page 5-38](#).

1. Perform Preparations as described in [Section 8.2.1 on page 8-7](#).
2. If not already done, disconnect any unessential external USB media devices (HDD and USB sticks). Please keep printers, LAN cable and Wi-Fi in case of usage active and connected.
3. **Restart** the system. (Turn system OFF and then back ON.)
4. Connect the media (usually a USB stick) containing new software.
5. Select the **Home** button at the Left Toolbar.
6. In the "Home" menu touch the **System Setup** button to invoke the setup desktop on the screen.
7. Select **Administration** and then click the **Service** tab.
8. Click the **SWI from Media** button for updating the System Software.

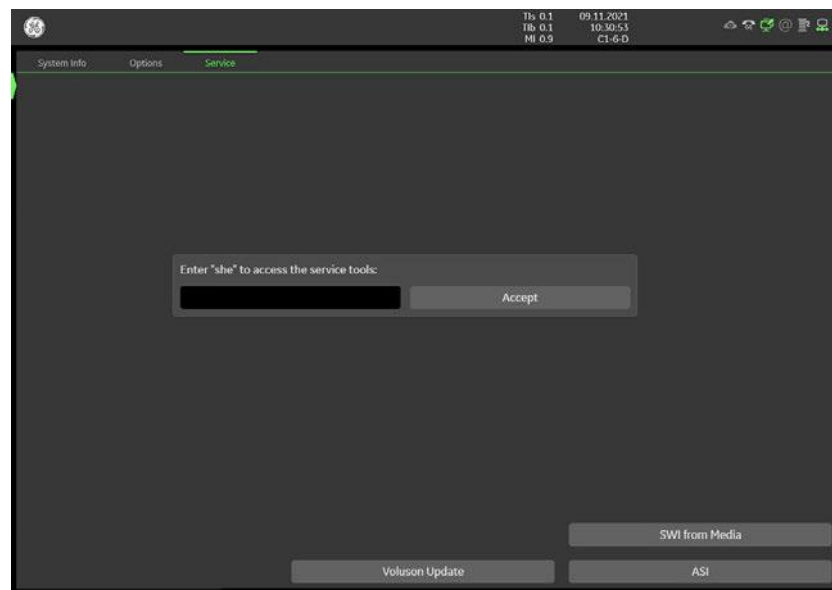


Figure 8-4: Service Tools

9. Choose the media (e.g., External USB Drives) and then click **Choose file**.

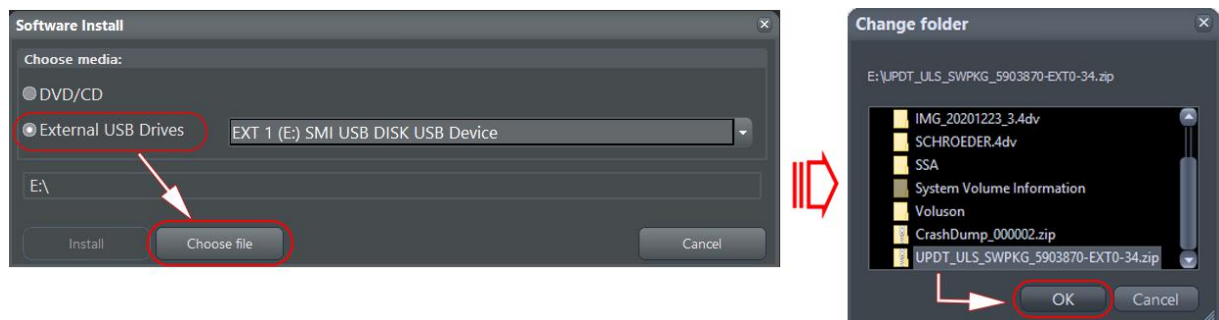


Figure 8-5: select media and choose proper SW installation "*.zip" file

10. Select the proper *.zip file from the media and click **OK**.
11. Verify *.zip selection and then click **Install**.

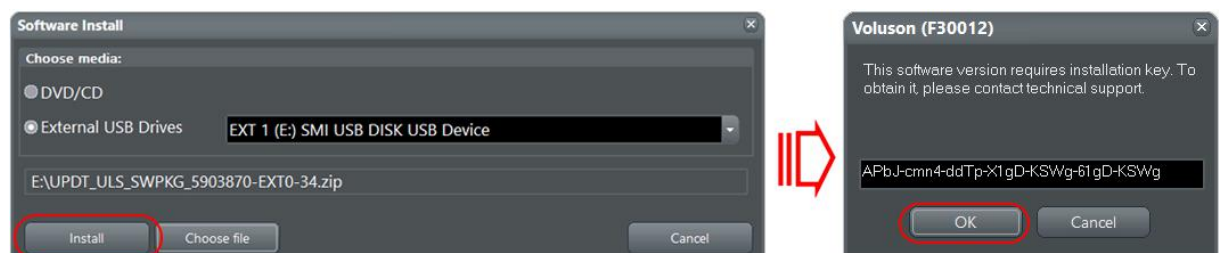


Figure 8-6: click Install and enter appropriate Permanent Key

12. Enter the appropriate "Permanent Key" and confirm with **OK**.
13. If not already done, remove **all** external USB media devices and confirm the message with **OK**.
The system saves a Configuration Backup in silent mode on R:\.

```

- Save linux log files to R:\log\ ...
- Save r:\log\voluson-linux-log.txt
- Delete r:\log\voluson-linux-log.txt
- Initializing persistent files...
- Delete c:\kretz\bs\bs_persistent.txt
- Prepare for creating Backup...
- Close UTSApp
- Close V738Progress
- Close Processlogger
- Read settings filename from registry
The operation completed successfully.
- Read system serialnumber for configuration backup
- Delete old configuration backups from r:\ConfigurationBackup...
- Delete Directory r:\ConfigurationBackup
- Save configuration backup in silent mode...

```

Figure 8-7: save configuration backup

A silent "Rollback" image from C:\ is stored on R:\. After executing all LINUX commands, the system reboots again.

14. Updating will take some time ...
15. Please wait until all processes are finished.

Note

Whenever the following "Disk Encryption" window appears, connect the USB device with unlock key and then click **Unlock**. If this does not work click the **Recovery Key** button, enter the previously print out/noted 48-digit key (without hyphens) and then click **Unlock**.

Note: If you are the owner of the unlock password, enter the **Password** and then click **Unlock**.



16. Finally, the system is rebooting into windows (Boot screen - Voluson).

Note

An automated process was developed to install the required software parts, perform check disk, remap drive letters and match settings. **During this process the system will reboot several times!**

```

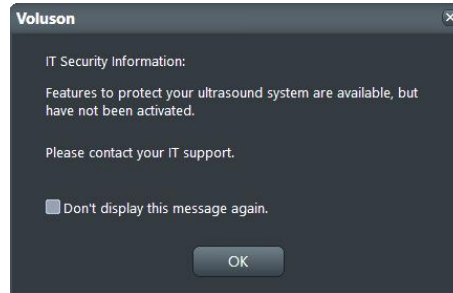
- Update D: drive after FMI
- Create folder d:\DVR\export
- Create folder d:\InSiteUploadFolder
- Create folder R:\ConfigurationBackup\old_settings"
- Copy old settings in the old_settings folder
D:\ConfigurationBackup\factory\Expert_EC480_M2x_40.0.0.5888_01Dec2021_general.v7z -> R:\ConfigurationBackup\old_settings\factory\Expert_EC480_M2x_40.0.0.5888_01Dec2021_general.v7z
1 file(s) copied
- Delete old settings
- Copy new settings from r:\system\settings\ to d:\ConfigurationBackup\factory"
- Copy USA settings from r:\system\settings\USA\ to d:\ConfigurationBackup\factory"
- Restore Application and Probe Settings for Expert
- Get Settings file name
- Settings filename: Expert_EC480_M2x_40.0.0.5926_19Jan2022_general.v7z
- Extract Expert_EC480_M2x_40.0.0.5926_19Jan2022_general.v7z to d:\UserSettings\Temp

```

Figure 8-8: automatic processes are running

17. Please wait until all processes are finished.

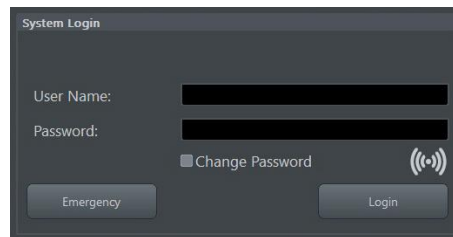
18. If the message "IT Security information....."⁷ appears, decide whether it is desired to display this message again, then click **OK**.



19. If the "System Login" window appears during boot up, enter **User Name** and **Password** and click **Login**.

Note

If you have assigned a RFID Card for Log-on authentication (optional RFID Log-on reader required) just hold your card to the card reader.



20. Finally the 2D screen is displayed on the monitor.

21. If the Touchpanel is not working after first boot up, please **Shutdown** the system; then boot up again.

Note

After turning off a system, wait at least 10 seconds before turning it on again. The system may not be able to boot if power is recycled too quickly.

22. Perform Software and Functional checks as described in [Section 8.3 on page 8-16](#).



If you are, for any reason, not satisfied with the new software, rollback the installation (restore the previously used system configuration). For more detailed information, see [Section 5.15.4 on page 5-41](#). After a "Rollback" the system is operable like before the software update.

⁷ The message "IT Security information ..." appears at every bootup, as long as the option "Advanced Security Features" is enabled, but either "Whitelisting" or "Disk Encryption" or both, are not activated at the system.

8.2.3 Software Update Package - Download/Installation



This icon (at right top of the screen) indicates that a new Software Update Package is available for download and installation.

System software installation starts with saving and recording the settings present on the system (silent "Configuration Backup" and "Rollback"). Then the new software is written to the hard disk. Application Settings are automatically updated, to match with new Software version.

Note *Software download via WLAN Enterprise connection is not permitted. Please use wired network connection.*

Note *Download time will vary. Process may take up to one hour and should not be interrupted. That's why we recommend to **start the download process after customers business hours**.*

Note *Installation is almost automated and can be started whenever desired by the customer. Depending on the package size, installation time will vary. Typically installation and testing will take approximately 45 minutes. **DO NOT** interrupt the installation process!*

To keep the interruption time to a minimum, we recommend to start the installation process after customer business hours. Software verification and basic functional checks are recommended afterwards.

Update Procedure

1. Perform Preparations as described in [Section 8.2.1 on page 8-7](#).
2. If not already done, disconnect any external USB media devices (HDD and USB sticks). Please keep printers, LAN cable and Wi-Fi in case of usage active and connected.
3. Press the **ON/OFF** standby button on the control console.
4. In the displayed screen click **Download**.
5. If desired, check mark **Shut down after download is finished** or **Install after download is finished** in the "SW Update Status" screen.

Note *If the Disk is encrypted (protected), the system needs to be unlocked by Password, Recovery key or USB device with unlock key. In this case, it is not recommended to check "Install after download is finished".*



Figure 8-9: download SW update package

6. Download may take up to one hour; please wait. (Download may be paused, but is not recommended, by means of the **Pause** button.)

7. When download is finished, click **Install**.

Note *If you want to install the new software later, click **Exit**. Installation can be resumed by clicking **Install** (in the Shutdown window).*

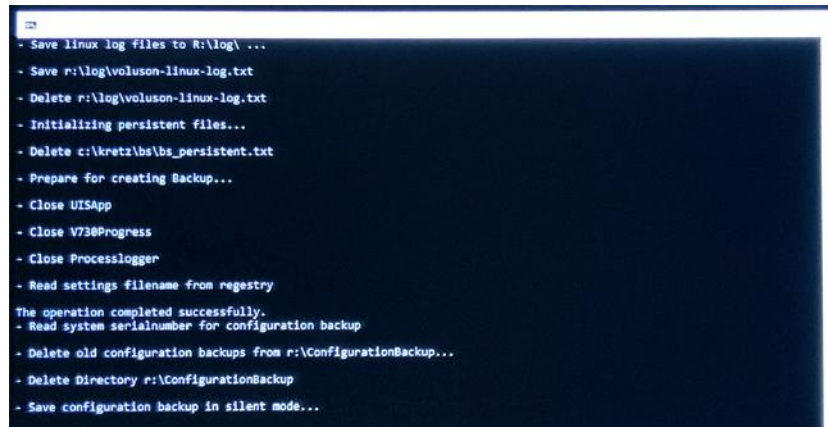


DO NOT turn off the system or unplug power cord while SW installation is in progress! Power loss of the Voluson console may lead to issues with the Software configuration and result in a Software damage with local service support needed.



8. After clicking **Install**, the SW update procedure starts.

The system saves a Configuration Backup in silent mode on R:\.



```

- Save linux log files to R:\log\ ...
- Save r:\log\voluson-linux-log.txt
- Delete r:\log\voluson-linux-log.txt
- Initializing persistent files...
- Delete c:\kretz\bs\bs_persistent.txt
- Prepare for creating Backup...
- Close UTSAApp
- Close V738Progress
- Close Processlogger
- Read settings filename from registry
The operation completed successfully.
- Read system serialnumber for configuration backup
- Delete old configuration backups from r:\ConfigurationBackup...
- Delete Directory r:\ConfigurationBackup
- Save configuration backup in silent mode...
  
```

Figure 8-10: save configuration backup

9. Check disk is performed automatically - restart.

A silent "Rollback" image from C:\ is stored on R:\. After executing all LINUX commands, the system reboots again.

10. Updating will take some time

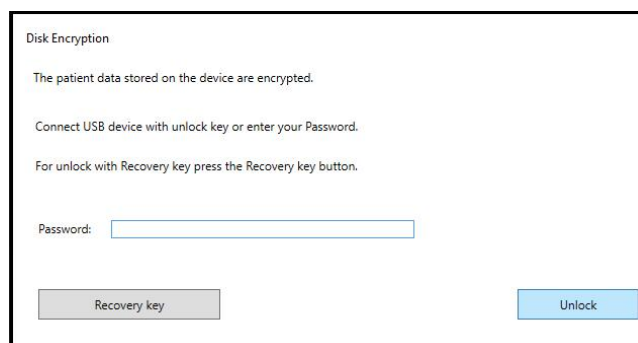
First the image is saved to R:\ (*Saving NTFS to image*); then the image is restored from R:\ (*Restoring NTFS from image*).

11. Please wait until all processes are finished.

Note

Whenever the following "Disk Encryption" window appears, connect the USB device with unlock key and then click **Unlock**. If this does not work click the **Recovery Key** button, enter the previously print out/noted 48-digit key (without hyphens) and then click **Unlock**.

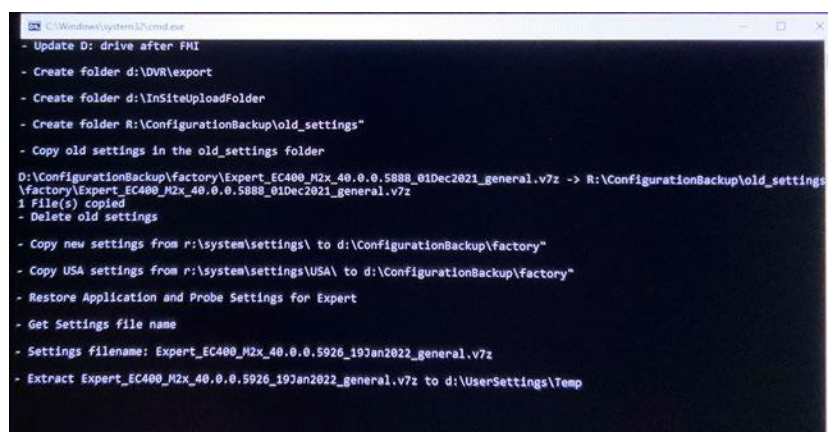
Note: If you are the owner of the unlock password, enter the **Password** and then click **Unlock**.



12. Finally, the system is rebooting into windows (Boot screen - Voluson).

Note

An automated process was developed to install the required software parts, perform check disk, remap drive letters and match settings. **During this process the system might reboot several times!**



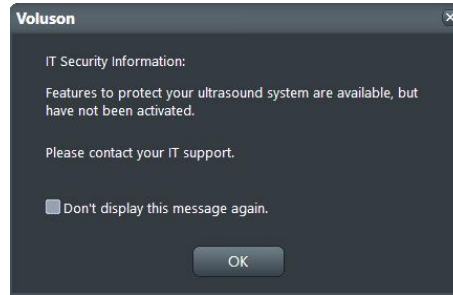
```

C:\Windows\system32\cmd.exe
- Update D: drive after FBI
- Create folder d:\DVR\export
- Create folder d:\InSiteUploadFolder
- Create folder R:\ConfigurationBackup\old_settings"
- Copy old settings in the old_settings folder
D:\ConfigurationBackup\factory\Expert_EC400_M2x_40.0.0.5888_01Dec2021_general.v7z -> R:\ConfigurationBackup\old_settings
\factory\Expert_EC400_M2x_40.0.0.5888_01Dec2021_general.v7z
1 File(s) copied
- Delete old settings
- Copy new settings from r:\system\settings\ to d:\ConfigurationBackup\factory"
- Copy USA settings from r:\system\settings\USA\ to d:\ConfigurationBackup\factory"
- Restore Application and Probe Settings for Expert
- Get Settings file name
- Settings filename: Expert_EC400_M2x_40.0.0.5926_19Jan2022_general.v7z
- Extract Expert_EC400_M2x_40.0.0.5926_19Jan2022_general.v7z to d:\UserSettings\Temp
  
```

Figure 8-11: automatic processes are running

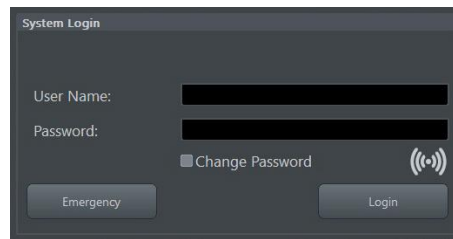
13. Please wait until all processes are finished.

14. If the message "IT Security information....."⁸ appears, decide whether it is desired to display this message again, then click **OK**.



Note

15. If the "System Login" window appears during boot up, enter **User Name** and **Password** and click **Login**.
If you have assigned a RFID Card for Log-on authentication (optional RFID Log-on reader required) just hold your card to the card reader.



16. Finally, the 2D screen is displayed on the monitor.
 17. Perform Software and Functional checks as described in [Section 8.3 on page 8-16](#).



If you are, for any reason, not satisfied with the new software, rollback the installation (restore the previously used system configuration). For more detailed information, see [Section 5.15.4 on page 5-41](#). After a "Rollback" the system is operable like before the software update.

⁸ The message "IT Security information ..." appears at every bootup, as long as the option "Advanced Security Features" is enabled, but either "Whitelisting" or "Disk Encryption" or both, are not activated at the system.

8.3 Software and Functional Checks after Installation/Upgrade Procedure

1. Select the **Home** button at the Left Toolbar.
2. In the "Home" menu touch the **System Setup** button to invoke the setup desktop on the screen.
3. Select **Settings** and then click the **General** tab to check/correct system Date & Time.
4. Select **Administration** and then click the **Options** tab.
5. Verify the correct settings of the **Options** page; see: [Figure 8-3 on page 8-9](#). If necessary, customize the settings according to the printout.
6. Click the **System Info** tab.

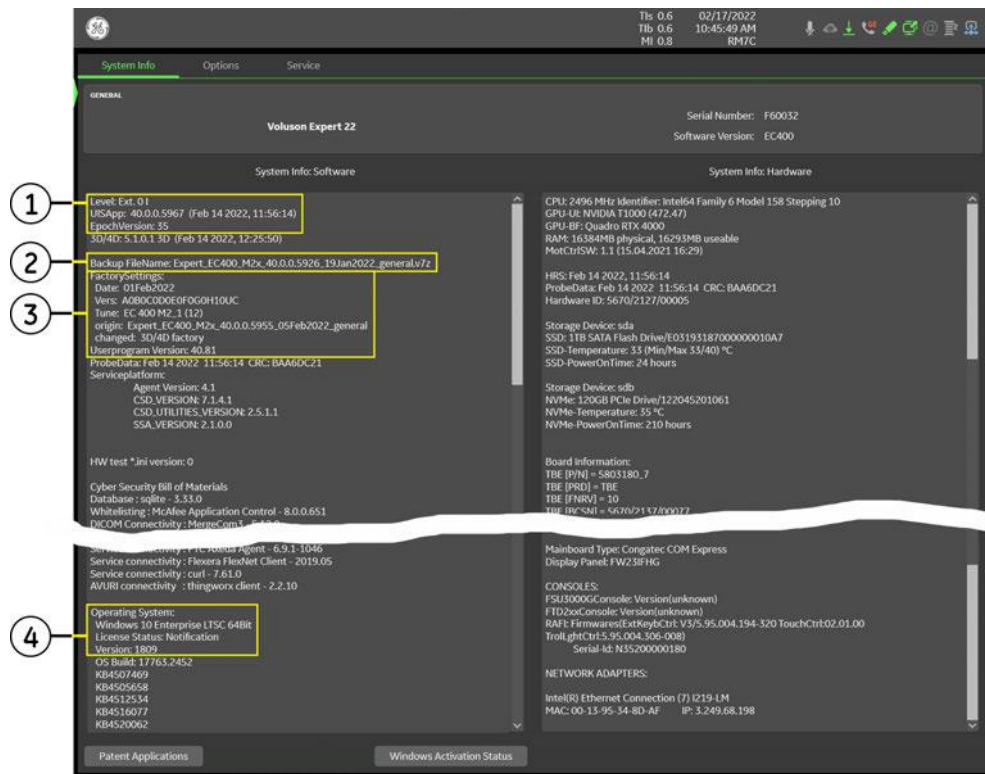


Figure 8-12: System Setup - Administration - System Info page

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1 Ultrasound Application Software version | 3 Factory Settings such as Tune- and User program version |
| 2 Backup File Name | 4 Operating System and its License Status |

7. Check the Application Software version.
8. Check that the User program version match the Application Software version.

Note

*If the Tune version does not match the Application Software version, a warning message appears whenever booting up the system. In this case, it is essential to load the **proper Application Settings**, adapted for the installed software version. Refer to: [Section 5.14.3.14 "Load Application Settings" on page 5-39](#).*

9. Move the scroll bar downwards and check the Windows Operating System License Status.

- License Status **Licensed**: Windows is properly activated.
- License Status **Notification**: Windows is not activated. Please proceed with [Section 7.7.8 "Activate Windows - Network Connectivity Issues" on page 7-57](#).

10. Check and match settings of all other system setup pages.

11. Click the **Save&Exit** button to store settings and exit the Setup desktop screen.

12. If the option "**Advanced Security Features**" is enabled, activate/re-activate its features.

- "**Whitelisting**": Select *System Setup - Security - Whitelisting* → enter user defined password, verify password and then click **Activate**. Restart the system to finalize the activation of Whitelisting.
- "**Disk Encryption**": Select *System Setup - Security - Disk Encryption* → set unlock password and then click **Create unlock keys**. Finally click the **Start Encryption** button.

13. Perform basic checks of all modes and features to ensure system is functioning normally.

14. Check Service Connectivity; if required, perform InSite Checkout. i.e., Service platform has to be configured properly; see [Section 3.13.6 "RSvP Agent Configuration" on page 3-82](#).

Note *If a Network Color Laser Printer (e.g., HP LaserJet M454) was installed before the upgrade, it might be required to reinstall/readjust this printer as described in [Section 3.6.3 on page 3-32](#). The printer driver is available on the internal hard disk (R:\system\periph\HP_Laserjet_400).*

8.4 System Configuration Backup - Loading Procedure

Introduction

The Configuration Backup contains following data:

- **Imaging**
 - **2D Presets** 2D user presets
 - **3D/4D Presets** 3D/4D user presets
 - **Gray Curves**
 - **Flow Profiles**
 - **Application Settings** Application and probe factory settings
- **Configuration**
 - **Custom**
 - * **System Settings** General "Setup" settings such as language, time/date format, video output, archive configuration, probe respond, color and lighting, etc.
 - * **Annotations** Bodymark initial position, annotation text and touchpanel layout for all applications
 - * **Scan Assistant**
 - * **Measure & Report Configuration** User specific measure setup settings
 - * **Biopsy Lines** Biopsy line positions and angles
 - * **Touch Panel Layout** User interface softkey positions on touchpanel
 - **Connectivity**
 - * **Network**
 - * **DICOM**
 - * **Peripherals and Button Configuration**
 - * **Trice** Uplink configuration
 - * **AVURI Device Management** Cloud-based device and user management across multiple locations
 - **Service**
 - * **Service Platform** Service Platform settings
 - * **Options** Software feature option permanent and demo key
 - * **Security** User authentication data such as configuration, user names and groups, LDAP configuration, etc. Password required

Note *For more detailed description of Configuration Backup items, see [Section 4.4.1 "Save System Configuration Backup" on page 4-11](#).*

Loading Procedure

see: [Section 4.4.2 "Load System Configuration Backup" on page 4-13](#)

8.5 Image Archive - Loading Procedure

Introduction

A backup of the Image Archive contains the Patient Archive (database containing patient demographic data and measurements) + **images**.

Loading Procedure

see: [Section 4.4.4.2 "Load Image Archive" on page 4-19](#)

8.6 Replacement or Activation of Options

Note For a list of available SW options and detailed description, refer to [Section 5.1.2 "Description of Software Options" on page 5-9](#)



It might be possible that some probes, options or features are NOT available

- in some countries.
- at the time of release of this Service Manual.

8.6.1 How to activate Options

1. Select the **Home** button at the Left Toolbar.
2. In the "Home" menu touch the **System Setup** button to invoke the setup desktop on the screen.
3. Select **Administration** and then click the **Option** tab.

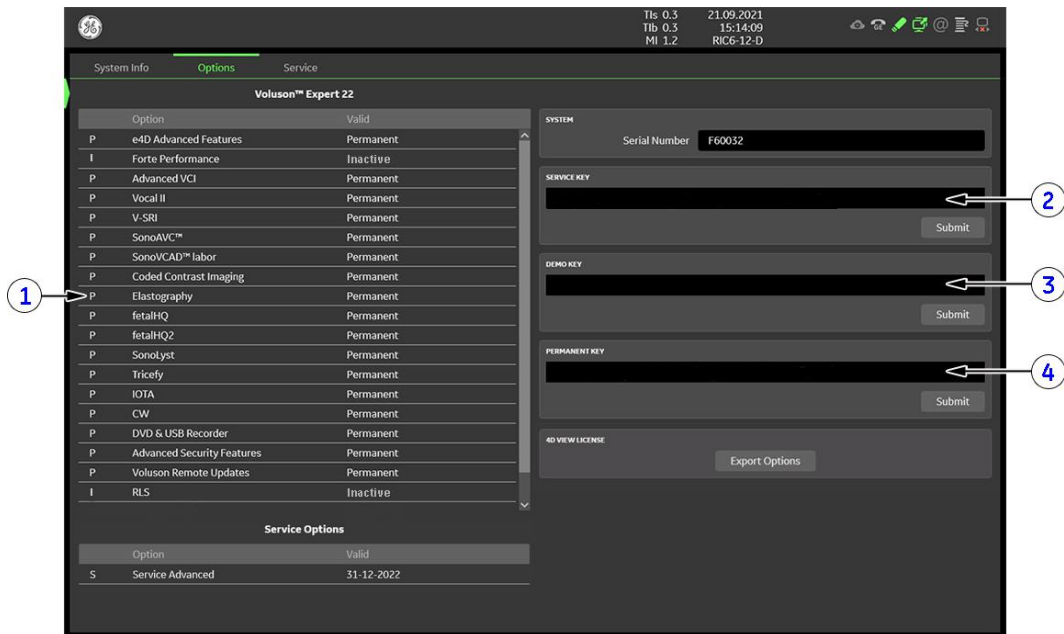


Figure 8-13: System Setup - Administration - Options page

- 1 **D = Demo** (Option is activated for demo and expires at date shown in the "Valid" column)
I = Inactive (Option is not activated)
P = Permanent (Option is permanently activated, i.e. purchased)
d = deactivated (Option is inactive)
- 2 Service Key
- 3 Demo Key
- 4 Permanent Key



The "Permanent Key", "Service Key" and "Demo Key" is only shown with service dongle connected. Without activated service dongle, these fields become "empty", as soon as the key is submitted.

4. Position the cursor inside the input field desired and press the **right/left trackball** key.
5. If one exists, clear/edit the current key.
6. Enter the encrypted key with the keyboard and click on **Submit**. (Code will be checked.)
7. Click the **Save&Exit** button.

Note After activating a Permanent Key, restart (turn off and on) the Voluson Expert Series system.

8.7 Replacement of the Rear Cover Top

Manpower

One person, 1 minute

Tools

none

Preparations

8.7.1 Rear Cover Top - Removal Procedure

1. Grasp the Rear Cover Top on bottom side and pull it off.



Figure 8-14: remove Rear Cover Top

8.7.2 Rear Cover Top - Installation Procedure

1. Place the (new) Rear Cover Top and push it onto its original position.

8.8 Replacement of the Front Cover

Manpower

One person, 1 minute

Tools

none

Preparations

8.8.1 Front Cover - Removal Procedure

Note *The Front Cover is fixed by magnets only.*

1. Grasp the Front Cover and pull it off.



Figure 8-15: remove Front Cover

8.8.2 Front Cover - Installation Procedure

1. Attach the (new) Front Cover on its original position.

8.9 Replacement of the Probe Holder Set

Manpower

One person

- 1 minute - Probe Holder (left/right)
- 3 minutes - Gel Cup

Tools

- none - Probe Holder Inlet (left/right)
- Phillips screwdriver PH1 and PH2 - Gel Cup

8.9.1 Probe Holder Set - Replacement Procedure

Probe Holder (left/right)

1. Push the button below the control panel.
2. Simply pull the Probe Holder away.

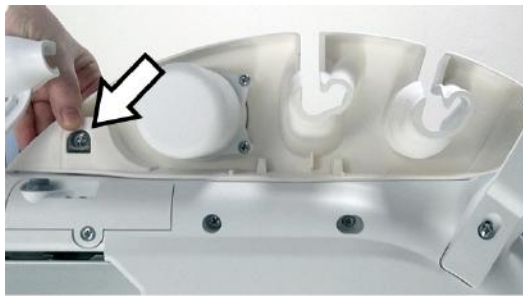


Figure 8-16: push button to remove the probe holder (e.g., at left side)

3. Insert the new Probe Holder from the kit and click it into place.

Gel Cup

1. Loosen 3 screws and then remove the Gel Cup from the left Probe Holder.

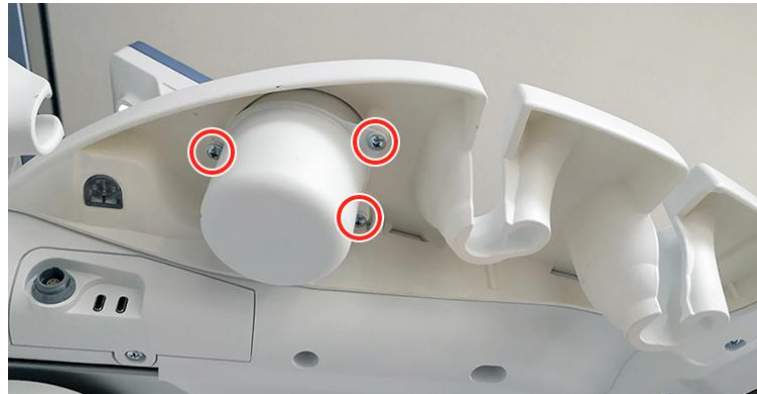


Figure 8-17: loosen screws and then remove gel cup

2. Place the new Gel Cup at the (new) left Probe Holder and fasten it with 3 screws.

8.10 Replacement of the Respond Probe Holder

Manpower

One person, 15 minutes

Tools

Phillips screwdriver PH1 and PH2

small pen, pencil or similar

8.10.1 Respond Probe Holder - Replacement Procedure

Replacement of the Respond Probe Holder on the Left

1. Remove all the probes from the left holder.
2. Disconnect the Respond Probe Holder and the Gel Warmer (if available).
3. By means of a small pen (or similar) push on the button **(A)** below the control panel.

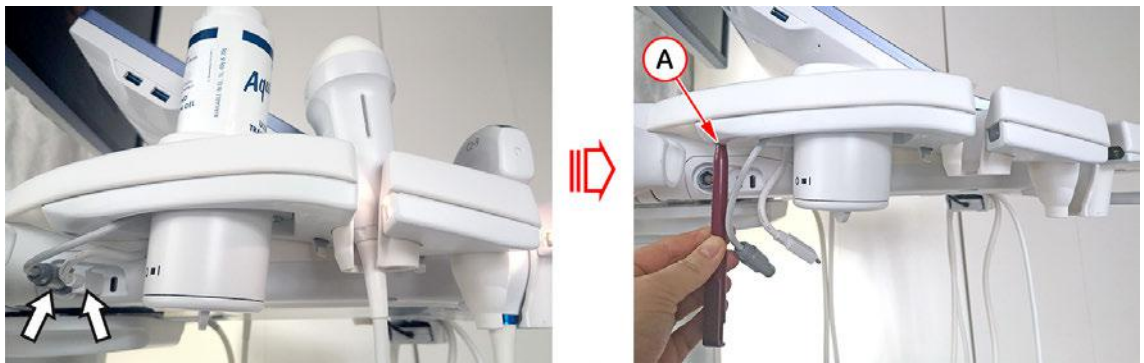


Figure 8-18: disconnect cables and then push on the button to remove the respond probe holder

4. Simply pull the Respond Probe Holder away.
5. Loosen 3 screws on bottom side and then remove the Gel Warmer (or standard Gel Cup).
6. Mount the Gel Warmer (or standard Gel Cup) on the new Respond Probe Holder and fasten it with 3 screws.
7. Insert the new Respond Probe Holder and click it into place.
8. Plug the cables into the intended ports on TPL.
9. Assign probes to the desired probe holder as described in [Section 3.4.4.1 on page 3-12](#).

Replacement of the Respond Probe Holder on the Right

1. Remove all the probes from the right holder.
2. Disconnect the Respond Probe Holder and the RFID Log-on reader (if available).
3. By means of a small pen (or similar) push on the button **(B)** below the control panel.

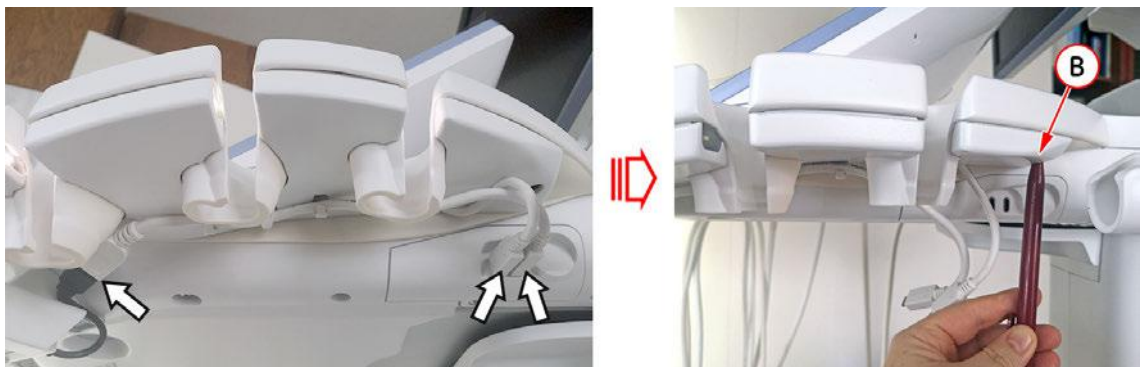


Figure 8-19: disconnect cables and then push on the button to remove the respond probe holder

4. Simply pull the Respond Probe Holder away.
5. If available, unthread the cable for the RFID Log-on reader from the old Respond Probe Holder.

6. Lay the cable for the RFID Log-on reader (C) into the fixing clamps of the new Respond Probe Holder.

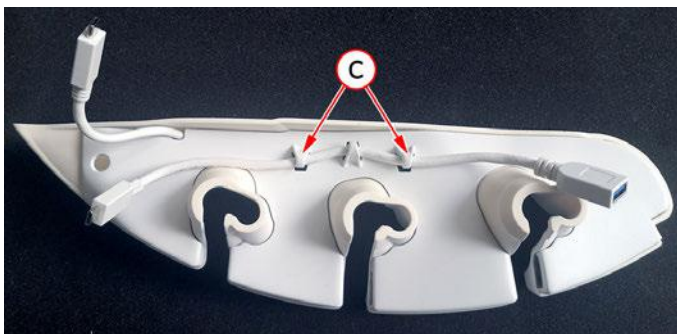


Figure 8-20: lay cable for RFID Log-on reader into fixing clamps

7. Plug the cables into the intended ports on TPR.
8. Assign probes to the desired probe holder as described in [Section 3.4.4.1 on page 3-12](#).

8.11 Replacement of the Probe Holder for Endocavity Probes

Manpower

One person, 3 minutes

Tools

none

8.11.1 Probe Holder for Endocavity Probes - Replacement Procedure

1. Push against the latch and then pull the Probe Holder for Endocavity probes downwards.



Figure 8-21: push against latch and pull the probe holder downwards

2. Place the new Probe Holder at its original position.

8.12 Replacement of the Trackball Ring

Manpower

One person, 1 minute

Tools

none

8.12.1 Trackball Ring - Replacement Procedure

1. Remove the Trackball Ring by turning it counterclockwise (red arrow).



Figure 8-22: Trackball with Trackball "fixation" ring

2. Mount the Trackball Ring by turning it clockwise (blue arrow).

8.13 Replacement of the Caps for Encoders and/or Joysticks

Manpower

One person, 5 minutes

Tools

none

8.13.1 Caps for Encoders and/or Joysticks - Replacement Procedure

1. Remove the caps for Encoders and/or Joysticks.

Note

Do not loose integrated metal spring in each cap.



Figure 8-23: remove caps (pull them off)

2. Mount the caps for Encoders and/or Joysticks.

8.14 Replacement of the Caps for Hardkeys

Note *Replacement procedure depends on key caps that have to be replaced!*

- *If just the oval-shaped key caps and the three-piece Trackball bottom keys have to be replaced, refer to: [Section 8.14.1 on page 8-27](#)*
- *If the left/right and top trackball buttons and/or the Hardkey frames have to be replaced too, please contact your local distributor or GE service representative*

8.14.1 Replacement of circle-/ and oval-shaped Key Caps only

Manpower

One person, approx. 1 minute/cap

Tools

small-sized slotted screwdriver or tweezers

8.14.1.1 Circle-/ and oval-shaped Key Caps - Replacement Procedure

1. Use a small slotted screwdriver or your fingernails to remove circle-/ or oval-shaped Key Cap(s).
2. Lift the cap, until it is completely loosened from its base.

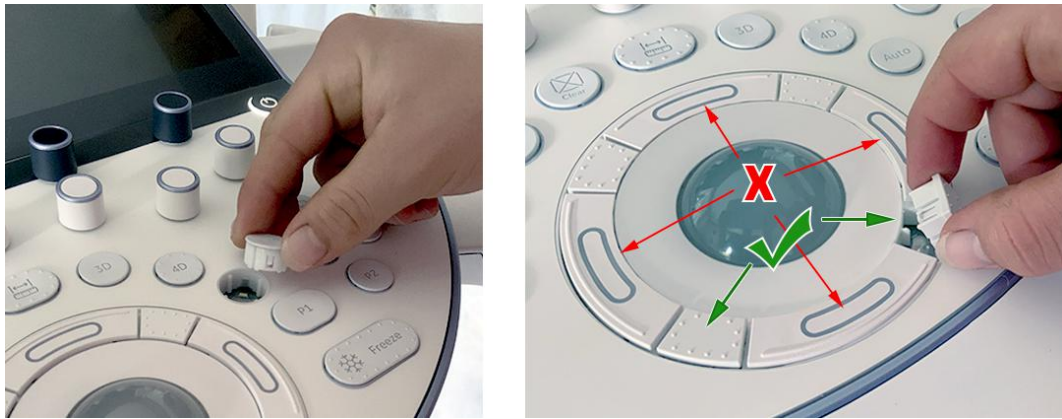


Figure 8-24: push against the cap and lift it

Note *It is impossible to replace the curved left/right and top/bottom trackball buttons (see image above) this way. Please contact your local distributor or GE service representative.*

3. Place the new Key Cap down until it snaps into position.

8.15 Replacement of the Monitor Back Cover

Note *Depending on the Monitor mounted (LCD or HDU), the replacement procedure is slightly different.*

Manpower

One person, 2 minutes

Tools

probably Phillips screwdriver PH1 and PH2

Preparations

8.15.1 Monitor Back Cover - Replacement Procedure

1. In case of HDU Monitor unscrew and remove 1 screw.
2. Pull off the Monitor Back Cover (A) from bottom (hinged on top).

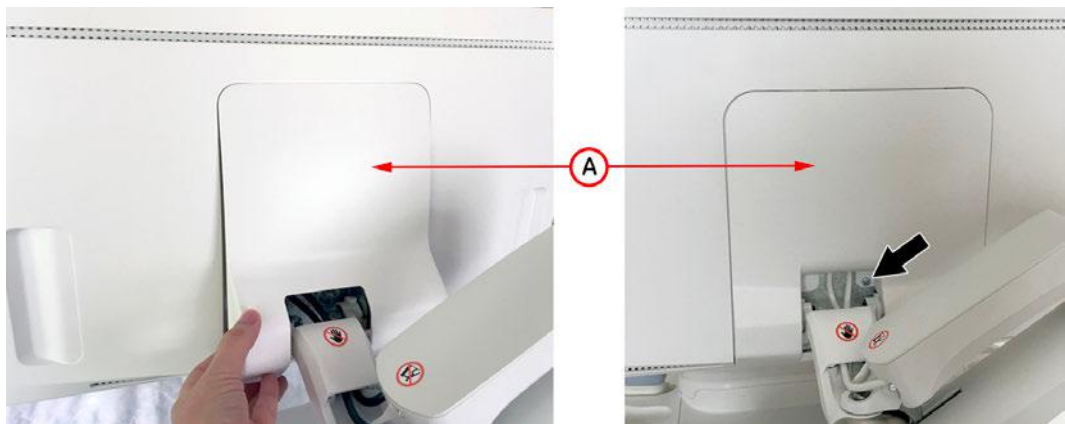


Figure 8-25: pull off the Monitor Back Cover

3. Attach the new Monitor Back Cover and push it onto its original position.
4. In case of HDU Monitor fasten it with 1 screw.

8.16 Replacement of a Probe

Manpower

One person, approx. 15 minutes

Tools

none

After the Probe Replacement

1. Inspect the new probe for wear or tear on the lens, housing, cable and locking mechanism. Look for bent or damaged connector pins on the connector.
2. Connect the new probe and verify that the Voluson Expert Series system properly recognizes the probe.
3. Verify that the issue with the old probe has been resolved. It is recommended to perform the following functional tests to confirm the new probe is operational.

Item	Functional Test & Expected Result
Probe Check	Perform Probe Check as described in Section 3.7.2 on page 3-48 . Expected result: Probe Check passed.
2D Mode Quality	Start a proper program and record a 2D image. Expected result: Regular and homogenous 2D image.
Receiver Frequency	Switch the Receiver Frequency range. Expected result: No disturbances in the 2D image during changing the Receiver Frequency.
M Mode	Start a proper program, adjust the M cursor (vessel) and activate the M Mode. Change the M Mode sweep speed. After Freeze, move the Trackball to recall the stored sequence. Expected result: M Cursor agrees with vessel. Cine loop is displayed.
Triplex Mode	Start a proper program and switch on the CFM- and the PW Mode. Adjust the Doppler Cursor and press the Trackball key to activate the Triplex-Mode. Expected result: No disturbances in the 2D/Color and the Doppler image.
Volume Mode	Volume Probes only: Start 3D/4D Mode and perform Volume acquisition. Expected result: Continuous Volume Acquisition (without any "jumps") and smooth echo shape with clearly defined image edge.

In case of any issues please contact your local service/sales representative.

8.17 Replacing optional Peripherals / How to mount Peripherals at a later date

Note *Usually auxiliary devices and peripherals come pre-installed with the Voluson Expert Series system.*

Manpower

One person, 10 - 30 minutes (depending on peripherals)

Tools

slotted screwdriver

Content in this chapter

<i>8.17.1 Mounting/Replacing the Color Printer</i>	<i>8-31</i>
<i>8.17.2 Mounting/Replacing the Gel Warmer</i>	<i>8-32</i>
<i>8.17.3 Mounting/Replacing the RFID Log-on Reader</i>	<i>8-33</i>
<i>8.17.4 Mounting/Replacing an External Patient Monitor</i>	<i>8-34</i>
<i>8.17.5 Mounting/Replacing the ECG Module</i>	<i>8-36</i>



Caution

An External Patient Monitor **MUST NEVER** be connected to the mains supply directly! Always connect it to an appropriate Isolation Transformer (see [Section 9.11.2 on page 9-31](#)).



Warning

After each installation, the leakage currents have to be measured according to IEC 60601-1, IEC 62353 or other relevant standard.

8.17.1 Mounting/Replacing the Color Printer



Caution

Please observe that the complete Printer Assembly has to be located outside of the patient environment (according to IEC 60601-1).

Note *The Wireless Print Kit (KTZ304239 / H48711KZ) is required for connecting and usage of the Color Printer.*

8.17.1.1 Color Printer & Wireless Kit - Installation Procedure

1. Slide the slide switch on the rear panel of the Wireless Print Receiver to the **RUN** position.
2. Using the supplied USB cable connect the printer to the **PRINTER** connector on the rear panel of the Wireless Print Receiver (see connection scheme *Figure 3-13 on page 3-17*).
3. Using the supplied USB cable connect the printer port that supplies USB bus power to the **DC IN** connector on the rear panel of the Wireless Print Receiver.
4. Connect the Wireless Print Transmitter to the USB port of the Voluson Expert Series system.
5. Connect the power cable of the printer to a wall socket.
6. Press the Power ON button on the printer. The LINK indicator on the front panel of the Wireless Print Receiver starts flashing.

The LINK indicator on the front panel of the Wireless Print Receiver starts flashing.

7. Power On/Boot up the Voluson Expert Series system as described in *Section 3.4.2 on page 3-9*.

The LINK indicator on the front panel of the Wireless Print Transmitter starts flashing.

Note *When the LINK indicators on both the Wireless Print Receiver and Transmitter are lit solid, printing from the Voluson Expert Series system is enabled.*

8. Verify correct printer settings; see *Section 3.6.5 "Adjustment of Printer Settings" on page 3-41*.
9. Assign printer to remote keys, see *Section 3.6.7 "Button Configuration (Remote Control)" on page 3-45*.



Figure 8-26: Example: Color Printer connected by means of Wireless Kit

A	Wireless Print Receiver	B	Wireless Print Transmitter	C	Color Printer
---	-------------------------	---	----------------------------	---	---------------

8.17.2 Mounting/Replacing the Gel Warmer

Manpower

One person, 10 minutes

Tools

Phillips screwdriver PH1 and PH2

Preparations

8.17.2.1 Gel Warmer - Installation Procedure

Note *Following steps describe, how to install the Gel Warmer (if it was not mounted before).*

1. Loosen 3 screws and then remove the Gel Cup from the left Probe Holder.

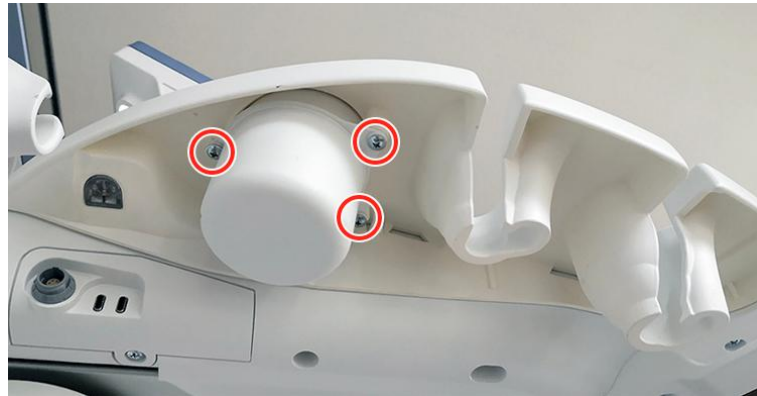


Figure 8-27: loosen screws and then remove gel cup

2. Place the Gel Warmer at the left Probe Holder and fasten it with 3 screws.
3. Connect the Gel Warmer cable to the appropriate port **(A)** and lay the cable.
4. Switch ON the Gel Warmer bowl **(B)**.



Figure 8-28: prepare the Gel Warmer

5. Wait for the temperature to rise (approx. rise time: 1 minute).
6. Check warming by putting your hand into the cup of the Gel Warmer.
7. Confirm a warm surface temperature is present (target temperature: 38°C / 100°F).

8.17.3 Mounting/Replacing the RFID Log-on Reader

Manpower

One person, 10 minutes

Tools

Phillips screwdriver PH1 and PH2

Preparations

8.17.3.1 RFID Log-on Reader - Installation Procedure

Note *Following steps describe, how to install the RFID Log-on reader (if it was not mounted before).*

1. Loosen 1 screw below the control panel and then remove the cable hook (A) at the right side.
2. Align the cable hook (card reader support) from the kit (B) and fix it with 1 screw.



Figure 8-29: exchange cable hook

3. Connect the USB Type-C port of the cable to the intended plug on TPR (C).
4. Lay the cable into the fixing clamps (D) below the Probe Holder.

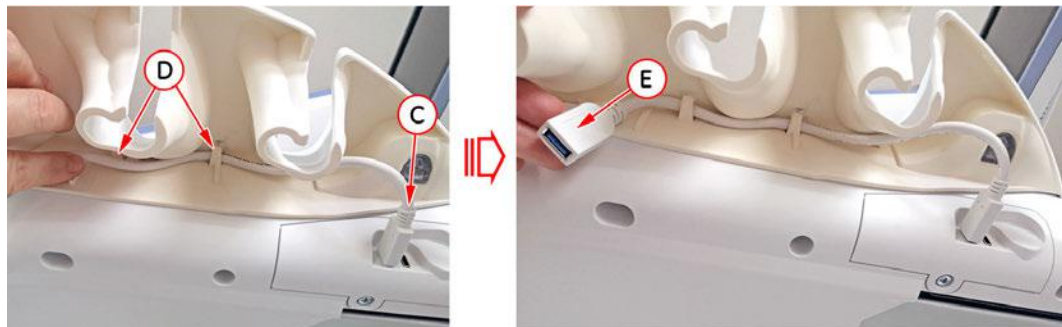


Figure 8-30: lay the cable

5. Connect the RFID Log-on reader to the other end (E) of the cable.
6. Put the RFID Log-on reader face down (F) into the cable hook (card reader support).



Figure 8-31: mount the RFID Log-on reader

7. Verify proper operation. Refer to ["How to assign a RFID Card for Login Authentication" on page 3-59](#).

Note *If a user and card is assigned for test purposes only, remove it after the operation check.*

8.17.4 Mounting/Replacing an External Patient Monitor

- Note

An External Patient Monitor is **NOT intended for diagnostic use**. It is an additional device used to allow the patient to watch the proceedings.
- Note

Take your time to think about the best position of the monitor in your facilities. Patients should be able to view the monitor easily and without having to bend or turn around.



Caution
All necessary modifications to wall and buildings must be performed by a professional to avoid structural damage and electrical hazard.

8.17.4.1 External Monitor & Wireless Display Kit - Installation Procedure

1. If not already done, assemble the receiving device (Host) and the power adapter.
 2. Connect the HDMI cable to the **HDMI OUT** connector of the receiving device (Host) and to the **HDMI IN** connector of the External Patient Monitor (see connection scheme [Figure 3-20 on page 3-24](#)).
 3. Connect the power cable of the External Patient Monitor to a wall socket and power on the monitor.
 4. Connect the supplied power adapter to the **mini USB** connector of the receiving device (Host) and plug the other end into a wall socket.
 5. Power On/Boot up the Voluson Expert Series system as described in [Section 3.4.2 on page 3-9](#).
 6. Connect the transmitting device (Button) to the **HDMI** and a **USB** connector on the Voluson Expert Series system.
- Note

When the LED indicators on both the receiving (Host) and transmitting device (Button) are lit solid blue, presenting is enabled.
7. Compare the picture on the newly installed monitor with the picture on the Voluson Expert Series monitor.
 8. After physical connection to the Voluson Expert Series system check, and if necessary change the Ext. Monitor Output setting, see: [Section 3.7.5.7 on page 3-53](#).
- Note

If you need to change the configuration of the newly installed monitor, please, refer to the manual of the External Patient Monitor.

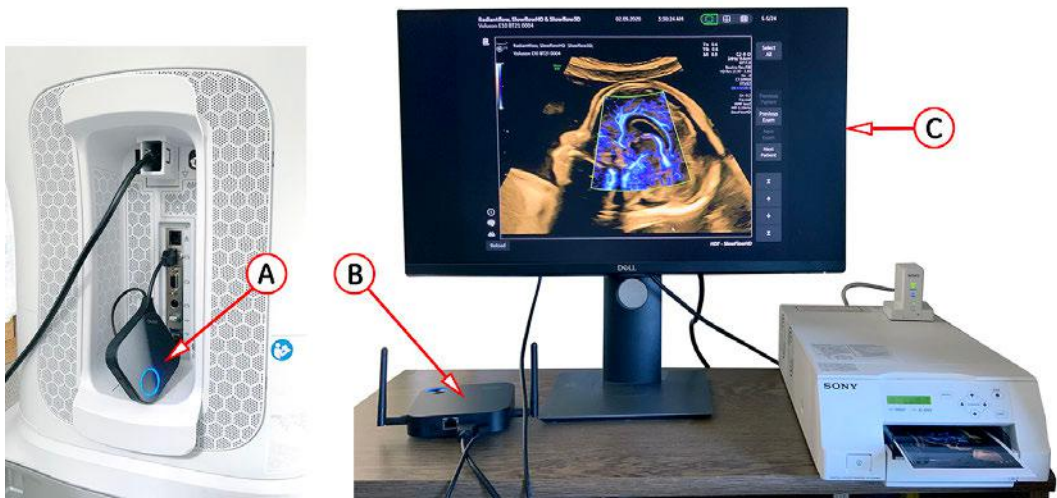


Figure 8-32: Example: External Patient Monitor connected by means of Wireless Display Kit

A	Transmitting Device = Button	B	Receiving Device = Host	C	External Patient Monitor
---	-------------------------------------	---	--------------------------------	---	--------------------------

8.17.4.2 Connection of an External Patient Monitor and Isolation Transformer

Note *DO NOT connect an External Patient Monitor to the Voluson Expert Series system via USB cable. Use the supplied VGA cable.*



Caution

An External Patient Monitor **MUST NEVER** be connected to the mains supply directly! Always connect it to an appropriate Isolation Transformer (see [Section 9.11.2 on page 9-31](#)).



Caution

The transformer must be out of the reach of the patient. However, it needs to be within cable length from the monitor and a socket. The transformer is IPX 0. There is no protection against ingress of liquids!



Caution

For changing the input/output voltage or fuses the isolation transformer should not be connected. The wrong fuses and position of the input/output voltage selector may cause major damage on connected peripherals.

Preparing the Isolation Transformer:

1. Before using the Isolation Transformer you must check the input/output voltage settings to meet the ratings of the line power available in your location or country.
2. For changing the input/output voltage, remove the label by means of a small socket wrench.
3. Switch both voltage selectors (input **as well as** output voltage) to 115V or 230V. Consider that changing the input/output voltage also requires to change the fuses!



Figure 8-33: change input/output voltage

4. For changing the fuses, open the fuse protection at the power inlet block by means of a small screwdriver, then remove the fuse holder and exchange fuses.



Figure 8-34: exchange fuses

5. Assure that the connected loads can be operated with the chosen voltage.

Physical Connection:

Note *For connection scheme refer to [Section 3.5.8 on page 3-24](#).*

1. Plug the VGA cable (from External Patient Monitor) to the **VGA Out** connector on the external I/O connector panel on the rear of the system.
2. Place the isolation transformer on the floor or mount it on the wall.
3. Plug the Power cable (from External Patient Monitor) to the isolation transformer. The Power cable of the transformer itself connect to a wall socket.
4. Use this power switch to power on the Transformer.

Note *Wait ~ 1 minute before turning on your monitor.*

5. Press the main power switch on the External Patient Monitor.
6. Compare the picture on the newly installed monitor with the picture on the Voluson Expert Series monitor.

Note *If you need to change the configuration of the newly installed monitor, please, refer to the manual of the External Patient Monitor.*

Note *The monitor needs to be switched of separately at the main power switch of the monitor.*

8.17.5 Mounting/Replacing the ECG Module

Manpower

One person, 5 minutes

Tools

none

Preparations

8.17.5.1 ECG Module - Installation Procedure

1. Take the USB cable (A) and plug it to the ECG module (B). The other end connect to a USB Type-C port (A) on the back side of the display unit of the Voluson Expert Series system.
2. Connect the ECG patient cable (C) to the ECG module.

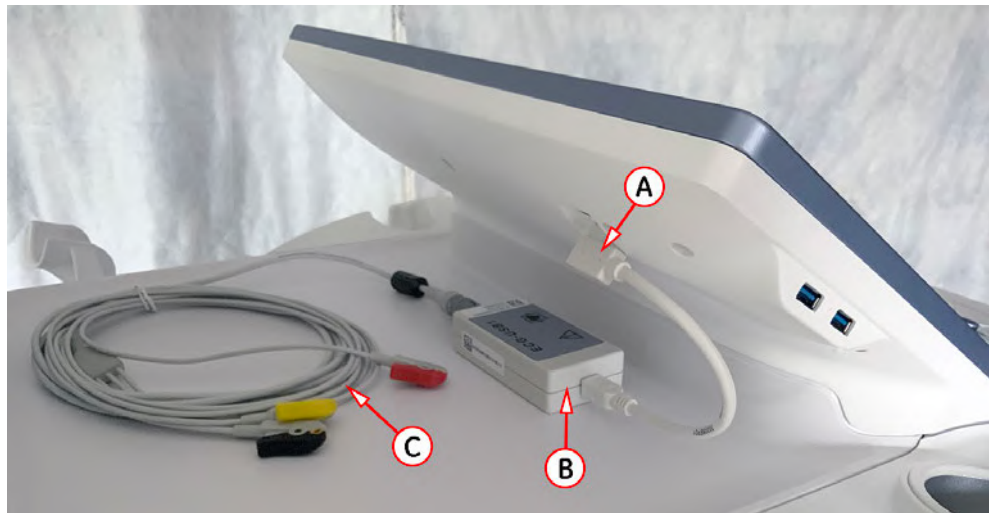


Figure 8-35: ECG module connected to the system

3. Select the **Home** button at the Left Toolbar.
4. Click the **ECG** button to open the ECG menu.

When touching the **ECG line On** button, the ECG line becomes visible on the monitor.

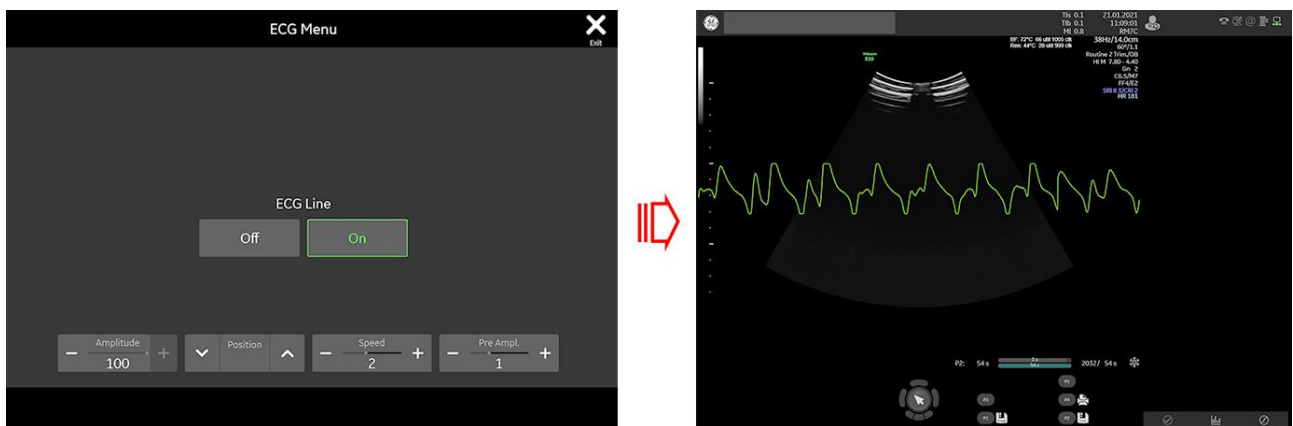


Figure 8-36: ECG menu - ECG line ON

Note

For further information and safe use of the ECG preamplifier refer to the Instructions for Use of your Voluson Expert Series system.

Chapter 9

Renewal Parts

This chapter gives an overview of replacement parts available for the Voluson Expert Series system.

Content in this chapter

9.1 List of Abbreviations - - - - -	9-2
9.2 Parts List Groups - - - - -	9-4
9.3 Housing - Mechanical Hardware Parts & Covers - - - - -	9-5
9.4 User Interface - - - - -	9-12
9.5 Monitor + Monitor Replacement Parts - - - - -	9-17
9.6 Power Modules - - - - -	9-19
9.7 FrontEnd (US-Part) Components - - - - -	9-20
9.8 BackEnd (PC-Part) Components - - - - -	9-21
9.9 Options and Upgrades - - - - -	9-24
9.10 Miscellaneous Cables - - - - -	9-25
9.11 Optional Peripherals and Accessories - - - - -	9-29
9.12 System Manuals - - - - -	9-36
9.13 Probes - - - - -	9-36
9.14 Biopsy Needle Guides - - - - -	9-42



It might be possible that some probes, options or features are NOT available

- in some countries.
 - at the time of release of this Service Manual.
-

9.1 List of Abbreviations

AC	Alternating Current
ADC	Analog to Digital Converter
APM	Asset Performance Tool
ASIC	Application Specific Integrated Circuit
Assy	Assembly
BEP	BackEnd Processor
CPU	Central Processing Unit
CRM	Customer Relationship Management (number)
CRU	Customer Replaceable Unit
DAC	Digital to Analog Converter
DC	Direct Current
DVI	Digital Visual Interface
elfU	electronic Instructions for Use
EFI	Extensible Firmware Interface
FE	FrontEnd
FRU	Y = Replacement part / N = Non Stock part
GB	Gigabyte
GPU-BF	Graphic Card for beamforming
GPU-UI	Graphic Card for rendering
HDD	Hard Disk Drive for Patient Data
HDU	High Definition Ultrasound
IfU	Instructions for Use
I/O	Input/Output
LCD	Liquid Crystal Display
NFC	Near Field Communication
PCB	Printed Circuit Board
PCBA	Printed Circuit Board Assembly
PCI	Peripheral Component Interconnect
RAM	Random Access Memory
RFID	Radio-frequency Identification
SSD	Solid-State Drive for Operating System
TAC	Frontend Acquisition Board
TAL	Monitor Arm for LCD Monitor
TAM	Monitor Arm for HDU Monitor
TB	Terabyte
TBB	Backend Box Complete
TBE	Backend Carrier Board (Base Board)
TBX	Backend Extension Board (Expansion)
TCC	Cable Channel (cable harness)
TCO	Frontend Connector Board
TDD	DVD Drive

TFB	Frontend Box Complete
TGW	Trolley (Mechanical Base Assembly)
THK	Handle Keys (Front Keys)
TLC	Lifting Column
TLL	DecoLighting-Logo GE
TLU	Lighting Unit
TPL	Peripheral Interface Left
TPR	Peripheral Interface Right
TPS	Power Supply
TVG	Frontend Voltage Generator Board
TUI / UI	User interface
UIS	Ultrasound Application Software
μC	Microcontroller
VCO	Virtual Console Observation
WPA PSK	WiFi Protected Access Pre-Shared Key <u>Note:</u> PSK is also referred to as "Personal" encryption standard.

9.2 Parts List Groups



Figure 9-1: Console Views of LEFT Side (A) - FRONT (B) - BACK/REAR (C) - RIGHT Side (D)

Table 9-1: Mechanical and user accessible parts

Item	Part Group Name	Description
100 -	<i>"Housing - Mechanical Hardware Parts & Covers" on page 9-5</i>	Housing Covers (except TUI and Monitor), Caster Wheels, Handle, Lifting Column, Probe Holder
200 -	<i>"User Interface" on page 9-12</i>	Console (keyboard, trackball, display, special knobs and switches) Loudspeakers, Disk Drive, Console Covers, etc.
300 -	<i>"Monitor + Monitor Replacement Parts" on page 9-17</i>	Monitor + Monitor Replacement Parts
400 -	<i>"Power Modules" on page 9-19</i>	Power Module
500 -	<i>"FrontEnd (US-Part) Components" on page 9-20</i>	Ultrasound (FrontEnd) Components
550 -	<i>"BackEnd (PC-Part) Components" on page 9-21</i>	PC-Part (BackEnd) Components
600 -	<i>"Options and Upgrades" on page 9-24</i>	Software Options and Upgrades
700 -	<i>"Miscellaneous Cables" on page 9-25</i>	
800 -	Optional Peripherals and Accessories - <i>"Printers" on page 9-29</i> - <i>"Additional Devices and optional Equipment" on page 9-31</i>	. B/W Printer, Color Printer, Network Printer Secondary Patient Monitor, Foot Switch, Gel Warmer, Respond Probe Holder, RFID Log-on, ECG, WLAN, etc.
	<i>"System Manuals" on page 9-36</i>	
900 -	Probes - <i>"2D-Probes - Curved Array Probes" on page 9-37</i> - <i>"2D-Probes - Linear Array Probes" on page 9-38</i> - <i>"2D-Probes - Phased Array Probes" on page 9-39</i> - <i>"Real-Time 4D Volume Probes" on page 9-40</i>	
950 -	<i>"Biopsy Needle Guides" on page 9-42</i>	

9.3 Housing - Mechanical Hardware Parts & Covers

Table 9-2: Housing - Mechanical Hardware Parts & Covers

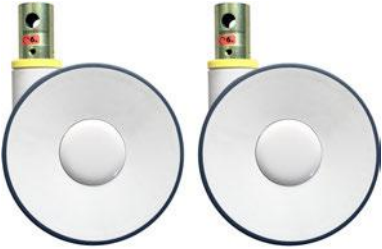
Item	Part Name	Part Number	Description	Qty	CRU	FRU
101	Rear Cover Inlay	KTZ304194	Rear Cover Inlay 	1	N	Y
102	Cable Hook kit	KTZ304195	Cable Hook kit 	1	N	Y
103	Side Cover right EC4xx	KTZ304196	Side Cover right EC4xx 	1	N	Y
104	Side Cover left EC4xx	KTZ304197	Side Cover left EC4xx 	1	N	Y

Item	Part Name	Part Number	Description	Qty	CRU	FRU
105	GE Logo side cover EC4xx	KTZ304198	GE Logo EC4xx at Side Cover right/left (1 pcs) 	2	N	Y
106	Front Frame EC4xx	KTZ304199	Front Frame EC4xx assembly 	1	N	Y
107	TLU Lighting Unit front EC4xx	KTZ304200	TLU Lighting Unit front EC4xx 	1	N	Y
108	Front Cover EC4xx	KTZ304201	Front Cover assembly EC4xx 	1	Y	Y

Item	Part Name	Part Number	Description	Qty	CRU	FRU
109	Back Cover - Rear Handle EC4xx	KTZ304202	Rear Handle assembly EC4xx 	1	N	Y
110	Back Cover Air Inlet EC4xx	KTZ304203	Back Cover Air Inlet EC4xx 	1	N	Y
111	Rear Frame EC4xx	KTZ304204	Rear Frame EC4xx 	1	N	Y

Item	Part Name	Part Number	Description	Qty	CRU	FRU
112	Rear Cover Air Inlet EC4xx	KTZ304205	Rear Cover Air Inlet EC4xx 	1	N	Y
113	Top Cover EC4xx	KTZ304206	Top Cover EC4xx 	1	N	Y
114	Rear Cover Top EC4xx	KTZ304207	Rear Cover Top EC4xx 	1	Y	Y
115	Trolley Top Cover EC4xx	KTZ304208	Trolley Top Cover EC4xx 	1	N	Y
116	Bottom Cover Air Inlet EC4xx	KTZ304209	Bottom Cover Air Inlet EC4xx 	1	N	Y

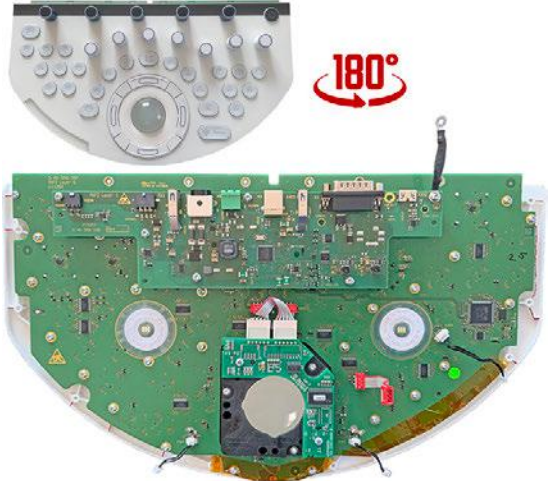
Item	Part Name	Part Number	Description	Qty	CRU	FRU
117	Probe Holder set EC4xx	KTZ304211	Probe Holder set EC4xx 	1	Y	Y
118	Respond Probe Holder	KTZ304243	Probe Holder set for automatic activation/deactivation 	1	N	Y
119	RIC Probe holder set EC4xx	KTZ304259	left/right holder for Endocavity probe complete 	1	Y	Y
120	Footrest Cover EC4xx	KTZ304212	Footrest Cover EC4xx 	1	N	Y

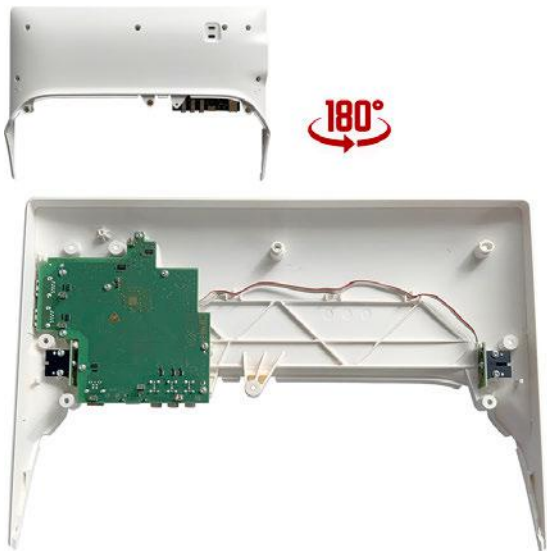
Item	Part Name	Part Number	Description	Qty	CRU	FRU
121	Casters front EC4xx	KTZ304213	Casters front EC4xx 	2	N	Y
122	Caster rear EC4xx	KTZ304214	Caster rear EC4xx 	2	N	Y
123	Pedal Covers front EC4xx	KTZ304215	Pedal Covers front EC4xx 	1	N	Y
124	Pedal Covers rear EC4xx	KTZ304216	Pedal Covers rear EC4xx 	1	N	Y
125	TLC100 Lifting Column	KTZ304217	TLC100 Lifting Column 	1	N	Y
126	Lifting Column Cover EC4xx	KTZ304218	Lifting Column Cover EC4xx 	1	N	Y

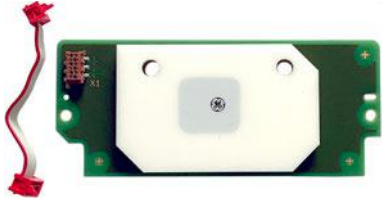
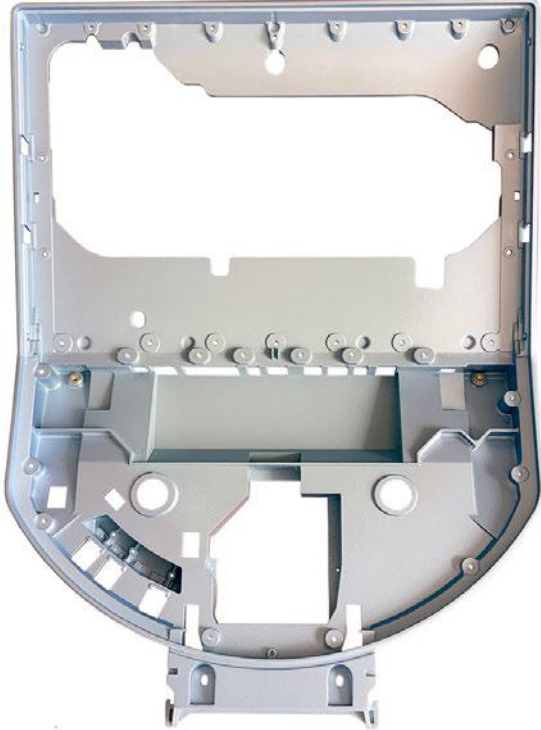
Item	Part Name	Part Number	Description	Qty	CRU	FRU
127	Front Handle EC4xx	<i>KTZ304219</i>	Front Handle EC4xx 	1	N	Y
128	Threaded Sleeves EC4xx	<i>KTZ304220</i>	Threaded Sleeves EC4xx 	1	N	Y
129	Side Drawer	<i>KTZ304241</i>	Side Drawer for Printer slot (box with guide bars) 	1	N	Y

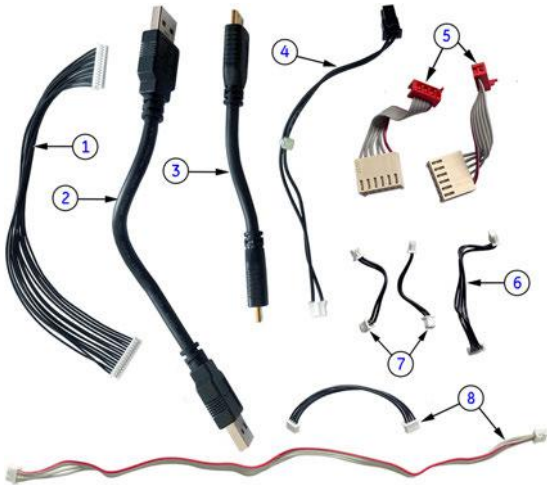
9.4 User Interface

Table 9-3: User Interface

Item	Part Name	Part Number	Description	Qty	CRU	FRU
201	TUI200 User Interface	KTZ304162	TUI200 Console EC400 	1	N	Y
202	Hardkey Board complete TUI	KTZ304163	Hardkey Board complete TUI (incl. cover, buttons, cables, Connector Subboard and Trackball) 	1	N	Y
203	Connector Subboard TUI	KTZ304164	Connector Subboard (mounted on Hardkey Board TUI) 	1	N	Y

Item	Part Name	Part Number	Description	Qty	CRU	FRU
204	Touchpanel Display complete TUI	KTZ304165	Touchpanel Display + Controller (all Flexprints mounted) 	1	N	Y
205	Hardkey Frames TUI	KTZ304166	Hardkey Frames TUI + Trackball Keys (30 pcs. in sum) 	1	N	Y
206	Rear Housing TUI incl. USB PCBA	KTZ304167	Rear Housing TUI, incl. USB 3.0 PCB-module + Microphones pre-mounted 	1	N	Y
207	Microphone Set TUI	KTZ304168	Microphone Set TUI (2 pcs.) 	1	N	Y

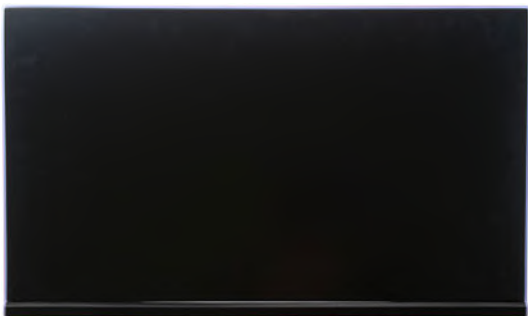
Item	Part Name	Part Number	Description	Qty	CRU	FRU
208	Trackball TUI	KTZ304169	Trackball TUI 	1	N	Y
209	Trackball Ring TUI	KTZ304170	Trackball Ring TUI 	1	Y	Y
210	Trackball Illumination PCB	KTZ304235	Trackball Illumination PCB incl. cable 	1	N	Y
211	Bottom Housing incl. Frame TUI	KTZ304171	Bottom Housing complete with Frame integrated 	1	N	Y

Item	Part Name	Part Number	Description	Qty	CRU	FRU
212	Hardkey Set TUI	KTZ304172	Hardkey Set + Trackball Ring TUI 	1	Y	Y
213	Caps for Encoder and Joycoder	KTZ304173	Caps for Encoder and Joycoder 	1	Y	Y
214	Encoder Mechanic TUI	KTZ304174	Encoder Mechanic Set (5 pcs.) 	1	N	Y
215	Joycoder Mechanic	KTZ303942	Joycoder Mechanic Set (7 pcs.) 	1	N	Y
216	Cable Kit TUI	KTZ304175	Console Cable Kit TUI 	1	N	Y

Item	Part Name	Part Number	Description	Qty	CRU	FRU
217	THK Handle Key Set	KTZ304177	5 Handle Keys (light, lift up, lift down, brake left, brake right), PDB boards, fixation plate and cables 	1	N	Y
218	Loudspeaker	KTZ208132	Loudspeaker (1 pcs.) 	2	N	Y
219	TPR Interface Right	KTZ304251	TPR - Peripheral Interface Right, complete (1 pcs.) 	1	N	Y
220	TPL Interface Left	KTZ304252	TPL - Peripheral Interface Left, complete (1 pcs.) 	1	N	Y
221	Label TUI - Voluson Expert 22	KTZ304264	Label for User Interface - Voluson Expert 22 (1 pcs.) 	1	Y	Y
222	Disk Drive3 DVD+(R)W - SATA	KTZ303258	DVD+(R)W Writer internal (no own cabinet) 	1	N	Y

9.5 Monitor + Monitor Replacement Parts

Table 9-4: Monitor + Monitor Replacement Parts

Item	Part Name	Part Number	Description	Qty	CRU	FRU
301	Monitor Color LCD 23.8" (MDM400) complete	KTZ304221	23.8" Color Image LCD Monitor complete 	1	N	Y
302	Monitor Housing Set LCD EC4xx	KTZ304222	Monitor Housing Set for 23.8" LCD Monitor EC4xx 	1	N	Y
303	Monitor Back Cover EC4xx	KTZ304223	Monitor Back Cover Set for LCD Monitor EC4xx 	1	Y	Y

Item	Part Name	Part Number	Description	Qty	CRU	FRU
304	TAL100 Monitor Arm LCD	KTZ304224	TAL100 Monitor Arm for LCD Monitor 	1	N	Y
304	Monitor Cable Set	KTZ304231	Monitor Cable Set for TAL100 as well as TAM100 	1	N	Y
305	Monitor HDU 23.8" (MDMxxx) complete	KTZ304253	23.8" High Definition Ultrasound (HDU) Display Monitor complete 	1	N	Y
306	TAM100 Monitor Arm HDU EC4xx	KTZ304254	TAM100 Monitor Arm for HDU Monitor 	1	N	Y

Item	Part Name	Part Number	Description	Qty	CRU	FRU
307	Cable Cover HDU EC4xx	KTZ304257	Monitor Back Cover for HDU Monitor 	1	Y	Y

9.6 Power Modules

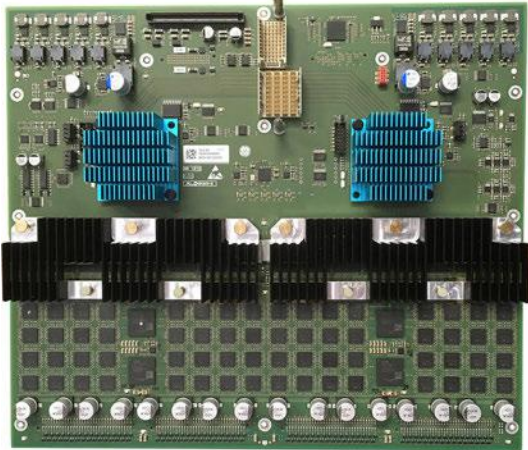
Table 9-5: Main Power Modules

Item	Part Name	Part Number	Description	Qty	CRU	FRU
401	TPS100 Power Supply	KTZ304188	Power Supply Module 	1	N	Y
402	Fuse T8A	KTZ304228	Fuses for AC Mains Inlet Module (T8A H/250V, 10 pcs.) 	2	N	Y
403	AC Inlet Module	KTZ304244	AC Mains Inlet Module with switch and fuse holder 	1	N	Y

9.7 FrontEnd (US-Part) Components

Table 9-6: FrontEnd (US-Part) Components

Item	Part Name	Part Number	Description	Qty	CRU	FRU
501	TCO100 - Connector Board with Box	KTZ304183	FrontEnd Connector Board + metal box assembled + fans pre-mounted 	1	N	Y
502	Fan TFB	KTZ304184	Fan for FrontEnd box (1 pcs.) 	3	N	Y
503	TVG100 - Voltage Generator Board	KTZ304185	FrontEnd Voltage Generator Board 	1	N	Y

Item	Part Name	Part Number	Description	Qty	CRU	FRU
504	TAC100 - Acquisition Board	<i>KTZ304186</i>	FrontEnd Acquisition Board 	1	N	Y

9.8 BackEnd (PC-Part) Components

Table 9-7: BackEnd (PC-Part) Components

Item	Part Name	Part Number	Description	Qty	CRU	FRU
551	GPU Graphic Card TBE, Nvidia RTX 4000	<i>KTZ304187</i>	GPU Graphic Card TBE, Nvidia RTX 4000 for beamforming (GPU-BF) 	1	N	Y
552	GPU Graphic Card TBE, Nvidia T1000	<i>KTZ304260</i>	GPU Graphic Card TBE, Nvidia T1000 for rendering (GPU-UI) 	1	N	Y
553	Fan TBB	<i>KTZ304189</i>	Fan for BackEnd box (1 pcs.) 	2	N	Y

Item	Part Name	Part Number	Description	Qty	CRU	FRU
554	COMe Module TBE	KTZ304190	COM-Express Module TBE 	1	N	Y
555	TBE100 Backend Board with Box	KTZ304191	TBE Backend Carrier Board (= Base Board) with metal box assembled; incl. TBX Extension Board, Fans TBB + internal cables pre-mounted 	1	N	Y
556	Battery Lithium CR2032 (3V)	KTZ208791	Lithium Battery CR2032 (3V) for TBE Backend Carrier Board (= Base Board) 	1	N	Y
557	M.2 SSD (Solid-State Drive) SATA 120/128GB	KTZ304192	M.2 SSD (Solid-State Drive) SATA 120/128GB, for Operating System 	1	N	Y

Item	Part Name	Part Number	Description	Qty	CRU	FRU
558	Hard Disk Drive (HDD) SATA 1TB, 3.5 inch	KTZ304131	Hard disk drive SATA 1TB, 3.5 inch for Patient Data, System/Boot DVDs (see Table 9-8 on page 9-24) required	1	N	Y
						
559	Hard Disk Drive (HDD) SATA 2TB, 3.5 inch Voluson Expert 22 only	KTZ304245	Hard disk drive SATA 2TB, 3.5 inch (Toshiba) for Patient Data, System/Boot DVDs (see Table 9-8 on page 9-24) required	1	N	Y
						
560	Solid-State-Drive (SSD) SATA 1TB ⁹	KTZ304155	Solid-State-Drive (SSD) SATA 1TB, 2.5 inch for Patient Data, System/Boot DVD (see Table 9-8 on page 9-24) required	1	N	Y
						

⁹ **Note:** The 1TB SSD is ONLY optionally available (H48711HK). For further details please contact your local service/sales representative.

9.9 Options and Upgrades

Table 9-8: Software Options and Upgrades

Item	Part Name	Part Number	Description	Qty	CRU	FRU
601	System/Boot DVD EC400 (Ext.0, 40.0.0)	KTZ304262	bootable DVD for System HDD/SSD recovery <u>Contents:</u> SP with newest MS patches, Linux rescue partition, System C: Image (Windows 10), UISApp, Backup, elfU, Database Repair Tool, Scan Assistant Configurator, etc.	1	Y	Y
602	CW Doppler (SW)	H48691NZ	encrypted Software Option string (password)	-	N	N
603	Advanced VCI - Volume Contrast Imaging	H48681FP	encrypted Software Option string (password)	-	N	N
604	Coded Contrast Imaging - Contrast Media	H48681FT	encrypted Software Option string (password)	-	N	N
605	SonoAVC - Sono Automated Volume Count	H48681FX	encrypted Software Option string (password)	-	N	N
606	SonoVCAD labor	H48681FY	encrypted Software Option string (password)	-	N	N
607	Advanced STIC * - Spatio-Temporal Image Correlation	H48681GD	encrypted Software Option string (password)	-	N	N
608	Elastography	H48681GB	encrypted Software Option string (password)	-	N	N
609	V-SRI	H48711CY	encrypted Software Option string (password)	-	N	N
610	<i>feta</i> HQ	H48701WN	encrypted Software Option string (password)	-	N	N
611	<i>feta</i> HQ2	H48711PT	encrypted Software Option string (password)	-	N	N
612	Shearwave Elastography	H48711EE	encrypted Software Option string (password)	-	N	N
613	SonoLyst	H48711NZ	encrypted Software Option string (password)	-	N	N
614	SonoPelvicFloor	H48711PA	encrypted Software Option string (password)	-	N	N
615	AVURI subscription for 1 year	HVOL1DM	encrypted Software Option string (password)	-	N	N
616	AVURI subscription for 3 years	HVOL2DM	encrypted Software Option string (password)	-	N	N
617	Voluson Expert SW eDelivery	H48711NWED	encrypted Software Option string (password)	-	N	N
618	e4D Advanced Features	H48691YA	encrypted Software Option string (password)	-	N	N
619	Advanced Security Features	H48701WM	encrypted Software Option string (password)	-	N	N
620	Voluson Remote Updates	H48711KH	encrypted Software Option string (password)	-	N	N
621	RLS Option (Russian Language Support)	H48691KG	encrypted Software Option string (password)	-	N	N
622	Service Advanced	S48711KA	encrypted Software Option string (password)	-	N	N

Note A sales order has to be obtained for item 602 - 621!

Software Options (item): Once the order has been processed, the option string can be either entered by the customer, FE or Applications support.

Note For more detailed description of Software options and their functions, see: [Section 5.1.2 "Description of Software Options" on page 5-9](#).

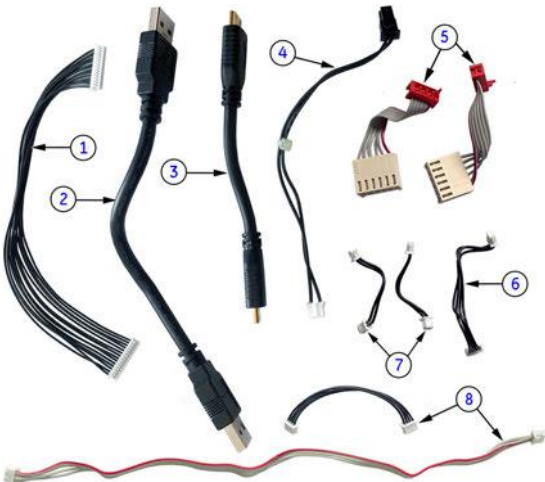
Note Not every feature is released in every country. Please contact Sales & Marketing in your region for information on feature availability.

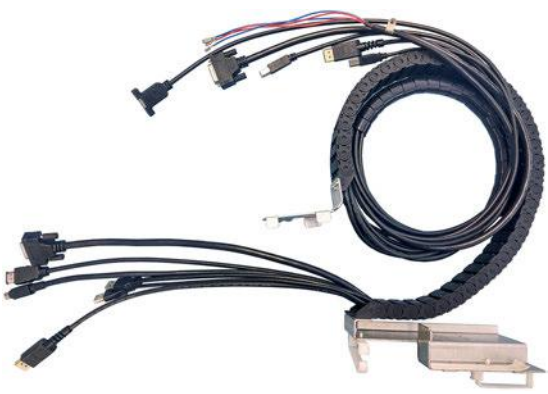
9.10 Miscellaneous Cables

Table 9-9: Miscellaneous Cables

Item	Part Name	Part Number	Description	Qty	CRU	FRU
701	Power Cord - Europe 230V	KTZ220388	Power Cord Europe 230V/240V used at Mains Input Connector C14 (10A type) 	-	Y	Y
702	Power Cord - USA C13 (Hops. grade)	KTZ304247	Power Cord USA Hospital Grade used at Mains Input Connector C14 (10A type) 	-	Y	Y
703	Power Cord - Japan C13 (Hops. grade)	KTZ304248	Power Cord Japan Hospital Grade used at Mains Input Connector C14 (10A type) 	-	Y	Y
704	Power Cord - China	KTZ220391	Power Cord China used at Mains Input Connector C14 (10A type) 	-	Y	Y
705	Power Cord - Australia	KTZ220392	Power Cord Australia used at Mains Input Connector C14 (10A type) 	-	Y	Y

Item	Part Name	Part Number	Description	Qty	CRU	FRU
706	Power Cord - India RoHS	KTZ280289	Power Cord India used at Mains Input Connector C14 (10A type) 	-	Y	Y
707	Power Cord - United Kingdom (UK)	KTZ220476	Power Cord United Kingdom (UK) 240V used at Mains Input Connector C14 (10A type) 	-	Y	Y
708	Power Cord - South Africa	KTZ220477	Power Cord South Africa used at Mains Input Connector C14 (10A type) 	-	Y	Y
709	Power Cord - Argentina	KTZ220478	Power Cord Argentina used at Mains Input Connector C14 (10A type) 	-	Y	Y
710	Power Cord - Israel	KTZ220479	Power Cord Israel used at Mains Input Connector C14 (10A type) 	-	Y	Y
711	Power Cord - Switzerland	KTZ220480	Power Cord Switzerland used at Mains Input Connector C14 (10A type) 	-	Y	Y

Item	Part Name	Part Number	Description	Qty	CRU	FRU
712	Power Cord - Denmark	KTZ220481	Power Cord Denmark used at Mains Input Connector C14 (10A type) 2 pcs. 	-	Y	Y
713	Power Cord - Brazil	KTZ280185	Power Cord Brazil used at Mains Input Connector C14 (10A type) 	-	Y	Y
714	Cable Kit TUI	KTZ304175	Console Cable Kit TUI  1 cable Touch PCBA ↔ Display PCBA 2 cable USB-A/USB-A 3.0 Connector Subboard ↔ Touch PCBA 3 cable HDMI-C Connector Subboard ↔ USB 3.0 PCB-module 4 cable 2-pole Connector Subboard ↔ Display PCBA 5 cables Hardkey Board ↔ Trackball 6 cable Hardkey Board ↔ PCB group Light, Lift up/down 7 cables Hardkey Board ↔ PCBs Brake left/right 8 cables USB 3.0 PCB-module ↔ Microphones	1	N	Y

Item	Part Name	Part Number	Description	Qty	CRU	FRU
715	Cable Harness	KTZ304225	Cable Harness 	1	N	Y
716	Cable SATA Data-Power	KTZ304265	Cable SATA Data and Power extension, 300 mm 	1	N	Y
717	Cable SATA Data Transfer Adapter	KTZ304269	cable for data transfer from old to new HDD 	1	N	Y
718	Monitor Cable Set	KTZ304231	Monitor Cable Set for TAL100 as well as TAM100 	1	N	Y
719	ECG Patient Cable	KTZ303297	ECG Patient Input Cable 3 leads, IEC Type 	-	Y	Y

9.11 Optional Peripherals and Accessories

Content in this chapter

9.11.1 Printers	9-29
9.11.2 Additional Devices and optional Equipment	9-31



Caution

Do not attempt to use different peripherals and accessories (brand and model; connected via USB port) other than approved and provided by GE Healthcare Austria GmbH & Co OG! The Voluson Expert Series ultrasound system is an extremely sensitive and complex medical system. Any unauthorized peripherals may cause system failure or damage.



Caution

There is an increased risk of electric shock due to increased leakage current when connecting devices not explicitly recognized by the system manufacturer GE Healthcare Austria GmbH & Co OG to the Voluson Expert Series ultrasound system.

Note

Some peripheral devices (hardware options) may not be available and/or approved in all countries. Please contact Sales & Marketing in your region for information on availability.

9.11.1 Printers

Table 9-10: Optional Peripherals and Accessories - Printers

Item	Part Name	Part Number	Description	Qty	CRU	FRU
811	Digital BW Video Printer (Sony UP-D898DC)	5535200 H48052BG	Digital B/W Video Printer, 12 Volt DC, USB-Port 	-	N	Y
812	Side Drawer	KTZ304241 H48711NS	Side Drawer for Printer slot (box with guide bars) 	-	N	N
813	Digital Color Printer (Sony UP-D25MD) ¹⁰	5389822 H46831B	Digital Color Printer, A6, USB-Port 	-	Y	Y

¹⁰ **Note:** Wireless Kit for Color Printer (KTZ304239 / H48711KZ) required.

Item	Part Name	Part Number	Description	Qty	CRU	FRU
814	Wireless Kit Color Printer	<i>KTZ304239</i> <i>H48711KZ</i>	wireless kit for Color Printer usage 	-	Y	Y
815	Color Laser Printer incl. Wi-Fi Direct (HP LaserJet M454dw)	<i>KTZ304096</i> <i>H48701EZ</i>	Network Color Laser Printer for 220V system 	-	N	Y
816	Color Laser Printer incl. Wi-Fi Direct (HP LaserJet M454dw)	<i>KTZ304236</i> <i>H48711MZ</i>	Network Color Laser Printer for 110V system 	-	N	Y

9.11.2 Additional Devices and optional Equipment

Table 9-11: Optional Peripherals and Accessories - Additional Devices and optional Equipment

Item	Part Name	Part Number	Description	Qty	CRU	FRU
831	External Keyboard	KTZ304176 H48711KF	optional Alphanumeric Keyboard 	-	Y	Y
832	External Patient Monitor Set	H48701WJ	External Patient Monitor Set (32" Patient Monitor incl. Wall Mount Kit and cables, without Isolation Transformer) 	-	-	N
833	Wireless Display Install Kit - USA, Canada	H43262LN	Wireless Display button, host with antennas, HDMI cable, USB power cable, power adapter with country-specific plugs based on the region (e.g., Europe, UAE) 	-	-	N
834	Wireless Display Install Kit - Japan	H43262LM		-	-	N
835	Wireless Display Install Kit - Australia, New Zealand, Taiwan, Singapore, Thailand, Malaysia	H43262LS		-	-	N
836	Wireless Display Install Kit - India	H43262LT		-	-	N
837	Wireless Display Install Kit - Europe, UAE	H43262LL		-	-	N
838	Isolation Transformer kit	H48671WN	Isolation Transformer kit for Secondary Monitor incl. power cord set for US, EU and ROW (rest of world), monitor power cable, fuses, documentation, etc. 	-	-	N

Item	Part Name	Part Number	Description	Qty	CRU	FRU
839	Isolation Transformer	KTZ220714	Isolation Transformer without cables, etc. 	-	Y	Y
840	Fuse T8A	KTZ304228	Fuses for AC Mains Inlet Module (T8A H/250V, 10 pcs.) 	2	N	Y
841	RIC-Holder	KTZ225469	Probe holder used for Real-time 4D endocavity probes (RIC) during disinfection process 	-	Y	Y
842	Respond Probe Holder	KTZ304243 H48711NT	optional Probe Holder set for automatic activation/deactivation 	-	N	Y
843	Gel Warmer	KTZ304240 H48711NH	optional Gel Warmer 	-	N	Y

Item	Part Name	Part Number	Description	Qty	CRU	FRU
844	RFID Log-on	<i>KTZ304263</i> <i>H48711NU</i>	optional Radio-frequency Identification (RFID) Reader with Cable hook for Near Field Communication (NFC) 	-	N	Y
845	Foot Switch 3 buttons	<i>5380960</i> <i>H48681WS</i>	Foot Switch 3 buttons 	-	Y	Y
846	Solid-State-Disc (SSD) SATA 1TB ¹¹	KTZ304155 H48711HK	Solid-State-Disc (SSD) SATA 1 TB 	-	N	Y
847	WLAN Adapter A6210	<i>5737413</i> <i>H44932LH</i>	WLAN Adapter A6210 ("Netgear") 	-	Y	Y
848	WLAN Adapter A6210 - Japan only	<i>5821919</i> <i>H43092LD</i>	WLAN Adapter A6210 ("Netgear") for Japan only 	-	Y	Y
849	Barcode Scanner	<i>KTZ304087</i> <i>H48701JH</i>	Barcode Scanner, USB 	-	Y	Y
850	Magnetic Network Adapter	KTZ304268	Magnetic Network Adapter 	-	Y	Y

¹¹ **Note:** The 1TB SSD is ONLY optionally available (H48711HK). For further details please contact your local service/sales representative.

Item	Part Name	Part Number	Description	Qty	CRU	FRU
851	Digital Expert	H4920DS	optional Digital Expert incl. connection kit 	-	Y	Y
852	ECG Acquisition Module (ECG-USB1)	<i>KTZ304226</i> <i>H48711KX</i>	Single Channel ECG Acquisition Module incl. USB cable and ECG Input Cable 3 leads, World except Canada 	-	Y	Y
853	ECG Acquisition Module (ECG-USB1) - Canada	<i>KTZ304227</i> <i>H48711KY</i>	Single Channel ECG Acquisition Module incl. USB cable and ECG Input Cable 3 leads, Canada only 	-	Y	Y
854	ECG Patient Cable	KTZ303297	ECG Patient Input Cable 3 leads, IEC Type 	-	Y	Y

Item	Part Name	Part Number	Description	Qty	CRU	FRU
855	Power Filter	<i>KTZ304093</i> <i>H48701EL</i>	Power Filter to eliminate EMC noise (filter incl. cables) 	-	-	N
856	UPS (Uninterruptible Power Supply) for 100-130V AC countries	H48691PD	Medical-grade UPS protection with built-in line-interactive voltage regulation (corrects brownouts as low as 82V and over voltages as high as 142V back to normal 120V levels). 	-	-	N
857	UPS (Uninterruptible Power Supply) for 220-240V AC countries	H48691PE	Medical-grade UPS protection with built-in line-interactive voltage regulation (corrects brownouts as low as 155V and over voltages as high as 274V back to normal 230V levels). 	-	-	N

Note*Illustrations may not correspond to the actual product!*

9.12 System Manuals

Service Manuals

Part Name	Part No.
Service Manual	5819559APB

Instructions for Use

Part Name	Part No.
electronic Instructions for Use (elfU)	
elfU Disc	H48711HL
Content:	5818662
- Instructions for Use, 33 languages (<i>Bulgarian, Croatian, Czech, Chinese Simplified, Danish, Dutch, English, Estonian, Finnish, French, German, Greek, Hungarian, Indonesian, Italian, Japanese, Kazakh, Korean, Latvian, Lithuanian, Norwegian, Polish, Portuguese, Romanian, Russian, Serbian, Slovakian, Slovenian, Spanish, Swedish, Turkish, Ukrainian, Vietnamese</i>) - Service Manual (<i>English</i>) - Advanced Acoustic Output References (<i>English, French</i>) - Advanced Reference Manual (<i>English, French</i>) - Privacy and Security Manual (<i>English</i>)	
Paper & Electronic Manuals	
Instructions for Use (IfU) - English	H48711HM
Instructions for Use (IfU) - Chinese	H48711HN
Instructions for Use (IfU) - Indonesian	H48711HP
Instructions for Use (IfU) - Russian	H48711HR
Instructions for Use (IfU) - Vietnamese	H48711HS

9.13 Probes

Content in this chapter

<i>9.13.1 2D-Probes - Curved Array Probes</i>	<i>9-37</i>
<i>9.13.2 2D-Probes - Linear Array Probes</i>	<i>9-38</i>
<i>9.13.3 2D-Probes - Phased Array Probes</i>	<i>9-39</i>
<i>9.13.4 Real-Time 4D Volume Probes</i>	<i>9-40</i>

Note

Please observe that some probes are not applicable on all Voluson Expert Series systems (depending on system type).

9.13.1 2D-Probes - Curved Array Probes

Table 9-12: 2D Curved Array Transducers

Item	Part Name	Part Number	Description	Qty	CRU	FRU
900	C1-6-D	5499606 H40472LT	broadband curved array transducer with a center image frequency of 3.4 MHz, 192 Elements <u>Applications:</u> Abdominal, Obstetrics, Gynecology, Fetal Cardio 	-	Y	Y
901	C2-9-D	5499605 H40462LN	broadband curved array transducer with a center image frequency of 5.0 MHz, 192 Elements <u>Applications:</u> Abdominal, Obstetrics, Gynecology, Fetal Cardio, Pediatrics 	-	Y	Y
		¹² 5890488 H40462LN		-	Y	Y
902	IC5-9-D	5499592 H40442LK	endocavity broadband curved array transducer with a center image frequency of 5.8 MHz, 192 Elements, field of view: max. 175° <u>Applications:</u> Obstetrics, Gynecology, Urology 	-	Y	Y

¹² C2-9-D probes (displayed with an underlined probe name on the Voluson Expert system monitor) operate on different user settings than C2-9-D.

9.13.2 2D-Probes - Linear Array Probes

Table 9-13: 2D Linear Array Transducers

Item	Part Name	Part Number	Description	Qty	CRU	FRU
910	11L-D	5499499 H40432LN	broadband linear array transducer with a center image frequency of 7.3 MHz, 192 Elements, electronically steerable <u>Applications:</u> Small Parts (Breast), Peripheral Vascular, Pediatrics, Orthopedics (Musculoskeletal)	-	Y	Y
						
911	9L-D	5499510 H40442LM	broadband linear array transducer with a center image frequency of 5.5 MHz, 192 Elements, electronically steerable <u>Applications:</u> Small Parts, Obstetrics, Peripheral Vascular, Pediatrics, Orthopedics (Musculoskeletal)	-	Y	Y
						
912	ML6-15D	5499600 H40452LG	1.25D Matrix linear array transducer with a center image frequency 9.0 MHz, 336 Elements / 3 rows (= 1008) <u>Applications:</u> Small-Part (Breast), Peripheral Vascular, Pediatrics, Orthopedics (Musculoskeletal), Neonatal	-	Y	Y
						
913	L8-18i-D	5499594 H40452LL	broadband linear array transducer with a center image frequency of 9.5 MHz, 168 Elements, electronically steerable <u>Applications:</u> Small Parts, Peripheral Vascular, Orthopedics (Musculoskeletal)	-	Y	Y
						

9.13.3 2D-Probes - Phased Array Probes

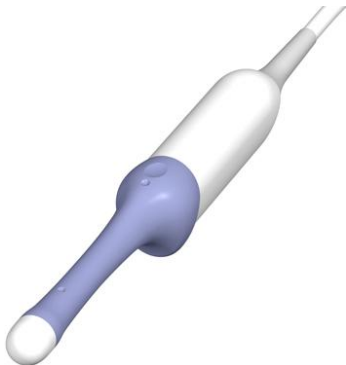
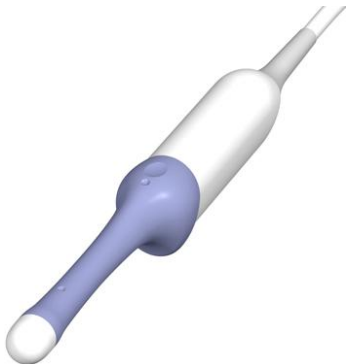
Table 9-14: 2D Phased Array Transducers

Item	Part Name	Part Number	Description	Qty	CRU	FRU
920	M5Sc-D	5446030 H44901AE	1.5D Matrix Single crystal phased array transducer with a center image frequency of 2.9 MHz, 80 Elements / 3 rows (= 270) <u>Applications:</u> Obstetrics, Cardiology, Fetal Cardio, Pediatrics, Cephalic 	-	Y	Y
921	6S-D	5499318 H45021RR	broadband phased array transducer, 2.4 - 7.0 MHz, 128 Elements <u>Applications:</u> Small Parts, Cardiology, Pediatrics, Fetal Heart 	-	Y	Y

9.13.4 Real-Time 4D Volume Probes

Table 9-15: Real-Time 4D Volume Probes

Item	Part Name	Part Number	Description	Qty	CRU	FRU
930	RAB6-D	<i>KTZ303986</i> <i>H48681MG</i>	Ultralight Real-time 4D broadband electronic curved-array transducer with a center image frequency of 4.7 MHz, 192 Elements <u>Applications:</u> Abdominal, Obstetrics, Gynecology, Pediatrics, Interventional Radiology 	-	Y	Y
931	RM7C	<i>KTZ304136</i> <i>H44901AR</i>	1.5D Abdominal Matrix Array Real-time 4D broadband electronic transducer with a center image frequency of 4.8 MHz, 192 Elements / 3 rows (= 576) <u>Applications:</u> Abdominal, Obstetrics, Gynecology, Fetal Cardio, Pediatrics, Interventional Radiology 	-	Y	Y
932	eM6C G3	<i>KTZ304178</i> <i>H48711KW</i>	1.5D Abdominal Matrix Array Real-time 4D broadband electronic transducer with a center image frequency of 4.0 MHz, 128 azimuthal x 64 elevation elements (= 8192) <u>Applications:</u> Abdominal, Obstetrics, Gynecology/Fertility, Fetal Cardio 	-	Y	Y

Item	Part Name	Part Number	Description	Qty	CRU	FRU
933	RIC5-9-D	<i>KTZ303987</i> <i>H48651MS</i>	Real-time 4D endocavity broadband electronic curved array transducer with a center image frequency of 6.6 MHz, 192 Elements, field of view: max. 175° <u>Applications:</u> Gynecology/Fertility, Obstetrics, Urology 	-	Y	Y
934	RIC6-12-D	<i>KTZ303991</i> <i>H48651NA</i>	Real-time 4D endocavity broadband electronic curved array transducer with a center image frequency of 9.0 MHz, 256 Elements, field of view: max. 190° <u>Applications:</u> Gynecology/Fertility, Obstetrics, Urology 	-	Y	Y
935	RSP6-16-D	<i>KTZ303997</i> <i>H48651MR</i>	Real-time 4D broadband electronic linear array transducer with a center image frequency of 11.5 MHz, 192 Elements <u>Applications:</u> Small Parts (Breast), Peripheral Vascular, Pediatrics, Orthopedics (Musculoskeletal) 	-	Y	Y

9.14 Biopsy Needle Guides

Table 9-16: 2D Curved Array Transducers

Item	Part Name	Part Number	Description	Qty	CRU	FRU
950	***** (disposable)	E8385MJ	disposable Biopsy needle guide for probe IC5-9-D needle diameter: 16-18GA (gauge); 1.2 - 1.6 mm 	-	-	N
951	***** (reusable)	H40412LN	reusable Biopsy needle guide for probe IC5-9-D needle diameter: < 1.65 mm 	-	-	N
952	PEC63	H46721R	reusable Biopsy needle guide for probe RIC5-9-D / RIC6-12-D needle diameter: < 1.8 mm 	-	-	N
953	RIC Single-angle bracket	H48681GF	disposable Biopsy needle guide for probe RIC5-9-D / RIC6-12-D needle diameter: 16-18GA (gauge); 1.2 - 1.6 mm 	-	-	N
954	RIC Single-angle bracket + Latex Cover	H48691Z		-	-	N
955	RAB6 Biopsy Starter Kit	H48681ML	Biopsy Starter Kit for Ultralight probe RAB6-D needle diameter: 8.5FR, 14-23GA (gauge); > 0.6 mm - < 2.1 mm 	-	-	N
956	C1-6-D Biopsy guide	H4913BB	Non-Sterile Multi Angle Bracket needle guide for probe C1-6-D needle diameter: 8.5FR, 14-23GA (gauge); > 0.6 mm - < 2.1 mm 	-	-	N
957	C2-9-D Biopsy guide	H4913BA	Non-Sterile Multi Angle Bracket needle guide for probe C2-9-D needle diameter: 8.5FR, 14-23GA (gauge); > 0.6 mm - < 2.1 mm 	-	-	N

Item	Part Name	Part Number	Description	Qty	CRU	FRU
958	12L-RS Multi-angle bracket	H40432LC	Non-Sterile Multi Angle Bracket needle guide for probe 11L-D needle diameter: 8.5FR, 14-23GA (gauge); > 0.6 mm - < 2.1 mm 	-	-	N
959	9L Multi-angle bracket	H4906BK	Non-Sterile Multi Angle Bracket needle guide for probe 9L-D needle diameter: 8.5FR, 14-23GA (gauge); > 0.6 mm - < 2.1 mm 	-	-	N
960	ML6-15D Biopsy kit	H40432LJ	Non-Sterile Multi Angle Bracket needle guide for probe ML6-15-D needle diameter: 8.5FR, 14-23GA (gauge); > 0.6 mm - < 2.1 mm 	-	-	N
961	M5S-D Multi-angle bracket	H45561FC	Non-Sterile Multi Angle Bracket needle guide for probe M5Sc-D needle diameter: 8.5FR, 14-23GA (gauge); > 0.6 mm - < 2.1 mm 	-	-	N

This page was intentionally left blank.

Chapter 10

Care and Maintenance

*This chapter describes **Care and Maintenance** on the Voluson Expert Series system and its peripherals. These procedures are intended to **maintain the quality** of the Voluson Expert Series **systems performance**. Read this chapter completely and familiarize yourself with the procedures before performing a task.*

Content in this chapter

10.1 Why do Maintenance	10-3
10.2 Maintenance Task Schedule	10-3
10.3 Tools required	10-5
10.4 System Maintenance	10-6
10.5 Using a Phantom	10-10
10.6 Electrical Safety Tests	10-11
10.7 When there's too much Leakage Current... ..	10-25
10.8 Ultrasound Equipment Quality Check	10-25



Caution: Practice good ESD prevention.

Wear an anti-static strap when handling electronic parts and even when disconnecting/connecting cables.



Warning

Be sure to disconnect the Voluson Expert Series ultrasound system power plug and switch off the mains circuit breaker before you remove any parts. Be cautious whenever power is still on and covers are removed.



Caution

Do not pull out or insert circuit boards while power is ON.



Caution: The Voluson Expert Series requires all covers!

Do not operate this system unless all board covers and frame panels are securely in place, to ensure safe operation, optimal system performance and cooling. When covers are removed, EMC and EMI compliance might be compromised.

For service procedures where the operation of the system is necessary with board covers or frame panels removed, ensure that there are no EMI sensitive devices in the vicinity of the system. If in doubt, relocate the system to a different environment where no EMI sensitive devices are in the vicinity.



Caution

To ensure the mutual protection and safety of GE service personnel and our customers, all equipment and work areas must be clean and free of any hazardous contaminants before a service engineer starts a repair. This includes, but is not limited to, decontamination and/or sterilization, depending on the application or use of the medical device.

10.1 Why do Maintenance

10.1.1 Preventive Maintenance Inspections

It has been determined by engineering that your Voluson Expert Series system does not have any high wear components that fail with use, therefore no Preventive Maintenance Inspections are mandatory. However, some Customers Quality Assurance Programs may require additional tasks and/or inspections at a different frequency than listed in this manual.

10.1.2 Quality Assurance

In order to gain accreditation from organizations such as the American College of Radiology (USA), it is the customer's responsibility to have a quality assurance program in place for each system. The program must be directed by a medical physicist, the supervising radiologist/physician or an appropriate designee.

Routine quality control testing must occur regularly. The same tests are performed during each period so that changes can be monitored over time and effective corrective action can be taken.

Testing results, corrective action and the effects of corrective action must be documented and maintained on the site.

Your GE service representative can help you with establishing, performing and maintaining records for a quality assurance program. Please contact us for coverage information and/or price for service.

10.2 Maintenance Task Schedule

10.2.1 How often should Care and Maintenance Tasks be performed?

The Customer Care Schedule (see: [Table 10-1 on page 10-3](#)) specifies how often your Voluson Expert Series should be serviced and outlines items requiring special attention.

Note *It is the customer's responsibility to ensure that the Voluson Expert Series care and maintenance is performed as scheduled in order to retain its high level of safety, dependability and performance.*

Your GE Service Representative has an in-depth knowledge of your Voluson Expert Series ultrasound system and can best provide competent, efficient service. Contact GE for coverage information and/or price for service.

The service procedures and recommended intervals shown in the Customer Care Schedule assumes that you use your Voluson Expert Series for an average patient load (10 per day) and not use it as a primary mobile system which is transported between diagnostic facilities.

Note *If conditions exist which exceed typical usage and patient load, then it is recommended to increase the care and maintenance frequencies.*

Abbreviations used in the Customer Care Schedule [Table 10-1](#):

- D = Daily
- W = Weekly
- M = Monthly
- A = Annually

Table 10-1: customer care schedule

Item	Service at indicated Time	D	W	M	A	Notes
Air Filter Grid	Remove the filter grid and clean the air filter grid with vacuum cleaner from outside.			•		more frequently depending on your environment
Air Filter Grid	Remove filter grid, back top cover and back cover and clean the housing from inside. (vacuum cleaner and soft brush)				•	more frequently depending on your environment
AC Mains Cable	Inspect AC mains cable			•		mobile systems check weekly
Cables and Connectors	Check if all cables are fixed and well seated at the correct position and if there is no mechanical damage visible.				•	also after corrective maintenance
User Interface	Clean alphanumeric keyboard, functional keys, digital potentiometers. (vacuum cleaner, lukewarm soap water on a soft, damp cloth)		•			Be careful not to get the cloth too wet so that moisture does not enter the loudspeakers or other keys!

Item	Service at indicated Time	D	W	M	A	Notes
Monitor, Touch Panel and Probe holder	Clean monitor surface, Touch Panel and probe holder with a fluid detergent in warm water on a soft, damp cloth.		•			Be careful not to get the cloth too wet so that moisture does not enter the entire system.
Mechanical parts	Clean and inspect the mechanical function of wheels, casters, brakes and swivel locks as well as side door, foot rest, front and rear handle, and monitor holder. Remove dust and coupling gel.			•		mobile systems check daily
Control Console movement	Check translation/rotation and height adjustment (elevation)				•	more frequently at mobile systems
Trackball Check	Check proper operation (cursor movement X, Y direction)	•				If failure occurs go to trackball cleaning.
Trackball Cleaning	Remove trackball ring; open the trackball housing and take out the trackball (see Section 7.7.3 on page 7-50). Clean the trackball (and X, Y axes) with soft tissue and screwdriver shaft.				•	
Disk Drives (Data Backup)	Test image filing (Archive) import and export data capability (DVD/CD Drive)		•	•*		* save the image filing data weekly or at least monthly on DVD/CD depending on the number of examinations
Safe Probe Operation	Clean probes and probe cables and check acoustic lens housing (cracks) and probe cables. In case of mechanical damage, don't use them! Danger: Safety risk for operator and patient.	•*				* or before each use
Probe Air bubbles	To detect air bubbles in filling liquid, shake the probe carefully and check for abnormal noise.					
Probe Connectors	Remove dust/dirt of all probe connectors. Clean with vacuum cleaner if dust is visible.			•		
Ultrasound system Leakage Current Checks					•	also after corrective maintenance or as required by your facilities QA program
Peripheral Leakage Current Checks					•	also after corrective maintenance or as required by your facilities QA program
Surface Probe Leakage Current Checks					•	also after corrective maintenance or as required by your facilities QA program
Endocavity Probe Leakage Current Checks					•	also after corrective maintenance or as required by your facilities QA program
Measurement Accuracy Checks					•	also after corrective maintenance or as required by your facilities QA program
Probe/Phantom Checks	Check gain changes, vary the focus and check reaction on screen. <i>NOTE! The use of a Phantom is not required during Care and Maintenance. Customer may use it as part of their Quality Assurance Program tests.</i>				•	also after corrective maintenance or as required by your facilities QA program
Functional Checks of all probes Section 10.4.2 on page 10-6					•	also after corrective maintenance or as required by your facilities QA program

10.3 Tools required

10.3.1 Special Tools, Supplies and Equipment used for Maintenance

Note *Electrical leakage testing may be accomplished with any calibrated Electrical Safety Analyzer tool compliant with AAMI/ES1 1993 or IEC 60601 or AS/NZS 3551 or IEC 62353 or other relevant national regulation.*

Table 10-2: overview of supplies and equipment used for care and maintenance

Tools	Comments
Digital Volt Meter (DVM)	minimum 5% accuracy, 3.5 digit and 200 Ohm range required
Anti-Static Kit	including anti-static mat, wrist strap, cables and conductive ground cord
Anti-Static Vacuum Cleaner	•
QIQ Phantom	<i>NOTE! The use of a Phantom is not required during Care and Maintenance. Customer may use it as part of their Quality Assurance Program tests.</i>
CD-RW Media	(minimum quad speed)
DVD+RW Disc Media blank	blank 4,7GB DVD+RW disc
B/W Printer Cleaning Sheet	see printer user manual for requirements
Color Printer Cleaning Sheet	see printer user manual for requirements
Disposable Cloves	•

10.4 System Maintenance

10.4.1 Preliminary Checks

The preliminary checks take about 15 minutes to perform. Refer to the Voluson Expert Series user documentation whenever necessary.

Table 10-3: system checks

Step	Item	Description
1	Ask and Listen	Ask the customer if they have any problems or questions about the equipment.
2	Power up	- Turn the system power on and verify that all fans and peripherals turn on. - Watch the displays during power up to verify that no warning or error messages are displayed.
3	Probes	Verify that the ultrasound system properly recognizes all probes.
4	Displays	Verify proper display on the LCD monitor and Touch Panel (when present).
5	Presets	Backup all customer presets onto appropriate media (see: Section 4.4.1 "Save System Configuration Backup" on page 4-11).
6	Image Archive	Backup the Image Archive onto appropriate media (see: Section 4.4.4.1 "Save Image Archive" on page 4-17).

10.4.2 Functional Checks

The functional checks take about 60 minutes to perform. Refer to the Voluson Expert Series user documentation whenever necessary.

10.4.2.1 Ultrasound System Checks

Table 10-4: ultrasound system functional checks

Step	Item	Description
1	B Mode	Verify basic B Mode (2D) operation. Check the basic ultrasound system controls that affect this mode of operation.
2	M Mode	Verify basic M Mode operation. Check the basic ultrasound system controls that affect this mode of operation.
3	C Mode	Verify basic CFM Mode (Color Flow Mode) operation. Check the basic ultrasound system controls that affect this mode of operation.
4	PD Mode	Verify basic PD Mode (Power Doppler Mode) operation. Check the basic ultrasound system controls that affect this mode of operation.
5	Doppler Modes	Verify basic Doppler Mode operation (PW and CW if available). Check the basic ultrasound system controls that affect this mode of operation.
6	3D Mode	Verify basic 3D Mode operation. Check the basic ultrasound system controls that affect this mode of operation.
7	RealTime 4D Mode (optional)	Verify basic RealTime 4D Mode operation. Check the basic ultrasound system controls that affect this mode of operation.
8	*Applicable Software Options	Verify the basic operation of all optional modes. Check the basic system controls that affect each option's operation.
9	Keyboard Test	Perform the Keyboard Test Procedure to verify that all keyboard controls are OK.
10	LCD Monitor	Verify basic LCD Monitor display functions.
11	Touch Panel	Verify basic Touch Panel display functions.
12	Peripherals	see: Section 10.4.2.2 "Peripheral/Option Checks" on page 10-7

Note * Some software may be considered standard depending upon system model configuration.

10.4.2.2 Peripheral/Option Checks

If any peripherals or options are not part of the ultrasound system configuration, the check can be omitted. Refer to [Section 3.8 "On-board optional Peripherals" on page 3-65](#) for a list of approved peripherals.

Table 10-5: approved peripheral/hardware option functional checks

Step	Item	Description
1	Media	Verify media drive(s) read/write properly. Clean if necessary.
2	B/W Printer	Verify hardcopy output of the B/W video page printer. Clean heads and covers if necessary.
3	Color Printer	Verify hardcopy output of the Color video page printer. Clean heads and covers if necessary.
4	Color Deskjet (Bluetooth) Printer	Verify hardcopy output of the Deskjet (Bluetooth) printer. Clean heads and covers if necessary.
5	DICOM	Verify that DICOM is functioning properly. Send an image to a DICOM device.
6	Foot Switch	Verify that the foot switch is functioning as programmed. Clean as necessary.
7	ECG	Verify basic operation with customer.
8	Cellular Modem	Verify basic operation.

10.4.2.3 Mains Cable Inspection

Table 10-6: mains cable inspection, as appropriate

Step	Item	Description
1	Unplug Cord	Disconnect the mains cable from the wall and ultrasound system.
2	Inspect	Inspect it and its connectors for damage of any kind.
3	Verify	Verify that the LINE, NEUTRAL and GROUND wires are properly attached to the terminals, and that no strands may cause a short circuit.
4	Verify	Inlet connector retainer is functional.

10.4.3 Physical Inspection

Table 10-7: physical checks

Step	Item	Description
1	Labeling	Verify that all ultrasound system labeling is present and in readable condition.
2	Covers	Where applicable, verify all covers are secured in place and are properly aligned with other covers. Replace any covers that are damaged.
3	Control Console and Keyboard	Inspect the control console and keyboard. Record any damaged or missing items. (Replace faulty components, as required).
4	Control Console Movement	• Where applicable, verify ease of control console movement in all acceptable directions. • Where applicable, ensure that it latches in position as required.
5	Control Console Lighting	Check proper operation of all control console.
6	LCD Monitor	Inspect the LCD Display for scratches and bad pixels. Verify proper operation of Contrast and Brightness controls. Where applicable, confirm that the LCD arm allows: • swiveling the screen to the left and to the right • folding the screen to the locked position • release and adjustment backwards and forwards • can be adjusted in the up/down positions <i>Note: LCD Arm movement may vary and is not applicable to all ultrasound systems.</i>
7	Monitor Light	Check for proper operation of any monitor lights, if available.
8	Cables and Connectors	Check all internal cable harnesses and connectors for wear and secure connector seating. Pay special attention to foot switch assembly and probe strain or bend reliefs.
9	Shielding & Covers	Check to ensure that all EMI shielding, internal covers, air flow panels and screws are in place. Missing covers and hardware could cause EMI/RFI problems during scanning.
10	Probe Holders	Where applicable, inspect the Probe Holders for cracks or damage.
11	Power and System Status Indicators	Check for proper operation of all Power and System Status Indicators.
12	External I/O	Check all connectors for damage and verify that the labeling is good.
13	Wheels and Brakes	• Check all wheels and casters for wear and verify operation of foot brake, to stop the system from moving, and release mechanism. • Check all wheel locks and wheel swivel locks for proper operation.
14	Battery	Where applicable, check that the battery is not damaged, does not leak, does not emit an odor, and is not deformed or discolored. Observe all warnings and cautions for battery handling, recharging, storing, and/or disposal.

10.4.4 Cleaning

The Instructions for Use of the Voluson Expert Series system provides a complete description of system/probe care, maintenance, cleaning and disinfection.

Note *It is the responsibility of the user to decide which cleaning procedures are necessary to ensure a safe working environment.*

Warning



- Before cleaning the Voluson Expert Series system switch it off and disconnect from AC mains.
- Electric parts must be protected from liquids that drip or seep into the system.
- Electrical contacts and connectors must not be cleaned.
- Do not use high-proof alcohol for cleaning. Only use cleaning/disinfecting agents listed in the Instructions for Use of the Voluson Expert Series system.

10.4.4.1 General Cleaning

Frequent and diligent cleaning of the Voluson Expert Series ultrasound system reduces the risk of spreading infection from person to person and helps to maintain a clean work environment.

Table 10-8: general cleaning

Step	Item	Description
1	Console	Use cleaning agent on a soft, non-abrasive, damp cloth to carefully wipe the entire system. Be careful not to get the cloth too wet so that moisture does not enter the console. Caution: DO NOT allow any liquid to drip or seep into the system.
2	LCD Monitor + Touch Panel	Clean LCD Monitor surface and Touch Panel with cleaning agent on a soft, non-abrasive, damp cloth. Caution: DO NOT spray any liquid directly onto Voluson Expert Series covers, Monitor, keyboard, etc.

10.4.5 Probe Maintenance

10.4.5.1 Probe related Checks

Table 10-9: probe related checks

Step	Item	Description
1	Probes	Thoroughly check the ultrasound system probe connectors and remove dust from inside the connector sockets if necessary. Visually check for bent, damaged or missing pins.
2	Probes	Verify that the ultrasound system properly recognizes all probes.
3	Probe Holder	Clean probe holders (they may need to be soaked to remove excess gel).

10.4.5.2 Basic Probe Care

The Voluson Expert Series system user manuals and various probe handling cards provide a complete description of probe care, maintenance, cleaning and disinfection. Ensure that you are completely familiar with the proper care of GE probes.

Ultrasound probes can be easily damaged by improper handling. Review the Instructions for Use of Voluson Expert Series for more details. Failure to follow these precautions can result in serious injury and equipment damage. Failure to properly handle or maintain a probe may also void its warranty.



Any evidence of wear indicates the probe cannot be used.

Do a visual check of the probe pins and ultrasound system sockets before plugging in a probe.

10.4.5.3 Basic Probe Cleaning and/or Disinfection

Refer to the Instructions for Use of the Voluson Expert Series system for details on cleaning and disinfection.



Caution

To help protect yourself from blood borne diseases, wear approved disposable gloves. These are made of nitrile derived from vegetable starch to prevent allergic latex reactions.



Caution

Failure to follow the prescribed cleaning or disinfection procedures will void the probes warranty. Do not soak or wipe the lens with any product not listed in the Voluson Expert Series Instructions for Use and/or Care Card. Doing so could result in irreparable damage to the probe.



Caution

Disinfect a defective probe before you return it. Be sure to tag the probe as being disinfected.



Caution

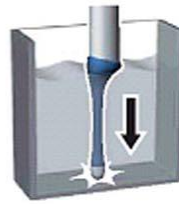
Follow the Care Card instructions supplied with each probe (inside the probe boxes) for disinfectants and gels that are compatible with the surface material of the probes.

Note

For the latest list of compatible cleaning solutions and disinfectants refer to: <http://www.gehealthcare.com/transducers>.



Please be aware of the sensitive probe head. TAKE EXTREME CARE!



NEVER place or store a probe on its scan head!

OK



When disinfecting a probe, ensure that there is sufficient space between the probe and the container bottom!

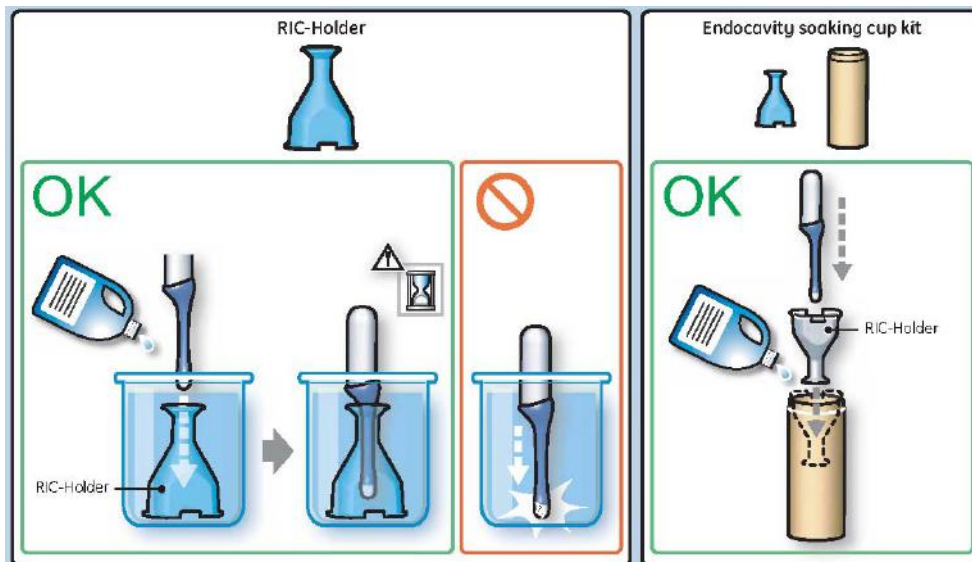
10.4.5.4 Disinfection by means of the RIC-Holder

Especially for Real-time 4D endocavity probes (RIC), it is necessary to take extreme care when transporting the system with the probe attached, or during the disinfection process. Inadequate handling may lead to dead elements, shocked head mechanics, etc.

The RIC-Holder (especially developed for RIC Real-time 4D endocavity probes) guarantees that the sensitive probe head does not hit the bottom of the container during the disinfection procedure.

Note

Instructions are supplied with each RIC-Holder (KTZ225469).



10.5 Using a Phantom

The use of a Phantom is not required during Care and Maintenance. Customer may use it as part of their Quality Assurance Program tests.

10.6 Electrical Safety Tests

Content in this chapter

<i>10.6.1 Safety Test Overview</i>	10-11
<i>10.6.2 Leakage Current Limits</i>	10-12
<i>10.6.3 Outlet Test - Wiring Arrangement - USA & Canada</i>	10-13
<i>10.6.4 Grounding Continuity</i>	10-14
<i>10.6.5 Chassis Leakage Current Test</i>	10-15
<i>10.6.6 Isolated Patient Lead (Source) Leakage-Lead to Ground</i>	10-17
<i>10.6.7 Isolated Patient Lead (Source) Leakage-Lead to Lead</i>	10-19
<i>10.6.8 Isolated Patient Lead (Sink) Leakage-Isolation Test</i>	10-20
<i>10.6.9 Probe (Source) Leakage Current Test</i>	10-21

10.6.1 Safety Test Overview

Warning

Energy Control and Power Lockout for the Voluson Expert Series system:



When servicing parts of the system where there is exposure to voltage greater than 30 Volts:

1. Follow LOTO (Lockout/Tagout) procedures.
2. Turn off the breaker.
3. Unplug the Voluson Expert Series system.
4. Maintain control of the Voluson Expert Series system power plug.
5. Wait for at least 30 seconds for capacitors to discharge as there are no test points to verify isolation.

Ultrasound system components may be energized.

The electrical safety tests in this section are based on IEC 60601 standard including national deviations for Health Care Facilities and IEC 62353 Medical electrical equipment – Recurrent test and test after repair of medical electrical equipment. These standards provide guidance on evaluating electrical safety of medical devices which are placed into service and are intended for use in care and maintenance or testing following service or repair activities. They differ somewhat from the standards that are used for design verification and manufacturing tests (e.g., IEC 60601-1 including national deviations) which require a controlled test environment and can place unnecessary stress on the ultrasound system.

These tests may refer to specific safety analyzer equipment as an example. Always refer to the safety analyzer's user manual that will be used to perform the tests.

Prior to initiating any electrical test, the system must be visually inspected. Perform following visual checks:

- Check for missing or loose enclosure covers that could allow access to internal live parts.
- Examine the mains cord, mains plug and appliance inlet for damaged insulation and adequacy of strain relief and cable clamps.
- Locate and examine all associated probes. Inspect the cables and strain relief at each end. Inspect the probe enclosure and lens for cracks, holes and similar defects.

Caution



For all instructions in this section: In case of using an UPS (uninterruptable power supply) the terms outlet, wall outlet, AC wall outlet or power outlet refer to the AC wall outlet to which the UPS power input is connected to. In case of further available AC (or DC) power outlets at the same used UPS these must remain unused; i.e. not connected to any other devices.

Warning



Users must ensure that safety inspections are performed whenever damage is suspected and on a regular basis in accordance with local authorities and facility procedures. DO NOT use the Voluson Expert Series system or individual probes which fail any portion of the safety test.



Warning

To minimize the risk and to avoid an electric shock, only trained persons are allowed to perform the electric safety inspections and tests.



Caution

Compare all safety-test results with safety-test results of previously performed safety tests (e.g., last year etc.). In case of unexplainable abrupt changes of safety-test results consult experienced authorized service personnel or GE for further analysis.



Caution

To avoid electrical shock, the Voluson Expert Series system under test must not be connected to other electrical equipment. Remove all interconnecting cables and wires. The system under test must not be contacted by users or patients while performing these tests.



Caution: Possible risk of infection.

Do not handle soiled or contaminated probes and other components that have been in patient contact. Follow appropriate cleaning and disinfecting procedures before handling the equipment.

10.6.2 Leakage Current Limits

The following acceptance limits and test conditions are summarized from IEC 60601 including national deviations and IEC 62353 and are in some cases lower than that specified by other valid national or international standards. In some countries/regions differing acceptance limits and test conditions may apply.

Table 10-10: leakage current limits

Leakage Current Test	System Power	Grounding / PE Conductor	Limit mA	Limit μ A
Earth Leakage	On and Off	N/A	0.5	500
Chassis/Enclosure Leakage	On and Off	Closed Open	0.1 0.5	100 500
Type BF Applied Parts	On (transmit)	Closed Open	0.1 0.5	100 500
Type CF Applied Parts	On (transmit)	Closed Open	0.01 0.05	10 50
Type BF Applied Parts (sink leakage, mains voltage on applied part)	On and Off	Closed	5.0	5000
Type CF Applied Parts (sink leakage, mains voltage on applied part)	On and Off	Closed	0.05	50
<i>Values based on IEC 60601</i>				

Note

Open Grounding is also known as "Lift Ground".

Table 10-11: ISO and Mains Applied limits*

Probe Type	Measurement
BF	5.0 mA (5000 μ A)
CF	0.05 mA (50 μ A)

* **ISO and Mains Applied** refers to the sink leakage test where mains (supply) voltage is applied to the applied part to determine the amount of current that will pass (or sink) to ground if a patient is in contact with mains voltage.

Note

Electrical leakage testing may be accomplished with any calibrated Electrical Safety Analyzer tool compliant with AAMI/ES1 1993 or IEC 60601 or AS/NZS 3551 or IEC 62353 or other relevant national regulation.

Table 10-12: equipment type and test definitions

Applied Parts (AP)	Parts or accessories that contact the patient to perform their function. For ultrasound equipment, this includes transducers and ECG leads and e-TRAX Needle Sensor.	
Type BF	Type BF Applied Part (man in the box) symbol is in accordance with IEC 60417-5333. e.g., ultrasound probes which are marked with the 'man in box' BF symbol	
Type BF Defibrillator-proof	Type BF defibrillation proof Applied Part (man in the box with paddle) symbol is in accordance with IEC 60417-5334. e.g., ECG electrodes which are marked with the 'man in box with paddle' BF symbol	
Type CF	Type CF Applied Part (heart in the box) symbol is in accordance with IEC 60417-5335. e.g., intraoperative probes for direct cardiac contact, isolated ECG connections and e-TRAX Needle Sensor, so marked with the 'heart in box' CF symbol	
Type CF Defibrillator-proof	Type CF defibrillation proof Applied Part (heart in the box with paddle) symbol is in accordance with IEC 60417-5336. e.g., intraoperative probes for direct cardiac contact, isolated ECG connections and e-TRAX Needle Sensor, so marked with the 'heart in box with paddle' CF symbol	
Sink Leakage	The current resulting from the application of mains voltage to the applied part. This test is required for Type BF and CF applied parts.	

10.6.3 Outlet Test - Wiring Arrangement - USA & Canada

Test all outlets in the area for proper grounding and wiring arrangement by plugging in the neon outlet tester and noting the combination of lights that are illuminated. Any problems found should be reported to the hospital immediately and the receptacle should not be used.

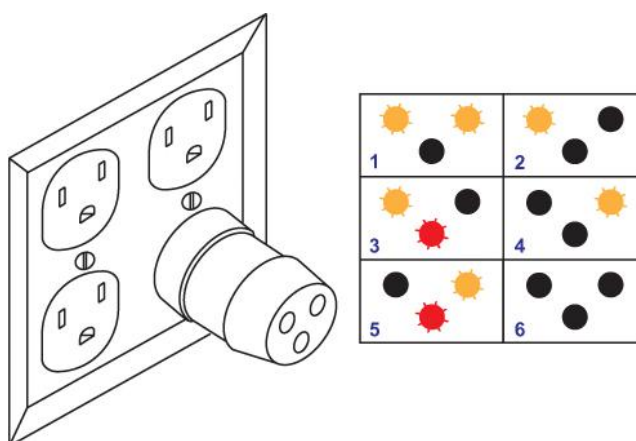


Figure 10-1: Typical Alternate Outlet Tester

1	Correct Wiring	3	Reversed Polarity	5	Hot and Ground Reversed
2	Open Ground Wire	4	Open Neutral Wire	6	Open Hot Wire

Note No outlet tester can detect the condition where the Neutral (grounded supply) conductor and the Grounding (protective earth) conductor are reversed. If later tests indicate high leakage currents, this should be suspected as a possible cause and the outlet wiring should be visually inspected.

10.6.4 Grounding Continuity



Danger: Electric Shock Hazard!
The patient or operator **MUST NOT** come into contact with the equipment during this test.

Measure the resistance from the third pin of the attachment plug to the defined exposed metal parts, see [Table 10-13](#) below. The ground wire resistance should be less than 0.2 Ohms. Reference the procedure in the IEC 60601-1 and/or IEC 62353. In some countries/regions differing acceptance limits and differing test conditions may apply.

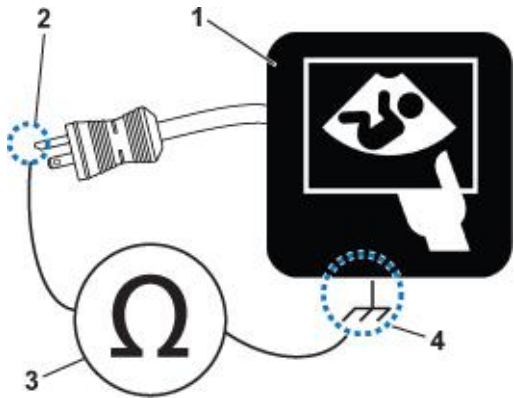


Figure 10-2: Ground Continuity Test

1	Ultrasound System	3	Ohmmeter
2	Ground Pin	4	defined accessible Metal Parts: • Grounding socket • Monitor housing • Probe connector

Table 10-13: defined accessible metal parts

Grounding socket	Monitor housing	Probe connector



Caution
Lacquer is an isolation barrier! Measure only on blank accessible metal parts.

10.6.5 Chassis Leakage Current Test



Warning: Electric Shock Hazard!

When the meter's ground switch is OPEN, DO NOT touch the Voluson Expert Series system!



Caution: Equipment damage possibility!

Never switch the Polarity and the status of Neutral when the Voluson Expert Series system is powered ON. Power off the Voluson Expert Series system, allow the stored energy to bleed down, and turn the circuit breaker off BEFORE switching the "POLARITY" switch and/or the "NEUTRAL" switch on the leakage meter to avoid possible power supply damage.

10.6.5.1 Definition

This test, also known as Enclosure Leakage current test, measures the current that would flow through a grounded person who touches the accessible conductive parts of the equipment during normal and fault conditions.

The test verifies the isolation of the power line from the chassis.

The meter is connected to parts of the equipment, easily contacted by the user or patient.

Record the highest reading.

10.6.5.2 Generic Procedure

The test verifies the isolation of the power line from the chassis. The testing meter is connected from accessible metal parts of the case to ground. Measurements should be made under the test conditions specified in:

- *Table 10-10 on page 10-12*, as applicable.

Record the highest reading of current.

1. Connect the Safety analyzer to an AC wall outlet.
2. Plug the equipment under test into the receptacle on the panel of the meter.
3. Connect the meter to an accessible metal surface (see: *Table 10-14*) of the Voluson Expert Series using the cable provided with the meter.
4. Select the "Chassis" or "Enclosure Leakage" function on the meter.
5. Test opening and closing the ground with the Voluson Expert Series system on and off.

Note

For more information, refer to the safety analyzer's user manual that will be used to perform the test.

The maximum allowable limit for chassis source leakage is shown in:

- *Table 10-10 on page 10-12*, as Chassis/Enclosure Leakage.

Follow the test conditions described for respective test points shown in the table below.

Table 10-14: chassis leakage current test condition

Test	Condition	Test Point (image)
1	Grounding socket (rear of system)	

Test	Condition	Test Point (image)
2	Monitor housing (mounting screw, rear of monitor)	
3	Probe connector (probe mounting receptacle on front of system)	

10.6.5.3 Data Sheet for Enclosure/Chassis Leakage Current

Table 10-15 shows a typical format for recording the enclosure/chassis leakage current. Measurements should be recorded from multiple locations for each set of test conditions.

The actual location of the test probe may vary by system.

Record all data and keep the record of the results with other hard copies of maintenance data.

The following acceptance limits and test conditions are summarized from IEC 60601 including national deviations and IEC 62353 and are in some cases lower than that specified by other valid national or international standards. In some countries/regions differing acceptance limits and test conditions may apply.

Table 10-15: Typical Data Format for recording Enclosure/Chassis Leakage Current

Unit under Test:					Date of Test:	
Test Conditions			Measurement/Test Point Location			
System Power	Grounding/PE	Limit μ A	<i>Grounding socket</i>	<i>Monitor housing</i>	<i>Probe connector</i>	
off	closed	100				
off	open	500				
on	closed	100				
on	open	500				
off	closed (reversed polarity)	100				
off	open (reversed polarity)	500				
on	closed (reversed polarity)	100				
on	open (reversed polarity)	500				

10.6.6 Isolated Patient Lead (Source) Leakage-Lead to Ground



Caution: Equipment damage possibility!

Never switch the Polarity when the Voluson Expert Series system is powered ON. Be sure to turn the Voluson Expert Series system power OFF before switching the polarity using the POLARITY switch.

10.6.6.1 Definition

This test measures the current which would flow to ground from any of the isolated ECG leads. The meter simulates a patient who is connected to the monitoring equipment and is grounded by touching some other grounded surface. Measurements should be made with the ground open and closed, with power line polarity normal and reversed, and with the Voluson Expert Series ultrasound system on and off.

For each combination the operating controls, such as the lead switch, should be operated to find the worst case condition.

10.6.6.2 Generic Procedure

1. Connect the Safety analyzer to an AC wall outlet.
2. Plug the equipment under test into the receptacle on the panel of the meter.
3. Connect the ECG cable to the Voluson Expert Series system and the patient leads to the analyzer.
4. Select the "Patient Lead Leakage" function on the meter.
5. Test opening and closing the ground with the Voluson Expert Series system on and off.

Note

For more information, refer to the safety analyzer's user manual that will be used to perform the test.

Measurements should be made under the test conditions specified in:

- [Table 10-10 on page 10-12](#), as applicable.

For each combination, the operating controls, such as the lead switch, should be operated to find the worst case condition.

Record all data and keep the record of the results with other hard copies of maintenance data.

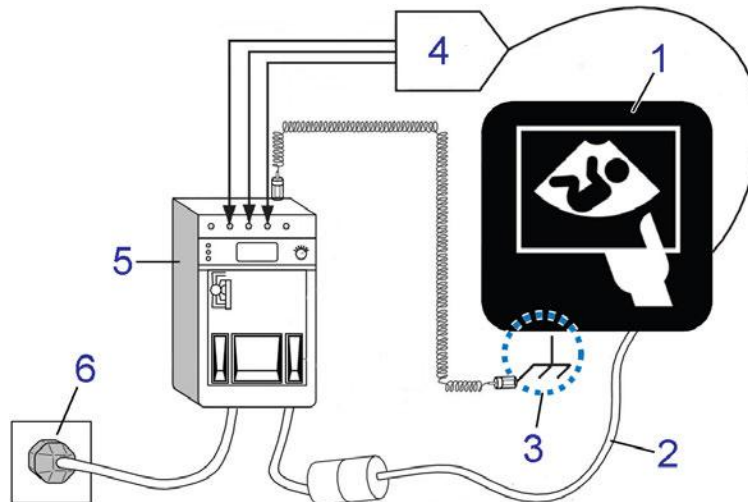


Figure 10-3: Set Up for test of Earth Leakage Current, UL 60601-1/IEC 60601-1

1	Voluson Expert Series ultrasound system
2	Mains power cable
3	Accessible Metal Parts (chassis - non-earth ground, unprotected surface)
4	ECG patient cable
5	Electrical safety analyzer
6	AC wall outlet

The following acceptance limits and test conditions are summarized from IEC 60601 including national deviations and IEC 62353 and are in some cases lower than that specified by other valid national or international standards. In some countries/regions differing acceptance limits and test conditions may apply.

Table 10-16: Typical Data Format for recording Patient Lead to Ground (GND) Leakage

Unit under Test:			Date of Test:			
Test Conditions			Patient Lead or Combination Measured			
System Power	Grounding/PE	Limit μ A	<i>RA to GND</i>	<i>LA to GND</i>	<i>LL to GND</i>	<i>(RA+LA+LL) to GND</i>
off	closed	10				
off	open	50				
on	closed	10				
on	open	50				
off	closed (reversed polarity)	10				
off	open (reversed polarity)	50				
on	closed (reversed polarity)	10				
on	open (reversed polarity)	50				

Note *Values in italics font are given as examples only.*

10.6.7 Isolated Patient Lead (Source) Leakage-Lead to Lead

This test is also known as Patient Auxiliary Current.

Select and test each of the ECG lead positions (except ALL) on the LEAD selector, testing each to the power and ground condition combinations found in:

- *Table 10-10 on page 10-12*, as applicable.

Record the highest leakage current measured.

10.6.7.1 Lead to Lead Leakage Test Record

Table 10-17 shows a typical format for recording the patient lead to lead leakage current.

Measurements should be recorded from each lead combination under each set of test conditions specified in:

- *Table 10-10 on page 10-12*, as applicable.

Record all data and keep the record of the results with other hard copies of maintenance data.

1. Connect the Safety analyzer to an AC wall outlet.
2. Plug the equipment under test into the receptacle on the panel of the meter.
3. Connect the ECG cable to the Voluson Expert Series system and the patient leads to the analyzer.
4. Select the "Patient Lead Leakage" function on the meter.
5. Test opening and closing the ground with the Voluson Expert Series system on and off.

Note

For more information, refer to the safety analyzer's user manual that will be used to perform the test.

The following acceptance limits and test conditions are summarized from IEC 60601 including national deviations and IEC 62353 and are in some cases lower than that specified by other valid national or international standards. In some countries/regions differing acceptance limits and test conditions may apply.

Table 10-17: Typical Data Format for recording Patient Lead to Lead Leakage

Unit under Test:			Date of Test:			
Test Conditions			Patient Lead or Combination Measured			
System Power	Grounding/PE	Limit μ A	<i>RA to LA</i>	<i>LA to LL</i>	<i>LL to RA</i>	<i>(RA+LA+LL) to GND</i>
off	closed	10				
off	open	50				
on	closed	10				
on	open	50				
off	closed (reversed polarity)	10				
off	open (reversed polarity)	50				
on	closed (reversed polarity)	10				
on	open (reversed polarity)	50				

Note

Values in italics font are given as examples only.

10.6.8 Isolated Patient Lead (Sink) Leakage-Isolation Test

Select the ALL position on the LEAD selector since the test is performed with mains applied to all ECG leads at the same time.



Caution

Line voltage is applied to the ECG leads during this test. To avoid possible electric shock hazard, the system being tested must not be touched by patients, users or anyone while the ISO TEST switch is depressed.

10.6.8.1 Isolated Lead (Sink) Leakage Test Record

Table 10-18 shows a typical format for recording the isolated patient lead sink leakage current.

Measurements should be recorded for full lead combination under each set of test conditions specified in:

- *Table 10-11 on page 10-12*

Record all data and keep the record of the results with other hard copies of maintenance data.

1. Connect the Safety analyzer to an AC wall outlet.
2. Plug the equipment under test into the receptacle on the panel of the meter.
3. Connect the ECG cable to the Voluson Expert Series system and the patient leads to the analyzer.
4. Select the "Patient Lead Leakage" function on the meter.
5. Test with closed ground with the Voluson Expert Series system on and off.

Note

For more information, refer to the safety analyzer's user manual that will be used to perform the test.

The following acceptance limits and test conditions are summarized from IEC 60601 including national deviations and IEC 62353 and are in some cases lower than that specified by other valid national or international standards. In some countries/regions differing acceptance limits and test conditions may apply.

Table 10-18: Typical Data Format for recording Isolated Patient Lead (sink) Leakage

Unit under Test:			Date of Test:
Test Conditions			Patient Lead
System Power	Grounding/PE	Limit μ A	<i>RA+LA+LL</i>
on	closed	50	
off	closed	50	
on	closed (reversed polarity)	50	
off	closed (reversed polarity)	50	

Note

Values in italics font are given as examples only.

10.6.9 Probe (Source) Leakage Current Test



Warning

Do not use the probe if the insulating material has been punctured or otherwise compromised. Integrity of the insulation material and patient safety can be verified by safety testing according to IEC 60601-1.

10.6.9.1 Definition

This test measures the current that would flow to ground from any of the probes through a patient who is being scanned and becomes grounded by touching some other grounded surface.

Note Each probe will have some amount of leakage, dependent on its design. Small variations in probe leakage currents are normal from probe to probe. Other variations will result from differences in line voltage and test lead placement. It is abnormal if no leakage current is measured. If no leakage current is detected, check the configuration of the test equipment.

10.6.9.2 Generic Procedure on Probe Leakage Current

The most common method of measuring probe leakage is to partly immerse the probe into a saline bath while the probe is connected to the ultrasound system and active. This method measures the actual leakage current resulting from the probe RF drive.

Measurements should be made under the test conditions specified in:

- Table 10-10 on page 10-12, as applicable for every probe.

For each combination, the probe must be active to find the worst case condition.

Record all data and keep the record of the results with other hard copies of maintenance data.

Note Saline water pod should be insulated from floor and earth ground.

The Saline solution is a mixture of water and salt. The salt adds free ions to the water, making it conductive. Normal saline solution is 0.9% salt and 99.1% water. If ready-mixed saline solution is not available, a mixture of 1 quart or 1 liter water with 9 or more grams of table salt, mixed thoroughly, will substitute.

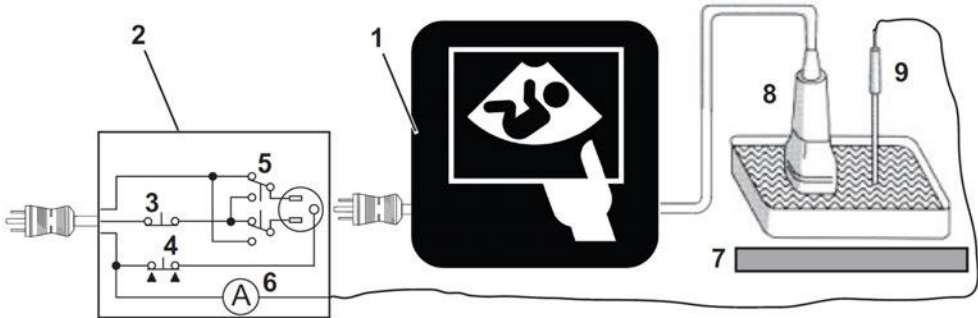


Figure 10-4: Set Up for Probe Leakage Current

1	Ultrasound System	4	Ground Switch	7	Isolator
2	Tester	5	Polarity Reversing Switch	8	Ultrasound Probe
3	Neutral Switch	6	Meter	9	Saline Probe

Note Each probe will have some amount of leakage, dependent on its design. Small variations in probe leakage currents are normal from probe to probe. Other variations will result from differences in line voltage and test lead placement. It is abnormal if no leakage current is measured. If no leakage current is detected, check the configuration of the test equipment.

The ultrasound probes imaging area is immersed in the Saline solution along with a grounding probe from the test meter to complete the current path.

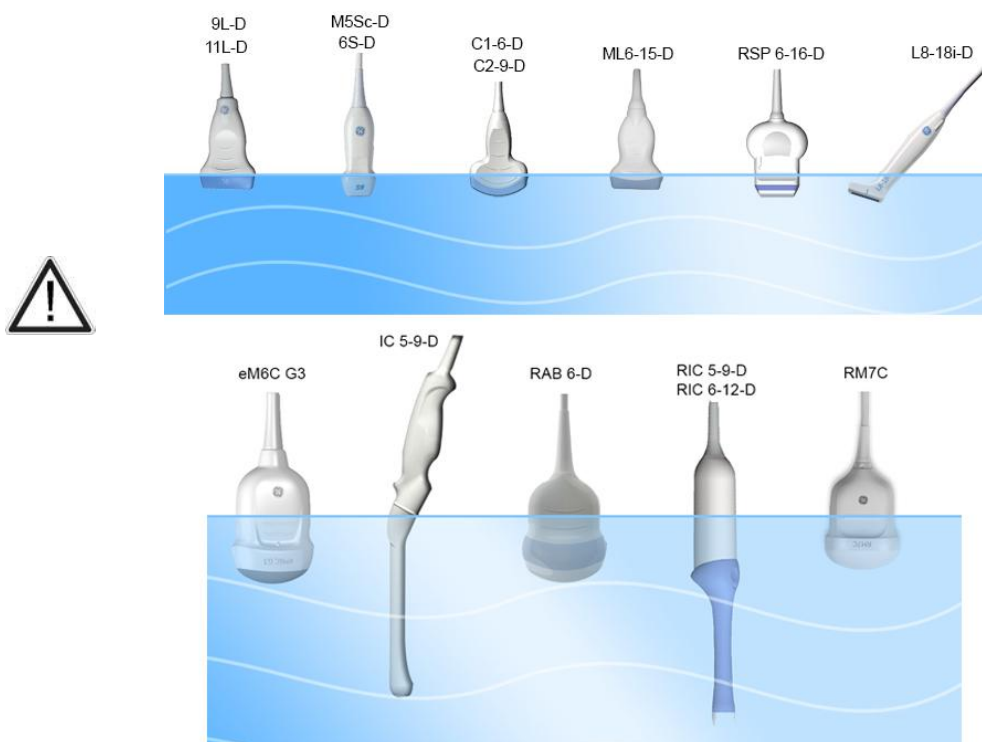
This test is also known as Patient Leakage Current.

1. Turn the Voluson Expert Series system OFF.
2. Connect the Safety analyzer to an AC wall outlet.
3. Set the Safety analyzer's function switch to "Chassis" or "Enclosure Leakage".
4. Plug the Voluson Expert Series system's power cord into the test meter.
5. Plug the Chassis Ground Probe (saline probe) into the test meter's "CHASSIS" connector.
6. Connect the ultrasound probe to be tested to the Voluson Expert Series system.
7. Immerse the saline probe in the saline solution.
8. Immerse the Voluson Expert Series probe's face (imaging area of the probe) into the saline solution.

Caution

To avoid probe damage and possible electric shock, do not immerse probes into any liquid beyond the level indicated shown below.

Do not touch the probe, conductive liquid or any part of the system under test while doing the test.



Caution: Equipment damage possibility!

Never switch the Polarity and the status of Neutral when the Voluson Expert Series system is powered ON. Power off the Voluson Expert Series system, allow the stored energy to bleed down, and turn the circuit breaker off BEFORE switching the "POLARITY" switch and/or the "NEUTRAL" switch on the leakage meter to avoid possible power supply damage.

9. Test opening and closing the ground with the Voluson Expert Series system on and off.
 - a. Power ON the Voluson Expert Series.
 - b. After the Voluson Expert Series system has completed the boot process, select the probe to be tested so it is the active probe.
 - c. Depress the "LIFT GROUND" rocker switch and record the highest current reading.
 - d. Follow the test conditions and test limits described in
 - * *Table 10-10 on page 10-12*, as applicable for every probe.

10. Record the highest current reading.

The test passes when all readings measure less than the stated limits.

The actual location of the test probe may vary by system. Measurements should be recorded for each probe under the set of test conditions.

Record all data and keep the record of the results with other hard copies of maintenance data.

The following acceptance limits and test conditions are summarized from IEC 60601 including national deviations and IEC 62353 and are in some cases lower than that specified by other valid national or international standards. In some countries/regions differing acceptance limits and test conditions may apply.

Table 10-19: Typical Data Format for recording Probe (source) Leakage Current

Unit under Test:			Date of Test:			
Test Conditions			Probe as measured in Saline Bath			
System Power	Grounding/PE	Limit AC/DC μ A	<i>4C-D</i>	<i>11L-D</i>	<i>RIC5-9-D</i>	<i>RM7C</i>
off	closed	100 / 10				
off	open	500 / 50				
on	closed	100 / 10				
on	open	500 / 50				
off	closed (reversed polarity)	100 / 10				
off	open (reversed polarity)	500 / 50				
on	closed (reversed polarity)	100 / 10				
on	open (reversed polarity)	500 / 50				

Note Values in *italics font* are given as examples only.

10.6.9.3 Isolated Probe (Sink) Leakage-Isolation Test



Warning

Do not use the probe if the insulating material has been punctured or otherwise compromised. Integrity of the insulation material and patient safety can be verified by safety testing according to IEC 60601-1.



Caution

Line voltage is applied to the ultrasound probe during this test. To avoid possible electric shock hazard, the system being tested must not be touched by patients, users or anyone while the ISO TEST switch is depressed.

Measurements should be recorded for full lead combination under each set of test conditions specified in:

- *Table 10-11 on page 10-12*

Record all data and keep the record of the results with other hard copies of maintenance data.

1. Connect the Safety analyzer to an AC wall outlet.
2. Plug the equipment under test into the receptacle on the panel of the meter.
3. Connect the ultrasound probe to be tested to the Voluson Expert Series system.
4. Immerse the saline probe in the saline solution.
5. Immerse the Voluson Expert Series probe's face (imaging area of the probe) into the saline solution.
6. Select the "Patient Lead Leakage" function on the meter.
7. Test with closed ground with the Voluson Expert Series system on and off.

Note

For more information, refer to the safety analyzer's user manual that will be used to perform the test.

Record all data and keep the record of the results with other hard copies of maintenance data.

The following acceptance limits and test conditions are summarized from IEC 60601 including national deviations and IEC 62353 and are in some cases lower than that specified by other valid national or international standards. In some countries/regions differing acceptance limits and test conditions may apply.

Table 10-20: Typical Data Format for recording Isolated Probe (sink) Leakage

Unit under Test:			Date of Test:			
Test Conditions			Probe as measured in Saline Bath			
System Power	Grounding/PE	Limit μ A	<i>4C-D</i>	<i>11L-D</i>	<i>RIC5-9-D</i>	<i>RM7C</i>
off	closed	5000				
on	closed	5000				
off	closed (reversed polarity)	5000				
on	closed (reversed polarity)	5000				

Note

Values in italics font are given as examples only.

10.7 When there's too much Leakage Current...

10.7.1 AC/DC fails

Where applicable, check the AC/DC adapter and its cable. Replace with a new one if any portion is defective.

10.7.2 Chassis fails

Check the ground on the power cord and plug for continuity. Ensure the ground is not broken, frayed, or intermittent. Replace any defective part.

Tighten all grounds. Ensure star washers are under all ground studs. Inspect wiring for bad crimps, poor connections, or damage.

Test the wall outlet; verify it is grounded and free of other wiring abnormalities. Notify the user or owner to correct any deviations. As a work around, check the other outlets to see if they could be used instead.

Note *No outlet tester can detect the condition where the white neutral wire and the green grounding wire are reversed. If later tests indicate high leakage currents, this should be suspected as a possible cause and the outlet wiring should be visually inspected. If reversed wiring is observed, it is the customers responsibility to have the condition corrected by qualified personnel.*

10.7.3 Probe fails

Test another probe to determine if the fault lies with the probe or the system.

Note *Each probe will have some amount of leakage, dependent on its design. Small variations in probe leakage currents are normal from probe to probe. Other variations will result from differences in line voltage and test lead placement. The maximum allowable leakage current for body surface contact probe differs from inter-cavity probe. Be sure to enter the correct probe type in the appropriate space on the check list.*

Test the probe in another connector to determine if the fault lies with the probe or the system. If excessive leakage current is slot dependent, inspect the system connector for bent pins, poor connections, and ground continuity.

If the problem remains with the probe, replace the probe.

10.7.4 Peripheral fails

Tighten all grounds. Ensure star washers are under all ground studs.

Inspect wiring for bad crimps, poor connections, or damage.

10.7.5 Still fails

If all else fails, begin isolation by removing the probes, external peripherals, internal peripherals, one at a time while monitoring the leakage current measurement.

In case of using an UPS (Uninterruptible Power Supply), perform the tests in the "Electrical Safety tests" section without using the UPS (i.e. directly connect the Voluson Expert Series system to the AC wall outlet). If this leads to a pass result, the specific UPS must no longer be used.

10.7.6 New Voluson Expert Series system

If the leakage current measurement tests fail on a new Voluson Expert Series system and if situation cannot be corrected, submit a Safety Failure Report to document the problem. Remove Voluson Expert Series system from operation.

10.7.7 ECG fails

Inspect cables for damage or poor connections.

10.8 Ultrasound Equipment Quality Check

Contact your GE Service Representative to perform Equipment and Image Quality Checks.

This page was intentionally left blank.

GE Healthcare Austria GmbH & Co OG
Tiefenbach 15
4871 Zipf
Austria
www.gehealthcare.com

